



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

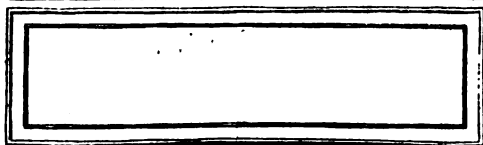
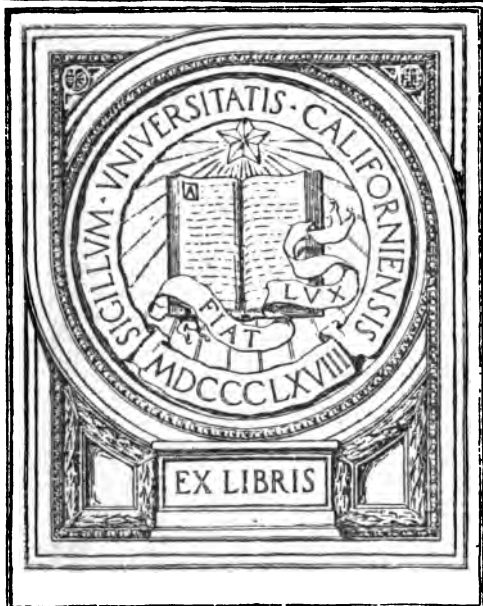
We also ask that you:

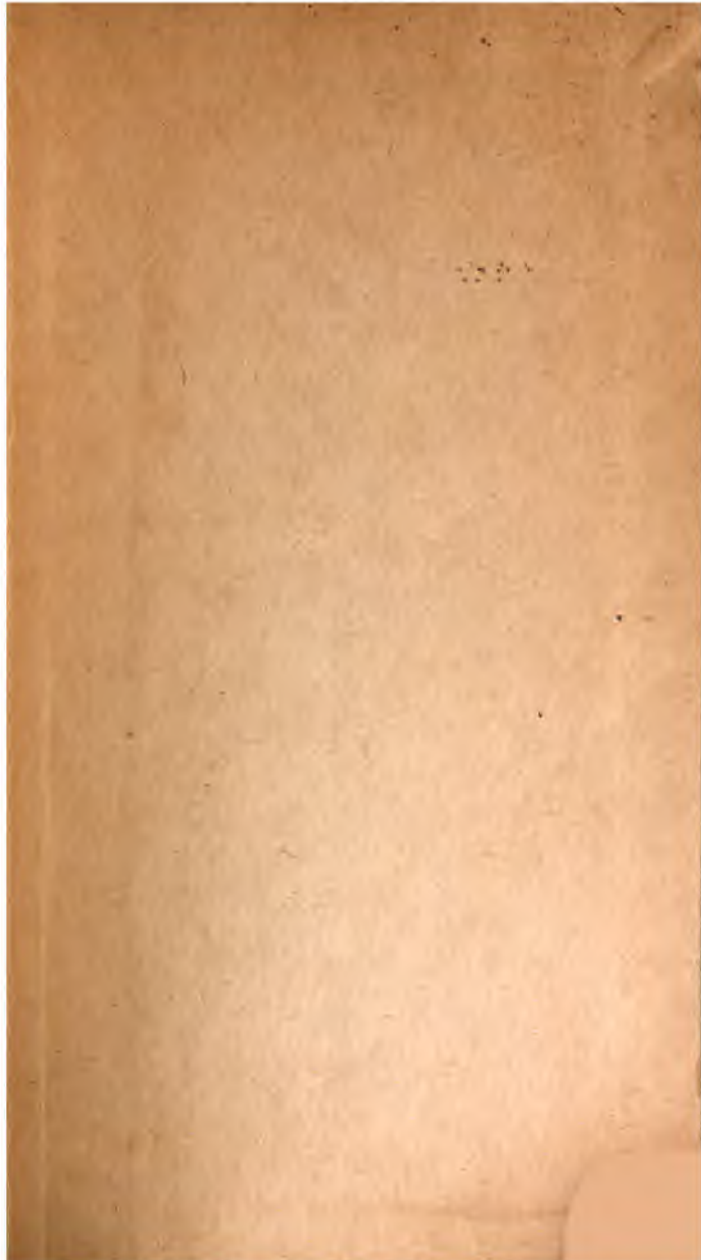
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

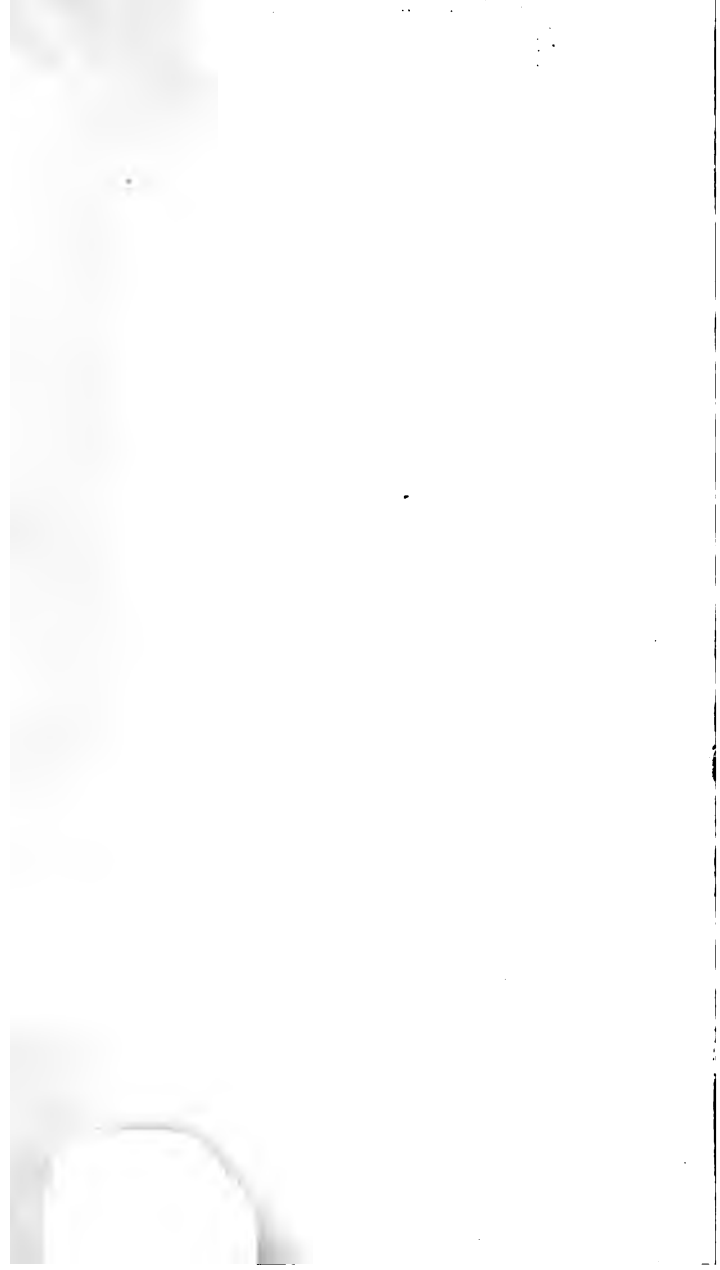
GIFT OF
MARY L. BENTON











King Edward the Sixth's Latin Grammar

LATINÆ GRAMMATICÆ
RUDIMENTA

OR

AN INTRODUCTION TO THE LATIN TONGUE

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS

SIXTEENTH EDITION

LONDINI
APUD JOANNEM MURRAY
MDCCCLXII

Price Three Shillings and Sixpence

760
L731
D.
1862

Gift of Mary L Benton

By the same Author

King Edward the Sixth's First Latin Book ;
or, the Latin Accidence, Syntax, and Prosody. With an
English Translation. For Junior Classes. *Fourth Edition*,
12mo. 2s. 6d.

615359

LONDON

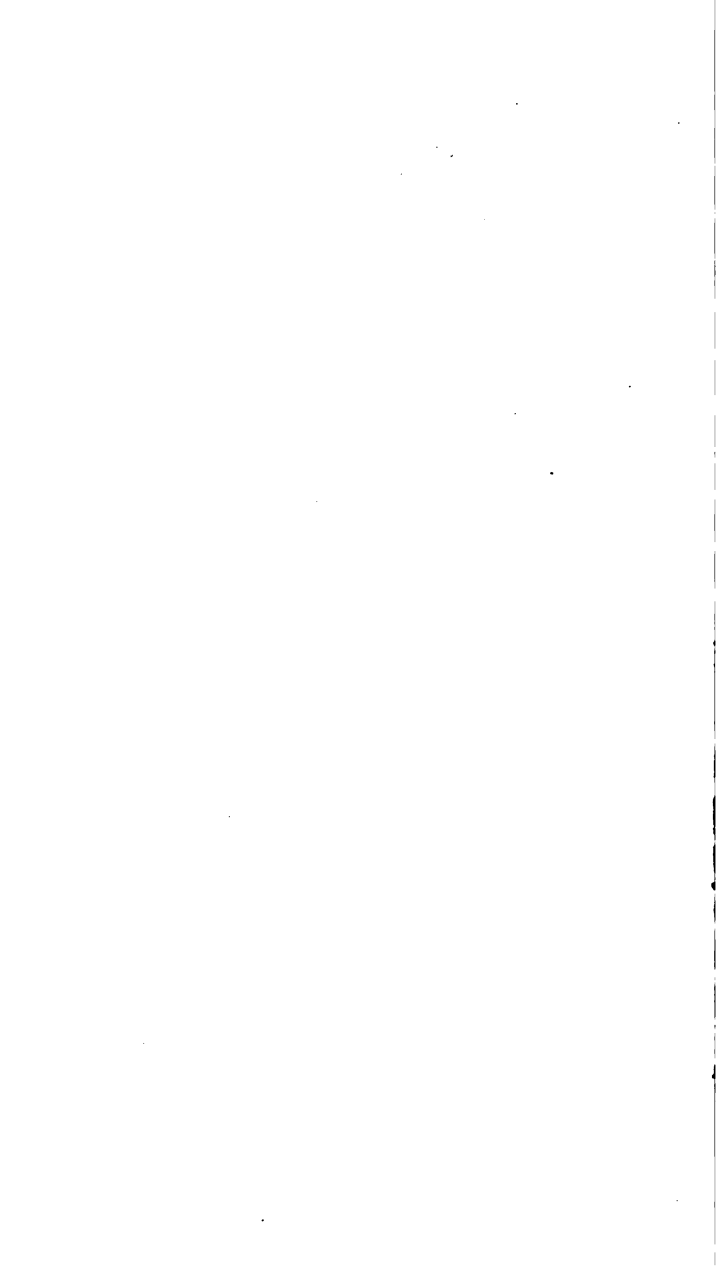
PRINTED BY SPOTTISWOODE AND CO.

NEW-STREET SQUARE

ADVERTISEMENT.

SOME Teachers having expressed a desire that *more* of this Grammar should be printed in *smaller type* than is *now the case*, and whereas modifications of this kind, which might be convenient to some Instructors, would probably be inconvenient to others, an endeavour has therefore been made in the present edition to meet the wishes of all, by *numbering* every paragraph of the Grammar ; so that by specifying to his Scholars the number of any paragraph or paragraphs which he would have preferred to have had in smaller type, any Instructor may modify the Grammar for himself and his Pupils in such a manner as he deems best. In addition to this it may be observed that the *Accidence* and *shorter Syntax* and *Prosody*, *construed* into English for beginners, and published under the title of “*King Edward the Sixth’s First Latin Book*,” may meet the wishes of the former class of persons.

The Translation of the *SYNTAX* and *PROSODY* in this Grammar may serve some of the purposes of an *Exercise-Book* ; and the *APPENDIX* may be used as a *Delectus*, in which case the latter part should be used first.



P R Æ F A T I O.

QUOD in re civili committendum negabat magnus ille Philosophiæ Instaurator, Franciscus Verulamiensis, ut vel novitati temerè studeretur, vel ita serviretur antiquitati ut nihil in eâ vel manci suppleretur vel emendaretur vitiosi; et quod ille probabat vehementer, ut nova antiquis sensim et prudenter attemperata in unum quasi corpus coalescerent; id de Grammaticâ quoque scientiâ verissimè prædicari, et de illâ præsertim, quâ puerorum imbuuntur ingenia, ut quisque est in eâ paulò exercitior, ita confitetur libentiùs.

Nam, quùm docendi quidem officio parum erit satisfactum, nisi optima tradantur præcepta, sic crebrâ præceptorum mutatione fatigari discentium animos, sanè est perniciosissimum.

Jam verò, ut ad hanc quæstionis partem mentes paulisper advertamus, Grammaticarum formularum vulgò apud nos a longo tempore receptarum propriæ sunt commendationes quædam minimè contemnendæ. Primùm, quis ingenio adeò est inhumano, ut librum a majoribus suis sibi traditum, ex quo ii prima cultiorum literarum hauserint elementa, non cum quodam sensu pietatis complectatur? Cui quidem cogitationi non leve accedit ab Auctorum ipsorum nominibus patrocinium. Nam Græcam quidem Grammaticam illam, quæ in Angliæ scholis inveteravit, a GULIELMO CAMDENO, Regiæ Scholæ

Westmonasteriensis Præposito, Viro antiquitatis peritissimo, adornatam fuisse; Latinam vero ab ingeniis illis capitalibus, JOANNE COLETO, Scholæ D. PAULI Fundatore, GULIELMO LILIO, ejusdem scholæ Magistro, DESIDERIO ERASMO, utriusque amico, profluxisse compertum habemus. Quis tantorum Virorum memoriam obsolescere, quis eorum voces obmutescere non quereretur? Quis non summo cum studio eorum labores conservari, foveri, honore affici, fructuosiores reddi, lætaretur?

Vix fieri potest quin, quicumque hæc secum reputaverit, commoveatur animo, quòd magnam novarum Grammaticarum turbam in horum locum irruentem videat, nullâ eorum habitâ ratione; non sine summo docentium et discentium incommodo, cum gravi temporis dispendio, et literarum optimarum injuriâ; et diem illum vehementer desideret, cùm Conventus Ecclesiasticus, ex universo regno Anglicano evocatus, rem suâ deliberatione non indignam esse censuerit, ut una sola Grammatica, cùm Græca tum Latina, omnibus Angliæ Scholis ediscenda traderetur, et ejus concinnandæ munus Viro in humanis divinisque literis sæculi sui eruditissimo, JOANNI PEARSONO, Episcopo Cestriensi, demandaverit.

Quod consilium cùm temporum infortunio fuerit interruptum, symbolam hanc nostram quantulamcunque, tanto operi feliciter inchoato, et aliquando, si volet Deus, post longam annorum intercapedinem, retractando, liceat contulisse. Interim sciant velim lectores hujusce nostri laboris hanc esse rationem unicam, ut, quod hodiè ipsi Auctores, Coletus, Lilius, Erasmus, si in vivis essent, viderentur facturi, id nos pro virili parte efficere enitemur; id nobis persuadentes, nos eorum mentes fidelis-

simè repræsentaturos, si opus ipsorum, quantum per nos quidem fieri posset, et quantum ejus propositum ferret et flagitaret, quàm locupletissimum et emendatissimum exhiberemus. Kalendis Septembribus, A. S., MDCCCXLI.

Ita ferè duobus et amplius abhinc annis præfati sumus. Ex quo tempore, quoniam consilium in hoc libro concinnando adhibitum idoneis judicibus haud displicuisse intelleximus, operam assiduè navavimus ut libri formam animo jam diu conceptam nunc absolutiorem exhiberemus.

Pauca duntaxat hodie sunt, quibus lectorem benevolum morari cupiamus. Plura, quàm olim factum est, in hâc editione *minusculis* literis excusa inventurus est; quæ etsi a tironibus edisci nolimus, tamen e re eorum esse videtur, ut identidem inter ea quæ, *majusculis* impressa, ab iis memoriæ mandantur, alia quoque cognatæ cum his materiæ et lucem iisdem allatura, discipulorum etiam novitiorum animis, sive ab ipsis legendo seu a præceptoribus interrogando, sensim insinuentur.

Provectoribus quoque ita efficacissimè consultum iri existimavimus, si hæc typis minutioribus exarata et eorum potissimum usui destinata, ex eodem volumine, quocum familiaritatem jam ante contraxissent, addiscere possent, neque ad alium librum amandarentur quàm quem ipsi a tirocinio suo manibus tractâssent, et cui sic diuturno jam usu assuevissent.

Hâc igitur ratione, minuscula majusculis continuâ serie intertextentes, utrorumque et rudiorum et exercitiorum emolumento prospicere studuimus.

Exemplis, Regularum confirmandarum et illustrandarum causâ jam antea allatis, majorem nunc accrevisse copiam, neminem gravaturum esse confidimus, memores illius, *longam per Præcepta viam esse, brevem per Exempla*. In his autem adjiciendis operam dedimus, ut ea ferè sola afferremus, quæ aliquâ vel philosophicâ virtute, vel historicâ veritate, vel poëticâ venustate se commendarent. Exempla quidem tumultuariâ operâ congere facillimum est; sed, in iis præsertim libris quibus adolescentium mentes informantur, ingenia exercentur, et mores temperantur, importunum admodum et perniciosum videtur exempla inutilia et inepta, nedum vitiosa, allegari; contra autem sana, proba, honesta et decora iis ediscenda proponi, neque nullius negotii res est neque levis sanè momenti. Quare laboris in hac re positi minimè nos piget.

Deditâ autem operâ ea quoque exempla vel conservavimus vel revocavimus, quæ spectarent ad res publicè eo tempore in his regionibus gestas, trecentesimo ferè jam abhinc anno, quo hæc Grammatica primùm lucem vidit, vel ad primos illos ejus conditores aliquatenus pertinerent; id quod eo consilio fecimus, ut antiquam suam originem liber nunquam non referret, et patriam indolem et nativum ANGLIÆ suæ colorem fideliter repræsentaret. De his exemplis plura dedit Vir Reverendus Samuel Knight, S. T. P. in Vitâ Joannis Coleti, Decani Paulini, p. 118, ed. Oxon. 1823. Scripsimus A. D. V. Id. Apriles, MDCCCXLIV.

PRECATIO.

DOMINE PATER, *cœli et terræ Effector, Qui liberaliter tribuis sapientiam omnibus cum fiduciâ abs Te petentibus, exorna ingenii mei bonitatem, quam cum cæteris naturæ viribus mihi infudisti, lumine Gratiae Tuæ, ut non modò quæ ad cognoscendum Te et Servatorem Nostrum Dominum Jesum valeant, intelligam, sed etiam totâ mente et voluntate persequar, et indiès, benignitate Tuâ, tum doctrinâ tum pietate proficiam, ut Qui efficis omnia in omnibus, in me resplendere dona Tua facias ad gloriam sempiternam immortalis Majestatis Tuæ, per IESUM CHRISTUM, Dominum Nostrum. AMEN*

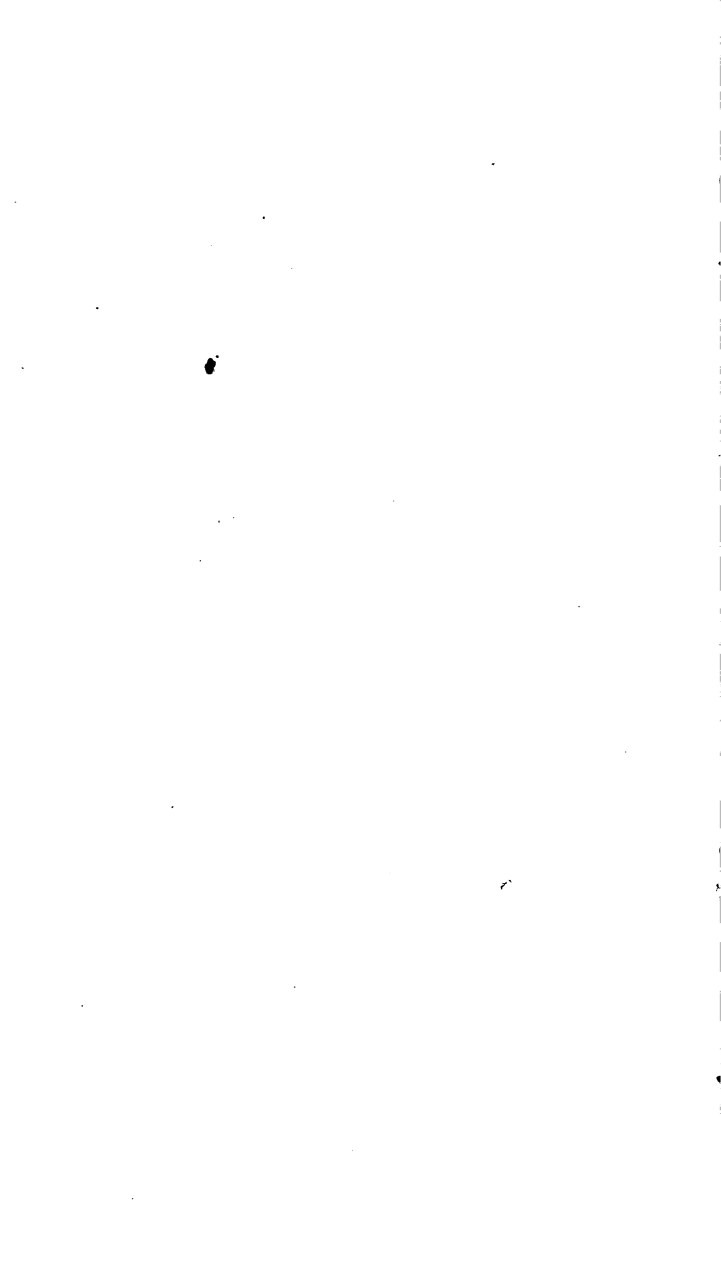


TABLE OF CONTENTS.

<p>PRÆFATIO <i>Page</i> iii</p> <p>PRÆCATIO vii</p> <p>TABLE OF EXAMPLES . . . xii</p> <p>ORTHOGRAPHY.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Letters and Syllables . . . 1</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Parts of Speech 2</p> <p>NOUNS 2</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Numbers 3</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Cases 3</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Genders 4</p> <p>NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE . . . 5</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">General Rules 5</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;"><i>First Declension</i> 5</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Greek Words of 5</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Observations on the Cases of</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">First Declension 6</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;"><i>Second Declension</i> 7</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Observations on Cases of . . 8</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Greek Words of 8</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">General Rule 9</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;"><i>Third Declension</i> 9</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Observations on Cases of . . 10</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Greek Words of 12</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;"><i>Fourth Declension</i> 13</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Observations on Cases of . . 13</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;"><i>Fifth Declension</i> 13</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Indeclinables, Defectives, and</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Heteroclitēs 14</p> <p>NOUNS ADJECTIVE 15</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Comparison of 19</p> <p>NUMERALS 21</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Temporal Numerals 23</p>	<p>PRONOUNS <i>Page</i> 24</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Personal 24</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Possessive 25</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Demonstrative 26</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Relative 27</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Interrogative 27</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Prefixes and Affixes to Pro- nouns 29</p> <p>VERBS 30</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Voices 30</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Verbs Transitive and In- transitive 31</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Impersonals 32</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Moods 32</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Tenses 33</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Absolute and Relative Tenses 34</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Numbers and Persons . . . 34</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Gerunds and Supines . . . 34</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Participles 35</p> <p>Verb Esse 37</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Observations on 40</p> <p>Verbs Regular in Active</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Voice 40</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Declension of Verbs Active 40</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">First Conjugation 41</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;"><i>Formation of Tenses</i> 44</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Second Conjugation 44</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Third Conjugation 47</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Fourth Conjugation 50</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;"><i>Observations on the Tenses</i> <i>in the Active Voice</i> 52</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;"><i>Periphrastic Conjugation</i> . . 53</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;"><i>Passive Voice</i> 54</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Declension of Verbs Passive 54</p>
---	--

	Page		Page
First Conjugation	54	INTERJECTIONS	90
Second Conjugation	56	ETYMOLOGY	91
Third Conjugation	59	<i>Classing of Letters</i>	91
Fourth Conjugation	61	Interchange of Vowels	91
<i>Observations on the Tenses</i>		Greek	92
<i>in the Passive Voice</i>	64	Interchange of Consonants	92
<i>Periphrastic Conjugation</i>	64	Assimilation	93
Examples of	65	Insertion of Letters	93
<i>Gerunds and Supines</i>	65	Omission of Letters	94
<i>Deponent Verbs</i>	66	<i>Forming of Words</i>	94
Of the First Conjugation	66	<i>Forming of Substantives</i>	94
Second Conjugation	68	<i>Patronymics</i>	94
Third Conjugation	68	<i>Gentile Nouns</i>	95
Fourth Conjugation	70	<i>Diminutives</i>	96
<i>Irregular Verbs</i>	70	<i>Appellatives</i>	97
Observations on	74	<i>Abstractions</i>	97
<i>Defective Verbs</i>	75	Change of Noun from	
<i>Impersonal Verbs</i>	77	Male to Female	98
ADVERBS	78	Forming of <i>Adjectives</i>	98
<i>Adverbs of Place</i>	79	Forming of <i>Verbs</i>	100
<i>Adverbs of Time</i>	81	<i>Inceptives</i>	100
<i>Adverbs of Quantity</i>	81	<i>Desideratives</i>	101
<i>Adverbs Interrogative, Af-</i>		<i>Frequentatives</i>	101
firmative, Negative; and		<i>Diminutives</i>	101
Examples of	82	<i>Intensives</i>	101
Comparison of Adverbs	83	Compound Verbs	102
CONJUNCTIONS	84	Forming of <i>Adverbs</i>	102
Examples of	84	Etymology of <i>Prepositions</i>	103
Difference and use of <i>Aut</i>		Figures in Etymology	104
and <i>Vel, Sive, Seu, Neve,</i>		Dependence of Prosody on	
<i>Neu, and Fe</i>	84	Etymology	104
Different kinds of <i>Conjunc-</i>		ORTHOGRAPHY	104
tions	85	THE THREE CONCORDS EX-	
PREPOSITIONS	86	PLAINED	105
Governing an Ablative	86	PROPRIA QUÆ MARIBUS, OR	
Governing an Accusative	86	The Genders of Nouns	108
Observations on	87	QUÆ GENUS, or Irregular	
Governing both Accusative		Nouns	115
and Ablative	87	AS IN PRÆSENTI, or the Per-	
Peculiar Meanings of <i>Pre-</i>		fects and Supines of Verbs	116
positions	88	SYNTAXIS	125
		Concordantia Prima, Nomi-	
		nativus et Verbum	125

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

xv

	Page
Exceptiones	128
Concordantia Secunda, Substantivum et Adjectivum	129
Concordantia Tertia, Relativum et Antecedens	130
Peculiaris usus Numerorum	132
Casuum	133
Nominum Constructio	133
Genitivus post Nomen	133
Genitivus post Verbum	137
Dativus post Nomen	139
Dativus post Verbum	140
Accusativus post Nomen	144
Accusativus post Verbum	144
Ablativus post Nomen	147
Comparativa	148
Superlativa	149
Ablativus post Verbum	150
Ablativus Absolutus	153
De Mensurâ	153
De Tempore	154
De Loco	154
De Nominibus Locorum	154
Pronominum Constructio	156
Qui cum Subjunctivo	160
Verba Passiva	161
Verba Impersonalia	162
Verba Infinita	164
Gerundia	166
Gerundiva	167

	Page
Supina	168
Participiorum Constructio	168
Peculiaris usus Temporum	169
Consecutio Temporum	172
Peculiaris usus Modorum	173
Circumscriptio Imperativi	173
Oratio Obliqua	173
Adverbiorum Constructio	174
Conjunctionum Constructio	176
Præpositionum Constructio	180
Interjectionum Constructio	181
PROSODIA	183
Definitiones	183
Priorum et Penultimarum Syllabarum Quantitas	185
Ultimarum Syllabarum Quantitas	190
Pedes	195
Metra Versuum	196
Cæsurae in Hexametro	196
Pentametri Regulæ	198
Versus Alcaici	198
Sapphici	200
Alii	201
Mixti	202
Asynarteti	202
Plauti et Terentii Versus	203
Accentus	203
Pedes finales in Solutâ Oratione	204

Accidence construed	205
Propria quæ Maribus construed	13
Quæ Genus construed	220
As in Præsenti construed	223

TRANSLATION AND EXERCISE BOOK.

Syntaxis translated	233
Prosodia translated	267

APPENDIX.

	Page		Page
Historia Romana, ex Virgilio	279	Affinitas et Cognatio . . .	296
De Imperatoribus Romanis, ex		Sestertium et Sestertius . . .	296
Ausonio	284	Partes Assis	296
Auctores Classici Latini . . .	288	Unciæ	296
De Comicis Latinis, ex Horatio	288	Notatio Temporis	297
De Poetis suis Æqualibus, ex		Signa Zodiaci et Tempestates	297
Ovidio	288	Dies Romanus	297
De Romanis Auctoribus, ex		Kalendarium Romanum . . .	298
Quintiliano	289	Siglarium Romanum	299
De Scriptorum Romanorum		Rudimenta Pietatis	300
Patria, ex Martiale	294	Præcipua Capita Christianæ	
Differentia Vocum (alphabetico		Religionis	302
ordine dispositarum) . . .	295	Articuli Ecclesiæ Anglicanæ .	307

TABLE OF EXAMPLES.

SUBSTANTIVES.

1st Declension	<i>Musa.</i>
2nd —————	<i>Magister, Dominus, Regnum.</i>
3rd —————	<i>Nubes, Lapis, Civis, Leo, Pater.</i>
	<i>Virgo, Mare, Opus.</i>
4th —————	<i>Gradus.</i>
5th —————	<i>Facies.</i>

ADJECTIVES.

1st Declension	<i>Bonus, Tener.</i>
2nd —————	<i>Tristis, Melior.</i>
3rd —————	<i>Felix.</i>

VERBS.

1st Conjugation	<i>Amo.</i>
2nd —————	<i>Moneo.</i>
3rd —————	<i>Rego.</i>
4th —————	<i>Audio.</i>

ELEMENTS

OF

THE LATIN TONGUE.

§ 1. — LETTERS, VOWELS, SYLLABLES, DIPHTHONGS.

THE Latin letters are twenty-four, and are thus written :

Capitals.—ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ.

Small.—a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v x y z.

U and *V* being written as *V* in Latin MSS., are considered as one letter.

The Romans wrote in CAPITAL LETTERS (*litteræ unciales*). The smaller ones (*litteræ cursivæ*) were not in use before A. D. 500.

The letter *Q* is the Phœnician ϙ (κόππα). *F* is the Æolic Digamma. *F*; Hebrew *Wav*. (Greek Grammar, § 1, Obs. 2)

W is not a Latin letter; it first appears on a coin A. D. 536.

Of these letters, six are *Vowels*—*a, e, i, o, u, y*. The rest are *Consonants*.

A *Vowel* makes a full sound of itself: as, *e*.

A *Consonant* cannot sound without a vowel: as, *b* (*e*).

Consonants are divided into *Mutes*, *Liquids*, and *Double Letters*.

The *Liquids* are *l, m, n, r*.

The *Double Letters* are *j, x, z*.

J is made of *ii*; *X* of *cs* or *gs*; *Z* of *ds* or *ss*. Words from the Greek never begin with *J*, but with *I*; as, *Iason* (from 'Ιάσων), not *Jason*.

The remaining letters are *Mutes*.

A *Syllable* is a distinct sound of one or more letters pronounced in a breath.

A *Diphthong* is the sound of two vowels in one syllable.

Of Diphthongs there are *five* in number : *au, eu, ei, ae, oe*.

These two last are commonly pronounced as the vowel *e*, and are often joined, and written thus : *æ, œ*.

When *ae* and *oe* are *two* syllables, they are generally marked by two points (*puncta diæreseos*) thus : *æ̇r, Typhoëus*.

This mark - over a syllable shows that it is to be pronounced *long* : and this *˘*, that it is to be pronounced *short* : as, *hūjūs*.

§ 2.—THE PARTS OF SPEECH are Eight :

1. Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle, *declined*.
2. Adverb, Conjunction, Preposition, Interjection, *undeclined*.

All the Parts of Speech are contained in the verse —

Væ tibi ridenti, quia mox post gaudia flebis.

§ 3.—OF A NOUN.

A NOUN is the name (*nomen, ὄνομα, γνῶν, γινώσκω, gnosco*) of whatsoever Thing, Being, or Quality, we see or discourse of.

Nouns are of two kinds : *Substantives* and *Adjectives*.

A Noun *Substantive* declares its own meaning, and requires not another word to be joined with it, to show its signification : as, *homo* a man ; *liber* a book.

Obs. A Noun *Substantive* is either *proper* to one ; as, *Edvardus* is a *proper name* ; or else is *common* to more ; as, *homo* is a *name common* to all men.

A Noun *Adjective* always requires to be joined to (*adjici*) a *Substantive*, which stands under (*sub stat*) and supports it, and of which it shows the nature or quality : as, *bonus homo*, a *good man*

§ 4. — NUMBERS OF NOUNS.

NOUNS in Latin have *two numbers*: the Singular and the Plural.

The *Singular* speaks but of one: as, *pater* a father.

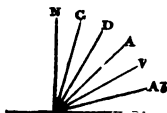
The *Plural* speaks of more than one: as, *patres* fathers.

The Latin language has no Dual: nor had the old Greek; nor the Æolic dialect, whence the Latin is partly derived. (See below, § 64. Obs. 8., and § 102.)

§ 5. — CASES OF NOUNS.

NOUNS have *six Cases* (*casus*, or *fallings*) in each number: The Nominative, the Genitive, the Dative, the Accusative, the Vocative, and the Ablative.

A Noun in the Nominative Case (*casus rectus*, πρῶσις ὀρθή) was considered by ancient Grammarians as a line perpendicular; and in the other cases (*casus obliqui*) as gradually declining or falling from the perpendicular.



To *decline* a Noun, is to make it pass through these *cases* or *fallings*, and the representation of them is called a *Declension* (κλίσις).

The *Nominative* (or *naming*) case comes before the verb, and answers the question *who?* or *what?* as, *who teaches?* *magister docet* the master teaches.

The *Genitive* (or *getting*) case (from *gigno* to *beget*) is known by the sign *of*, and answers the question *whose?* or *whereof?* as, *whose learning?* *doctrina magistri* the learning of the master, *or* the master's learning. (See § 141.)

The *Dative* (or *giving*) case (from *do* to *give*) is known by the signs *to* or *for*, and answers the question *to whom?* or *to* or *for what?* as, *to whom do I give the book?* *do librum magistro* I give the book to the master. (See § 143.)

The *Accusative* case (from *accuso* to *accuse*) follows the

verb, and answers the question *whom?* or *what?* as *whom do you love?* *amo magistrum* I love the master. (See § 145.)

The *Vocative* (or *calling*) case (from *voco* to *call*) is known by calling or speaking to: as, *O magister* O master.

The *Ablative** (or *taking away*) case (from *ab* from, and *fero, latus, to take*) is known by prepositions, expressed or understood, serving to the ablative case: as, *de magistro* of the master; *coram magistro* before the master.

Also, the prepositions *in, with, from, by*, and the word *than* after the comparative degree, are signs of the ablative case.

§ 6. — GENDERS.

GENDERS of nouns are three: the *Masculine*, the *Feminine*, and the *Neuter*.

The Pronoun† *hic, hæc, hoc*, he, she, it, is used in Grammar to denote the *Gender* of Nouns, and is thus declined:

	Singular.				Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nominative	<i>Hic</i>	<i>hæc</i>	<i>hoc</i>	Nom.	<i>Hi</i>	<i>hæ</i>	<i>hæc</i>
Genitive	<i>Hujus</i>			Gen.	<i>Horum</i>	<i>harum</i>	<i>horum</i>
Dative	<i>Huius</i>			Dat.	<i>His</i>		
Accusative	<i>Hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hoc</i>	Acc.	<i>Hos</i>	<i>has</i>	<i>hæc</i>
Vocative	—			Voc.	—		
Ablative	<i>Hoc</i>	<i>hæc</i>	<i>hoc</i>	Abl.	<i>His</i>		

Nouns declined with *hic* and *hæc* are called *Common*, that is, are of the Masculine and Feminine Gender: as, *hic* and *hæc parens* a parent, father or mother.

Nouns are called *Doubtful*, when declined with either *hic* or *hæc*: as, *hic dama* a deer, *hæc dama* a doe.

Some nouns are also called *Epicæne* (*ἐπίκοινα, κοινὸς communis*); that is, when under *hic* or *hæc* both sexes are signified: as, *hic passer* a sparrow, both male and female; *hæc aquila* an eagle.

Obs. Of the GENDERS of Nouns, see below, § 128.

* *Ablativus proprius est Romanorum.* — Priscian. v. 13. 75.

† *Romani articulos non habent.* — Priscian. xi. 1. 2.

§ 7.—DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

There are FIVE Declensions of Substantives, which are distinguished by the *ending of the Genitive Case*.

GENERAL RULES. (Gr. Gr. § 12.)

Obs. 1. The Vocative and Nominative *Singular* are *alike* in all words except those in *us* of the second Declension: as Nom. *Musa*, Voc. *Musa*; but Nom. *Dominus*, Voc. *Domine*. In the *Plural* they are *always alike*.

Obs. 2. The Accusative Singular of Masculine and Feminine Nouns ends in *m* (Greek ν), and the Accusative Plural in *s* (Greek ς): as, Acc. Sing. *Musam*, *Dominum*, *Nubem*, &c.; and Acc. Plur. *Musas*, *Dominos*, *Nubes*, &c.

Obs. 3. The Genitive Plural always ends in *um* (Greek $\omega\nu$).

Obs. 4. The Dative and Ablative Plural end in *s* (Greek ς).

Obs. 5. The Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative of all Neuters are alike, and end in the Plural in *ä* (Greek α).

Obs. 6. There is no *Neuter* word of the First or Fifth Declension.

§ 8.—THE FIRST DECLENSION

Makes the Genitive and Dative Cases Singular to end in *æ*: as,

Singular.

N. <i>hæc</i>	Mus- <i>ä</i> a song
G. <i>hujus</i>	Mus- <i>æ</i> of a song
D. <i>huic</i>	Mus- <i>æ</i> to a song
A. <i>hanc</i>	Mus-am a song
V. <i>o</i>	Mus- <i>ä</i> o song
A. <i>ab hæc</i>	Mus- <i>ä</i> from a song.

Plural.

N. <i>hæ</i>	Mus- <i>æ</i> songs
G. <i>harum</i>	Mus- <i>arum</i> of songs
D. <i>his</i>	Mus-is to songs
A. <i>has</i>	Mus- <i>as</i> songs
V. <i>o</i>	Musæ o songs
A. <i>ab his</i>	Mus-is from songs.

(Cp. Gr. Gr. $\mu\upsilon\sigma\alpha$, § 16.)

So are declined the Masculines in *a*: as, *hic poeta* a poet; Gen. *hujus poetæ*, &c.

Obs. 1. To this Declension belong certain words from the GREEK, in *ë*, *äs*, and *ēs*.

Feminines in *ē* (like *τιμή*, Gr. Gr. § 16.):

Singular.

N. <i>Musicē</i> ,	A. <i>Musicēn</i> ,
G. <i>Musicēs</i> ,	V. <i>Musicē</i> ,
D. <i>Musicæ</i> ,	A. <i>Musicē</i> .

Masculines in *ās* (like *ταυλάς*, Gr. Gr. § 15.), and *ēs* (like *κριτής*, Gr. Gr. § 15.):

N. <i>Ænēas</i> ,	A. <i>Ænean</i> or <i>am</i> ,
G. <i>Æneæ</i> ,	V. <i>Æneā</i> ,
D. <i>Æneæ</i> ,	A. <i>Æneā</i> .
N. <i>Anchīses</i> ,	A. <i>Anchisen</i> or <i>am</i> ,
G. <i>Anchisæ</i> ,	V. <i>Anchisē</i> (<i>ā</i> or <i>ē</i> , <i>rare</i>),
D. <i>Anchisæ</i> ,	A. <i>Anchisē</i> (<i>ā</i> , <i>less common</i>).

All Masculine Patronymics are declined like *Anchises*: as, *Atrides*, G. *Atridæ*. Horace uses both Vocatives *Atridē* and *Atridā*. On these Patronymics, see below, § 105.

In the Plural all these are declined like *Musa*.

Obs. 2. The Latin Poets use both Greek and Latin forms of words, the Prose Writers, for the most part, only Latin.

§ 9. — OBSERVATIONS ON THE CASES OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

Obs. 1. The Old Genitive Singular ending in *ās* and *ēs* (Greek, *-as*, *-ης*), e. g. *Familia* (like *φιλία*, Gr. Gr. § 16.) made in the Genitive *Familias*. Hence *Puterfamilias* a father of a family. (Priscian. vi. 1. 6.)

The *s* being thrown off, another Genitive arose by the addition of *i* — *familiai*; and this, by contraction, became *familiaē*.

Obs. 2. The Accusative of Greek words in *ā* is, in *Poetry*, sometimes *ān*: as, *Ossān*, *Cyllān*, *Electrān*.

Obs. 3. Horace generally uses the *Greek forms* (*Circes*, &c.) in his *Odes* (being from *Greek models*): the *Latin* (*Circæ*, &c.), in his *Satires* and *Epistles*, which approach nearer to the language of common conversation.

Obs. 4. The Romans changed the Greek final *as* of names of *Slaves*, *Jews*, &c., into *a*: as, *Δημᾶς* *Damā*, *Ἀπελλᾶς*, *Apella*: but in the case of *Philosophers* and *Freemen*, they generally retained the Greek *as*: as, *Anaxagoras*, *Lysias*.

Obs. 5. The Genitive Plural had two endings, *um* and *arum* (*παισῶν*, *μουσῶν*). That in *um* remains in Patronymics, as *Dardanidum*, and *drachmum*, *amphorum* (with numerals); and in compounds of *colo* and *gigno*, as *cælicolum*, *terrigenum*.

Obs. 6. The Dative Plural had also two endings: *is* and *abus* (μοναῖς, μονῶδ'is). That in *abus* remains in *Deabus*, *filiabus*, *equabus*, *mulabus*, *servabus*, *famulabus*, *libertabus*; and in the adjectives *ambabus*, *duabus*; and a like one remains in other declensions, as *nubibus*, *gradibus*, *faciēbus*.

§ 10.—THE SECOND DECLENSION

Makes the Genitive case Singular to end in *i*: as,

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. <i>hic</i>	Magist-ēr <i>a master</i>	N. <i>hi</i>	Magist-rī <i>masters</i> [<i>ters</i>
G. <i>hujus</i>	Magist-rī <i>of a master</i>	G. <i>horum</i>	Magistr-ōrum <i>of mas-</i>
D. <i>huic</i>	Magist-rō <i>to a master</i>	D. <i>his</i>	Magistr-is <i>to masters</i>
A. <i>hunc</i>	Magist-rum <i>a master</i>	A. <i>hos</i>	Magistr-ōs <i>masters</i>
V. <i>o</i>	Magist-ēr <i>o master</i>	V. <i>o</i>	Magistr-ī <i>o masters</i>
A. <i>ab hoc</i>	Magist-rō <i>by a master.</i>	A. <i>ab his</i>	Magistr-is <i>by masters.</i>

Obs. Certain words in *ēr* make *ēri* in the Genitive Singular and *ērō* in the Dative; and so throughout, as,

Adulter dat adultēri

In genitivo singulāri.

Sic puer, vesper, gener, socer,

Asper, miser, tener, lacer;

Sic prosper, Liber (wine and free),

Sic presbȳter, compositaque

Duobus verbis gero, fero,

Ut armiger, dant ēri, ēro.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. <i>hic</i>	Domin-ūs <i>a lord</i>	N. <i>hi</i>	Domin-ī <i>lords</i>
G. <i>hujus</i>	Domin-ī <i>of a lord</i>	G. <i>horum</i>	Domin-ōrum <i>of lords</i>
D. <i>huic</i>	Domin-ō <i>to a lord</i>	D. <i>his</i>	Domin-is <i>to lords</i>
A. <i>hunc</i>	Domin-um <i>a lord</i>	A. <i>hos</i>	Domin-ōs <i>lords</i>
V. <i>o</i>	Domin-ē <i>o lord</i>	V. <i>o</i>	Domin-ī <i>o lords</i>
A. <i>ab hoc</i>	Domin-ō <i>by a lord.</i>	A. <i>ab his</i>	Domin-is <i>by lords.</i>

(Cp. λόγος, Gr. Gr. § 17.)

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. <i>hoc</i>	Regn-um <i>a kingdom</i>	N. <i>hæc</i>	Regn-ā <i>kingdoms</i>
G. <i>hujus</i>	Regn-ī <i>of a king-</i> <i>dom</i>	G. <i>horum</i>	Regn-orum <i>of king-</i> <i>doms</i>
D. <i>huic</i>	Regn-o <i>to a kingdom</i>	D. <i>his</i>	Regn-is <i>to kingdoms</i>
A. <i>hoc</i>	Regn-um <i>a kingdom</i>	A. <i>hæc</i>	Regn-ā <i>kingdoms</i>
V. <i>o</i>	Regn-um <i>o kingdom</i>	V. <i>o</i>	Regn-ā <i>o kingdoms</i>
A. <i>ab hoc</i>	Regn-o <i>from a kingdom.</i>	A. <i>ab his</i>	Regn-is <i>from kingdoms.</i>

(Cp. ξύλον, Gr. Gr. § 17.)

§ 11.—OBSERVATIONS ON THE CASES OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

Obs. 1. In the Genitive Case Singular, Proper Names of Men and other Substantives in *ius* and *ium* made *t*, not *ii*, during the reign of Augustus; as, *Virgilius*, Gen. *Virgil*; *ingenium*, Gen. *ingēnī*: but Adjectives made *ii*; as, *egregius*, *egregii*.

Scilicet *egregii* mortalem atque silentē. — *Hor.*

The four-syllable forms in *ii*, *ingenii*, &c. were first used by the poet Propertius. And the poet Manilius is presumed to be of the Augustan age from his *never* using them.

Obs. 2. Also in the Vocative Case Singular, Proper Names of Men in *ius* make *i*; as, *Virgilius*, Voc. *Virgil*; so *filius*, Voc. *fili*; *genius*, Voc. *genī*: but not Adjectives, as, *Cynthus*, Voc. *Cynthie*; nor Proper Names in *ius* (*i* long), as, *Sperchius*, Voc. *Sperchie*.

Obs. 3. The Genitive Plural *ūm* for *orum*, as *Deūm* (Θεῶν) for *Deorum*, remains in certain words denoting trades, coins, weights, and measures; as, *faber* a workman, Gen. Plur. *fabrūm*. So, *denariūm*, *talentūm*, *modiūm* (θηναρίων, ταλάντων, μολίων); and, in Poetry, in Adjectives and Names of People and Distributive Numerals: as, *magnanimūm*, *Rutulūm*, *vicenūm*.

Obs. 4. *Deus* in the Vocative Singular makes *Deus*.

Plural.

N. Dī (<i>seldom</i> Dēī),		D. Dīs (<i>seldom</i> Deīs),		V. Dī,
G. Deūm or Deorum,		A. Deos,		A. Dīs (<i>seldom</i> Deīs).

The two-syllable forms *Dēī*, *Dēīs*, for *Dī*, *Dīs*, were first used by the poet Ovid.

Obs. 5. Proper Names of Men are thus declined:

N. Publius Virgilius Maro.
G. Publī Virgilī Marōnis,
D. Publio Virgilio Maroni,

and so throughout.

§ 12. — To this Declension belong certain Words from the Greek in *ōs*, *ōs*, *ēus*, and *ōn*.

N. Delōs,		A. Delōn or um,
G. Deli,		V. Delē,
D. Delō,		A. Delō.

(Cp. λόγος, Gr. Gr. § 16.)

N. Andrōgēōs,		A. Androgeōn or ō, or ōna,
G. Androgeō or i,		V. Androgeōs,
D. Androgeō,		A. Androgeō.

(Cp. λέως, Gr. Gr. § 19.)

N. Orphēus,		A. Orphēx or ēum,
G. Orphēos or ēī, or ī,		V. Orpheu,
D. Orpheī or ēī, or ēō,		A. Orphēō.

(Cp. βασιλεὺς, Gr. Gr. § 27., where it differs from *Dominus*.)

Cicero approves of the Accusative *Peiræum* (in Prose), and condemns *Piræa* (from Πειραιεύς). *Curvis e littoribus Piræi.* — *Catull.*

Add to these — N. Panthous, | D. Panthō, | V. Panthu,
G. Panthī, | A. Panthum, | A. Panthō.
(Cp. νόος, νοῦς, Gr. Gr. § 18.)

Obs. 1. The Genitive Plural of Greek Neuters in *on* is *on* : as *Georgicōn*.

Obs. 2. Ex. — Gen. In foribus letum Andrōgēō. — *Virg.*

Terēi mutaverat artus. — *Virg.*

Tectaque Penthēi. — *Hor.*

Dat. Orphēi Calliopeā. — *Virg.* Thesēō promiserat. — *Cic.*

Qualis adest Thetidi qualis concordia Pelēō. — *Catull.*

Acc. Ἰλινὸν in sylvis. — *Op.* Τροίλῶν. — *Hor.* Πιττακόν. — *Juv.*

Typhōēā. — *Virg.* Orplīēā. — *Virg.*

Voc. Quo res summa loco, Panthū. — *Virg.*

Abl. Threīcio blandius Orphēō. — *Hor.*

§ 13. — GENERAL RULE.

The Nominative and Accusative Plural in the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Declensions are alike : as, Nom. and Acc. *Nubes* ; Nom. and Acc. *Gradus* ; Nom. and Acc. *Facies*.

§ 14. — THE THIRD DECLENSION

Makes the Genitive Case Singular to end in *is* : as,

Singular.

N. *hæc* Nub-ēs *a cloud*
G. *hujus* Nub-īs *of a cloud*
D. *huius* Nub-ī *to a cloud*
A. *hanc* Nub-em *a cloud*
V. *o* Nub-ēs *o cloud*
A. *ab hac* Nub-ē *from a cloud.*

Plural.

N. *hæ* Nub-ēs *clouds*
G. *harum* Nub-ium *of clouds*
D. *his* Nub-ibūs *to clouds*
A. *has* Nub-ēs *clouds*
V. *o* Nub-ēs *o clouds*
A. *ab his* Nub-ibūs *from clouds.*

Obs. So decline, also, nouns masculine ; e. g., *Civis, a citizen* ; Gen. *Civis, of a citizen*, &c. Also neuters ; e. g., *Mare, the sea* ; Gen. *Maris, of the sea*, &c.

Obs. Many Nouns of this Declension increase in the Genitive Case ; as,

Singular.

N. *hic* Lapi-s *a stone*
G. *hujus* Lapi-dīs *of a stone*
D. *huc* Lapi-dī *to a stone*
A. *hunc* Lapi-dem *a stone*
V. *o* Lapi-s *o stone*
A. *ab hoc* Lapi-dē *from a stone.*

Plural.

N. *hi* Lapid-ēs *stones*
G. *horum* Lapid-um *of stones*
D. *his* Lapid-ibūs *to stones*
A. *hos* Lapid-ēs *stones*
V. *o* Lapid-ēs *o stones*
A. *ab his* Lapid-ibūs *from stones.*

Singular.

N. <i>hoc</i>	Op-ūs <i>a work</i>
G. <i>hujus</i>	Op-ērīs <i>of a work</i>
D. <i>huic</i>	Op-erī <i>to a work</i>
A. <i>hoc</i>	Op-ūs <i>a work</i>
V. <i>o</i>	Op-ūs <i>o work</i>
A. <i>ab hoc</i>	Op-erē <i>from a work.</i>

Plural.

N. <i>hæc</i>	Oper-ā <i>works</i>
G. <i>horum</i>	Oper-um <i>of works</i>
D. <i>his</i>	Oper-ibūs <i>to works</i>
A. <i>hæc</i>	Oper-ā <i>works</i>
V. <i>o</i>	Oper-ā <i>o works</i>
A. <i>ab his</i>	Oper-ibūs <i>from works.</i>

Singular.

N. <i>hic</i>	} Paren-s <i>a parent</i>
et <i>hæc</i>	
G. <i>hujus</i>	Paren-tis <i>of a parent</i>
D. <i>huic</i>	Paren-ti <i>to a parent</i>
A. <i>hunc</i>	} Paren-tem <i>a parent</i>
et <i>hanc</i>	
V. <i>o</i>	Paren-s <i>o parent</i>
A. <i>ab hoc</i>	} Paren-te <i>from a pa-</i>
et <i>hac</i>	
	<i>rent.</i>

Plural.

N. <i>hi</i>	} Parent-es <i>parents</i>
et <i>hæ</i>	
G. <i>hor.</i>	} Parent-um <i>of parents</i>
et <i>har.</i>	
D. <i>his</i>	Parent-ibus <i>to parents</i>
A. <i>hos</i>	} Parent-es <i>parents</i>
et <i>has</i>	
V. <i>o</i>	Parent-es <i>o parents</i>
A. <i>ab his</i>	Parent-ibus <i>from pa-</i>
	<i>rents.</i>

Obs. So decline, also, nouns masculine; e. g., *Leo, a lion*; Gen. *Leōnis, of a lion*; and feminines; e. g., *Virgo, a virgin*; Gen. *Virgīnis, of a virgin, &c.*

§ 15.—OBSERVATIONS ON THE CASES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

On the GENITIVE SINGULAR of the Third Declension.

EXAMPLES.—MASCULINE and FEMININE.

O. <i>Latro,</i>	G. <i>Latrōnis.</i>	ES. <i>Miles,</i>	G. <i>Miltis.</i>
<i>Macedo,</i>	G. <i>Macedōnis.</i>	IS. <i>Lapis,</i>	G. <i>Lapīdis.</i>
<i>Homo,</i>	G. <i>Homīnis.</i>	<i>Avis,</i>	G. <i>Avis.</i>
ER. <i>Carcer,</i>	G. <i>Carcēris.</i>	US. <i>Virtus,</i>	G. <i>Virtūtis.</i>
<i>Pater,</i>	G. <i>Patris.</i>	<i>Trabs,</i>	G. <i>Trābis.</i>
OR. <i>Labor,</i>	G. <i>Labōris.</i>	<i>Pars,</i>	G. <i>Partis.</i>
<i>Arbor,</i>	G. <i>Arbōris.</i>	X. <i>Fax,</i>	G. <i>Fācis.</i>
AS. <i>Civitas,</i>	G. <i>Civitātis.</i>	<i>Pollex,</i>	G. <i>Pollicis.</i>
ES. <i>Nubes,</i>	G. <i>Nubis.</i>	<i>Cervix,</i>	G. <i>Cervicis.</i>
<i>Merces,</i>	G. <i>Mercēdis.</i>	<i>Merx,</i>	G. <i>Mercis.</i>

NEUTER.

C. <i>Lac,</i>	G. <i>Lactis.</i>	R. <i>Calcar,</i>	G. <i>Calcāris.</i>
E. <i>Retē,</i>	G. <i>Retis.</i>	R. <i>Ebur,</i>	G. <i>Ebōris.</i>
L. <i>Mēl,</i>	G. <i>Mellis.</i>	S. <i>Opus,</i>	G. <i>Opēris.</i>
<i>Animal,</i>	G. <i>Animālis.</i>	<i>Littus,</i>	G. <i>Littōris.</i>
N. <i>Carmen,</i>	G. <i>Carminis.</i>	<i>Jūs,</i>	G. <i>Jūris.</i>

§ 16.— *Obs. 1.* The old *Dative* of the Third Declension, like the *Ablative*, ended in *e* and *i*: *e. g. Triumviri ære flando; solvendo ære esse. — Postquam est morte datus Plautus, Comædia luget.*

Obs. 2. The old *Accusative* case of Masculine and Feminine Nouns of this Declension was in *im* (Greek *ιν*), and it remains in the following words:

Im habent in accusativo
Vis, ravis, pelvis, sitis, tussis,
Sināpis, cūcūmis, amussis,
Præsēpis, cannābis, secūris,
Charybdis, tigris, atque būris,
Et omnes FLUVII in is,
Ut Albis, Tibris, Thamesis.

Sed restis, puppis, turris, navis,
Et strigīlis, sementis, clavis,
Adjunge febris et aqualis,
Hæc EM vel IM dunt, utrum malis.

Obs. 3. In ablativo singulari
Malunt in I quàm E formari
APPELLATIVA, Atheniensis;
Et ADJECTIVA, quisque MENSIS
In is, Aprīlis; —ober, —ember,
Ut hi, Octōber et November;
Et quæ dant IM accusativo
Hæc dabunt I in ablativo.

Obs. 4. The GENERAL RULE for the Genitive Plural is, that *Parisyllabic* Nouns form it in *ium*, and *Imparisyllabic* in *um*: as,

Imbrium divina avis imminentum. — Hor.

But to this there are exceptions; as follow —

IUM plurali genitivo
Dant, dabant I quot ablativo;
Et s et x finita, ante
Eunte tantum consonante;
IUM plerumque monosyllaba
Dant, IUM ferè parisyllaba.

Sed quædam sunt excipienda
Memoriæque committenda.

UM, vates, senex, pater, panis,
 UM dant accipiter et canis;
 UM, frater, mater, jūvenis;
 UM, ferē apis, volucris.
 UM, crux, dux, nux, Thrax, fax, et grex,
 Gryps, Phryx, vox, lynx, et rex, et lex,
 Fur, ren, et splen, fraus, laus, et mos,
 Crus, grus, et sus, præs, pes, et flos.

Obs. 5. Some words have both UM and IUM: as, *mensis, sedes, mus, palus*. Adjectives of one termination end in *ium*: as, *felix, feliciūm*.

Obs. 6. The Accusative Plural of words which have *ium* in the Genitive Plural ended in *is* or *eis*; but is usually written *es*, as *cives, gentes*.

Obs. 7. To the THIRD Declension belong certain Greek words in *ǎ*, as *poemǎ*, Gen. *-ǎtis*, (like σῶμα, Gr. Gr. § 20.); in *ǎr*, as *aǎr*, Gen. *-ǎris*; in *ǎs*, as *lampǎs*, Gen. *-ǎdis*, (like λαμπάς); in *is*, as *poesīs*, Gen. *-ǎos* (like πόλις, Gr. Gr. § 26.); in *ǎs*, as *herǎs*, Gen. *-ǎos*, (ἥρως, Gr. Gr. § 20.); in *ǎ*, as *echǎ*, Gen. *ǎs*, (ἡχῶ, Gen. *-ǎos, -ǎus*); in *ǎs*, as *chaǎs*, Gen. *-us*, (χῆδος, Gen. *-ǎos, -ǎus*), (like τεῖχος, Gr. Gr. § 25.), *mǎlǎs*, *cǎlǎs*, *ǎrǎs*, (like τεῖχος); Plur. *Tempe*, (like τεῖχη); in *ys*, as *chlamys*, Acc. *-yda*; and others.

Obs. 8. The Genitive Singular, in PROSE, of *poesis* is *poesis*.

The Accusative Singular of *Paris* is *Parim, -in, ida*, and *-idem*; of *aǎr*, is *aǎrǎ, aǎrem*; of *athǎr*, is *atherǎ, athǎrem*.

The Ablative Singular of *Chaos* is *Chao*—Virg.

The Dative and Ablative Plural of *poema* is *poemǎtis*. The Poets use *Trǎǎsi, Lemǎǎsi*, from *Troas, Lemnias*.

Achilles, Pericles, Ulysses, &c., (besides their Latin inflexion), make a Genitive Singular in *i* and in *ǎi*; as, *ad pedes Achillǎi*—Hor. *Pupille Periclǎi*—Pers. *Remiges Ulyssǎi*—Hor. *Regnum Alyattǎi*—Hor. Even in Prose, as *Periclǎ, Archimedi*, in Cicero.

Obs. 9. The Greek words in *-ǎn*, which increase in *-ǎnos* or *-ǎnos*, generally end, in Latin, in *o*. Πλάτων, *-ǎnos*—*Plato*; Ἀγαμέμνων, *-ǎnos*—*Agamemno*; and so *Macedo*. Those in *-ǎn, -ǎntos*, or *-ǎntos*, generally preserve *on*, as *Ξενοφών*—*Xenophon*; Ἀνακρέων—*Anacreon*.

Obs. 10. Virgil never uses the Genitive, Dative, Accusative, or Ablative of *Dido*, either in the Greek or Latin form.

§ 17.—THE FOURTH DECLENSION

Makes the Genitive case Singular to end in *ūs* : as,

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. <i>hic</i>	Gradū-s <i>a step</i>	N. <i>hi</i>	Grad-ūs <i>steps</i>
G. <i>hujus</i>	Gradū-s <i>of a step</i>	G. <i>horum</i>	Grad-ūm <i>of steps</i>
D. <i>huic</i>	Gradu-i <i>to a step</i>	D. <i>his</i>	Grad-ībūs <i>to steps</i>
A. <i>hunc</i>	Gradu-m <i>a step</i>	A. <i>hos</i>	Grad-ūs <i>steps</i>
V. <i>o</i>	Gradū-s <i>o step</i>	V. <i>o</i>	Grad-ūs <i>o steps</i>
A. <i>ab hoc</i>	Gradū <i>from a step.</i>	A. <i>ab his</i>	Grad-ībūs <i>from steps.</i>

§ 18.—*Obs.* 1. The Fourth Declension is a contracted form of the Third: thus, *gradus*, Gen. *gradūs*, *gradūs*; Abl. *gradūē*, *gradū*.

Obs. 2. The Dative Singular in the Poets ends sometimes in *ē* (from *ūi*): as, *Sese mortali ostendere catu*—Catull.: *Sicanio pratenta sinu*—Virg.: *Parce metu, Cytherea*—Virg.: and the Genitive Plural in *ūm*; as *Quæ gratia currūm*—Virg.

Obs. 3. The Dative Plural of some words of the Fourth Declension ends in *ubus*; as,

In ubus, Quercus, ficus, acus,
(Non ibus) arcus, verus, lacus.
In ubus, specus, tribus, artus,
Et ferē portus, atque partus.

Obs. 4. The word *Domus* belongs to the Fourth and Second Declensions, but avoids certain endings (as, Singular, *dome*, *domu*; Plural *domi*, *domis*) of both; hence the memorial line

Sperne me, mu, mi, mis, si declinare domus vis.

Obs. 5. Neuters in *u*, indeclinable in the Singular, are declined in the Plural like words of the Fourth Declension: as, N. A. V. *cornua*, G. *cornuum*, D. A. *cornibus*. So *genu*.

§ 19.—THE FIFTH DECLENSION

Makes the Genitive and Dative Cases Singular to end in *ei* : as,

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. <i>hæc</i>	Faciē-s <i>a face</i>	N. <i>hæ</i>	Faciē-s <i>faces</i>
G. <i>hujus</i>	Faciē-i <i>of a face</i>	G. <i>harum</i>	Faciē-rum <i>of faces</i>
D. <i>huic</i>	Faciē-i <i>to a face</i>	D. <i>his</i>	Faciē-bus <i>to faces</i>
A. <i>hanc</i>	Faciē-m <i>a face</i>	A. <i>has</i>	Faciē-s <i>faces</i>
V. <i>o</i>	Faciē-s <i>o face</i>	V. <i>o</i>	Faciē-s <i>o faces</i>
A. <i>ab hac</i>	Faciē <i>from a face.</i>	A. <i>ab his</i>	Faciē-bus <i>from faces.</i>

Obs. 1. The Fifth Declension is also a contracted form of the Third, thus: *diēs*, Gen. *diēis*, by apocope of *s*, *diēi*.

The old Genitive is preserved in the word *Dies-Piter*, for *Diei Pater*.

Obs. 2. A shorter form of the Genitive was in *-e*: as, *die*. *Libra die somnique pares ubi fecerit horas* — Virg.; *Constantis juvenem fide* — Hor.; and is found in the Adverbs (properly genitive cases), *quoti-die*, *postri-die* (*posterī diei*), *meri-die* (*meri* (μέριον) *diei*), and others.

Plebei (in the words *Tribuni Plebei*) is the genitive from *Plebes*.

§ 20.—OF INDECLINABLES, DEFECTIVES, AND HETEROCLITES, see below, § 130.

Some words have different senses, according to their Declension or Gender: as, *fastus*, *-ūs* pride, *fasti* the calendar; *forum* the market, *fori* passages in a ship.

The Plural of some words has a different meaning from the Singular: as,

Singular.	Plural.
<i>Ædes</i> a temple,	<i>Ædes</i> a house.
<i>Auxilium</i> help,	<i>Auxilia</i> auxiliary troops.
<i>Bonum</i> something good,	<i>Bona</i> property.
<i>Carcer</i> a prison,	<i>Carceres</i> the barriers of a race-course.
<i>Castrum</i> a fort,	<i>Castra</i> a camp.
<i>Comitium</i> a part of the Roman forum,	<i>Comitia</i> assembly for election.
<i>Cupedia</i> daintiness,	<i>Cupediæ</i> or <i>cupedia</i> dainties
<i>Copia</i> abundance,	<i>Copiæ</i> troops.
<i>Facultas</i> power to do something,	<i>Facultates</i> property.
<i>Fortuna</i> fortune,	<i>Fortunæ</i> goods of fortune.
<i>Gratia</i> favour,	<i>Gratiæ</i> thanks or the Graces.
<i>Littera</i> letter of the alphabet,	<i>Litteræ</i> an epistle.
<i>Lustrum</i> a space of five years,	<i>Lustra</i> dens of wild beasts.
(<i>Ops</i> , obsol.) <i>Opis</i> help,	<i>Opes</i> power, wealth.
<i>Opera</i> labour,	<i>Operæ</i> workmen.
<i>Rostrum</i> a beak,	<i>Rostra</i> the place in the Roman forum from which the orators spoke.
<i>Sal</i> salt,	<i>Sales</i> witticisms.
<i>Tempus</i> time,	<i>Tempora</i> the temples of the head, as well as times.

§ 21.—DECLENSION OF NOUNS ADJECTIVE

FIRST DECLENSION.

NOUNS ADJECTIVE of *Three Terminations*: as, *bon-us, -a, -um*, good; *tener, -a, -um*, tender; *pulch-er, -ra, -rum*, fair; are declined, in the *masculine* and *neuter genders*, like *Nouns Substantive* of the *Second Declension*; and in the *feminine gender*, like *Nouns* of the *First Declension*.

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Bon-us	bon-a	bon-um	N. Bon-i	bon-æ	bon-a
G. Bon-i	bon-æ	bon-i	G. Bon-orum	bon-arum	bon-
D. Bon-o	bon-æ	bon-o	D. Bon-is		[orum
A. Bon-um	bon-am	bon-um	A. Bon-os	bon-as	bon-a
V. Bon-e	bon-a	bon-um	V. Bon-i	bon-æ	bon-a
A. Bon-o	bon-a	bon-o	A. Bon-is.		

(Cp. καλός, ἡ, δὲ, Gr. Gr. § 30.)

M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Tener	tener-a	tener-um	N. Tener-i	tener-æ	tener-a
G. Tener-i	tener-æ	tener-i	G. Tener-orum	-arum	-orum
D. Tener-o	tener-æ	tener-o	D. Tener-is		
A. Tener-um	-am	-um	A. Tener-os	tener-as	tener-a
V. Tener	tener-a	tener-um	V. Tener-i	tener-æ	tener-a
A. Tener-o	tener-a	tener-o.	A. Tener-is.		

Tener is shortened from *tenerus*. (Cp. ἐχθρός, -ός, δὲ, Gr. Gr. § 30.)

For other words so declined, as *asper*, *miser*, &c., see above, § 10.

Dexter is declined both like *pulcher* and *tener*.

So decline *satur*, -a, -um.

22.—SECOND DECLENSION.

The Adjectives of *Three Terminations* in *er*, *is*, *ē*, are declined like *Nouns* of the *Third Declension*: as, *acer* sharp.

M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Acer	ācris	ācre	N. Acres	acres	acria
G. Acris			G. Acrium		
D. Acri			D. Acribus		
A. Acrem	acrem	acre	A. Acres	acres	acria
V. Acer	acris	acre	V. Acres	acres	acria
A. Acri.			A. Acribus.		

So decline *ālācer*, *campester*, *celer*, *equester*, *salūber*, *silvester*: but *alacris* is sometimes used as a nominative masculine.

UNUS one, *solus* alone, *totus* the whole, *ullus* any (diminutive of *unus*), *nullus* none, *alter* the other of two, *uter* whether of the two, *neuter* neither of the two, and other Adjectives, make the Genitive Case Singular in *ius*, and the Dative in *i*: as,

Unus, solus, totus, ullus,
 Uter, alter, neuter, nullus.
Alius-que, in genitivo
Ius dant; i in dativo.

Obs. Alteruter, alterutra *vel* altera utra, alterutrum *vel* alterum utrum; G. alterutrius, *vel* alterius utrius; D. alterutri, *vel* alteri uteri; utraque enim declinatio in usu veterum est. — Priscian. vi. 1. 4.; vi. 7. 5.

N. Uterque, utrâque, utrumque,
 G. Utriusque,
 D. Utrique, &c.

Unus one, is thus declined :

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Un-us	un-a	un-um	N. Un-i	un-æ	un-a
G. Un-ius			G. Un-orum	-arum	-orum
D. Un-ī			D. Un-is		
A. Un-um	un-am	un-um	A. Un-os	un-as	un-a
V. Un-e	un-a	un-um	V. Un-i	un-æ	un-a
A. Un-o	un-â	un-o.	A. Un-is.		

Unus has no *plural* number, unless it be joined to a Substantive which has *no singular* number: as, *unæ litteræ* a letter, *una mœnia* a wall.

In like manner is declined *alius* another, which makes *aliud* in the neuter gender, singular number.

Obs. For *alius* and *aliud*, the forms *alis*, *alid*, are found in the older Latin writers, as Catullus and Lucretius. Hence *ali-quis*, i. e. *alius quis*.

§ 23.—THIRD DECLENSION.

NOUNS ADJECTIVE of *Two*, and those also of *One Termination*, are declined like the *Third Declension* of *Substantives*: as, *tristis* sad, *melior* better, *felix* happy.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. <i>hic</i> et <i>hæc</i>	} Trist-is <i>hoc</i> trist-ě	N. <i>hi</i> et <i>hæ</i>	} Trist-es <i>hæc</i> trist-ia
G. <i>hujus</i>		G. <i>hor.</i>	
D. <i>huic</i>		har. <i>hor.</i>	
A. <i>hunc</i> et <i>hanc</i>	} Trist-em <i>hoc</i> trist-ě	D. <i>his</i>	} Trist-ibus
V. <i>o</i>		A. <i>hos</i> et <i>has</i>	
A. <i>ab hoc</i> , <i>hac, hoc</i>	} Tristi.	V. <i>o</i>	} Trist-es et trist-ia
		A. <i>ab his</i>	

N. <i>hic</i> et <i>hæc</i>	} Meli-ōr <i>hoc</i> meli-ūs	N. <i>hi</i> et <i>hæ</i>	} Melior-es <i>hæc</i> meli-or-a
G. <i>hujus</i>		G. <i>hor.</i>	
D. <i>huic</i>		har. <i>hor.</i>	
A. <i>hunc</i> et <i>hanc</i>	} Meli-orem <i>hoc</i> meli-ūs	D. <i>his</i>	} Melior-ibus
V. <i>o</i>		A. <i>hos</i> et <i>has</i>	
A. <i>ab hoc</i> , <i>hac, hoc</i>	} Meli-ore vel meli-ori.	V. <i>o</i>	} Melior-es et melior-a
		A. <i>ab his</i>	

(Cp. ἀληθής, Gr. Gr. § 31.)

N. <i>hic</i> <i>hæc et hoc</i>	} Feli-x	N. <i>hi</i> et <i>hæ</i>	} Felic-es <i>hæc</i> felic-ia
G. <i>hujus</i>		G. <i>hor.</i>	
D. <i>huic</i>		har. <i>hor.</i>	
A. <i>hunc</i> et <i>hanc</i>	} Feli-cem <i>hoc</i> feli-x	D. <i>his</i>	} Felic-ibus
V. <i>o</i>		A. <i>hos</i> et <i>has</i>	
A. <i>ab hoc</i> , <i>hac, hoc</i>	} Feli-cē vel feli-ci.	V. <i>o</i>	} Felic-es et felic-ia
		A. <i>ab his</i>	

(Cp. πένης, Gr. Gr. § 32.)

§ 24.—*Obs.* 1. Some adjectives of one termination are joined with neuter Substantives, only in particular cases: thus say, Abl. *tricuspidē telo*; but say not, Nom. *telum tricuspis*; because a neuter Substantive may end, in the ablative, in *e*; but none ends, in the nominative, in *is*.

Obs. 2 Some Verbs in *x* are joined to *neuter* as well as *feminine*, but not to *masculine*, Substantives: as, *ultrice flagello, victricibus armis*.

Obs. 3. The Ablative Singular of Adjectives of two terminations or one generally ends in *i*: as, *tristis, tristi*.

Except, *In ablativo singulari*

Malunt in x quàm i formari

Hæc, pauper, puber, hospes, compos,

Superstes, senex, sospes, impos,

Compostaque cum corpus, pes,

Bicorpor, bipes, multipes.

Other Exceptions :

Obs. 4. Adjectives of one termination, as *felix*, have both *x* and *i* in the Ablative, but *i* is more usual; and comparatives, as *melior*, but *x* is more usual; though, in Poetry, *felice* and *meliori* are common. Horace prefers the form in *e*, as *meliore*.

Obs. 5. The Ablatives of *Participles*, not used *adjectively* (or as mere epithets, but denoting a *fact* or *circumstance*), from Nominatives in *ans* and *ens*, end in *te* not *ti*: (thus *Nocte sequente* means—the night coming on; but *Sequenti nocte* is—the following night): as *Imperante Augusto*, not *imperanti*. Horace never forms this Participle in *ti*.

Obs. 6. *Complures* makes both *complura* and *compluria*, in the Nom. Neut. Plur. *Vetus* has only *vetera*; *Plus* has only *plura*.

§ 25.—*Ambō* both, and *duo* two, are Nouns Adjective, and are thus declined in the *Plural Number*;

Nom.	Amb-o	amb-æ	amb-o	<i>both,</i>
Gen.	Amb-orum	amb-arum	amb-orum	<i>of both,</i>
Dat.	Amb-obus	amb-abus	amb-obus	<i>to both,</i>
Acc.	Amb-o et -os	amb-as	amb-o	<i>both,</i>
Voc.	Amb-o	amb-æ	amb-o	<i>both,</i>
Abl.	Amb-obus	amb-abus	amb-obus	<i>with both</i>

(Cp. ἄμφω, and δύο, δύο, Gr. Gr. § 36.)

Tres *three*, is declined like *Tristes*: as, N. A. V. *Tres*, neut. *tria*; G. *trium*; D. *tribus*.

(Cp. τρεῖς, Gr. Gr. § 36.)

Obs. Some words are composed of two members, the one a Substantive, the other an Adjective: as N. V. *Res-publica*, G. D. *Rei-publica*, A. *Rem-publicam*, Ab. *Re-publicâ*. So, N. A. V. *Jus-jurandum*, G. *Juris-jurandi*, &c.

§ 26.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

ADJECTIVES have *Three* degrees of Comparison :

I. The *Positive*, which denotes the quality of a thing *absolutely*, without any reference to *more* or *less* ; as, *doctus* learned, *brevis* short.

II. The *Comparative*, which expresses an *increase* or *extension* of the quantity : as, *doctior* more learned, *brevior* shorter or more short.

III. The *Superlative*, which increases or extends the signification, or comparison, to the greatest degree : as, *doctissimus* most learned, *brevissimus* the shortest or most short.

The *Comparative* is formed from the first case of the positive that endeth in *i*, by adding thereto *or* in the masculine and feminine gender, and *us* in the neuter : as, from Gen. *docti*, is formed *hic et hæc doctior*, *hoc doctius*, more learned ; of *brevis* Dat. *brevi*, is formed *hic et hæc brevior*, *hoc brevius*, shorter or more short.

The *Superlative* is formed also from the first case of the positive that endeth in *i*, by adding thereto *ssimus* : as, from Gen. *docti*, is formed *docti-ssimus* most learned ; Dat. *brevi*, is formed *brevi-ssimus* shortest or most short:

Obs. 1. The Comparative often signifies *excess*, or *too much* : as, *jaçantior Ancus*—Virg. ; or rather, as, *sum paullo infirmior*—Hor.

Obs. 2. The Superlative often signifies *very much* : as, *purissima mella* very pure honey—Virg. So, *Justissima tellus*—Virg. ; *Optimus Virgilius*—Hor.

§ 27.—Adjectives ending in *er* form their Superlative Degree from the Nominative Case, by adding *rimus* : as, of *pulcher* fair, *pulcher-rimus* fairest or most fair ; also, *vetus* makes *veterrimus* :

Adjectives ending in *lis* form their Superlative Degree according to the general rule : as, of *utilis* useful, Dat. *utili*, is formed *utili-ssimus* most useful.

Except the following, which change *is* into *limus*: as,

<i>Agil-is</i>	nimble,	<i>agil-limus</i>	nimblest, or most nimble.
<i>Dōcil-is</i>	docile,	<i>dōcil-limus</i>	most docile.
<i>Facil-is</i>	easy,	<i>facil-limus</i>	easiest.
<i>Gracil-is</i>	slender,	<i>gracil-limus</i>	slenderest.
<i>Humil-is</i>	low,	<i>humil-limus</i>	lowest.
<i>Simil-is</i>	like,	<i>simil-limus</i>	likest.

Adjectives in *-dicus*, *-ficus*, *-volus*, make *-entior* and *entissimus*: as,

<i>Male-dīcus,</i>	<i>-dicentior,</i>	<i>-dicentissimus.</i>
<i>Bene-fīcus,</i>	<i>-ficientior,</i>	<i>-ficientissimus.</i>
<i>Bene-vōlus,</i>	<i>-volentior,</i>	<i>-volentissimus.</i>

§ 28.—Many adjectives vary from these general rules, and form their comparison irregularly: as,

Positive.		Comparative.		Superlative.	
<i>Bonus</i>	good,	<i>melior</i>	better,	<i>optimus</i>	best.
<i>Malus</i>	bad,	<i>pejor</i>	worse,	<i> pessimus</i>	worst.
<i>Magnus</i>	great,	<i>major</i>	greater,	<i> maximus</i>	greatest.
<i>Parvus</i>	little,	<i>minor</i>	less,	<i> minimus</i>	least.
<i>Multus</i>	much,	<i>plus</i>	more,	<i> plurimus</i>	most.
<i>Dives</i>	rich,	<i>ditior</i>	more rich,	<i> ditissimus</i>	most rich.
<i>Nēquam</i>	wicked,	<i>nēquior</i>	more wicked,	<i>nēquissimus</i>	most wicked.
<i>Externus</i>	outward,	<i>exterior</i>	more outward,	<i>extrēmus</i> vel <i>extīmus</i>	most [outward.
<i>Infērus</i>	low,	<i>inferior</i>	lower,	<i>infīmus</i> vel <i>imū</i>	lowest.
<i>Postērus</i>	behind,	<i>posterior</i>	more behind,	<i>postremus</i> vel <i>postūmus</i>	most [behind.
<i>Sūperus</i>	high,	<i>sūperior</i>	higher,	<i>suprēmus</i> vel <i>summus</i>	highest.
		<i>Interior</i>	more inward,	<i>inīmus</i>	most inward.
<i>Jūvenis</i>	young,	<i>jūnior</i>	younger or more young.		
<i>Sēnex</i>	old,	<i>sēnior</i>	older or more old.		
		<i>Prior</i>	former,	<i>prīmus</i>	first.
		<i>Propior</i>	nearer,	<i>proxīmus</i>	nearest.
		<i>Cīteriꝫ</i>	hither,	<i>citīmus</i>	most hither.
		<i>Ullerior</i>	further,	<i>ultīmus</i>	last.
		<i>Dēterior</i>	less good,	<i>deterimus</i>	least good.
		<i>Anterior</i>	more in front.		
		<i>Sēquior</i>	worse.		
(ōnds quick,)		<i>Ociōr</i>	quicker,	<i>ocissimus</i>	quickest.

With some others.

Obs. 1. If a vowel comes before *us* in the Nominative Case of an Adjective, the comparison is usually made by *magis* more, and *maximē* most: as, *pīus* godly, *magis pīus* more godly, *maximē pīus* most godly; except where *qu* precedes *us*, as *antiquus*, *antiquior*; *aequus*, *aequior*.

Obs. 2. For COMPARISON OF ADVERBS, see under ADVERBS, below, § 84.

§ 29. — NUMERALS. (Gr. Gr. § 36.)

CARDINALS	ORDINALS	NUMERAL ADVERBS
Answer the question, <i>Quot? How many?</i>	Answer the question, <i>Quotus? In which place?</i>	Answer the question, <i>Quoties? Quotiens? How often?</i>
I. Un-us, -a, um	prim-us, -a, um	semel
II. Du-o, -æ, -o	secundus, alter	bis
III. Tres, tria	tertius	ter
IV. Quatuor	quartus	quater
V. Quinque	quintus	quinquies
VI. Sex	sextus	sexies
VII. Septem	septimus	septies
VIII. Octo	octavus	octies
IX. Novem	nonus	novies
X. Decem	decimus	decies
XI. Un-dēcim	undecimus	undecies
XII. Duo-decim	duodecim	duodecies
XIII. Tre-decim	tertiusdecimus	tredecies
XIV. Quatuor-decim	quartusdecimus	quaterdecies
XV. Quin-decim	quintusdecimus	quindecies
XVI. Se-decim	sextusdecimus	sedecies
*XVII. Septem-decim	septimusdecimus	septiesdecies
XVIII. Duo-de-viginti	duodevicesimus	duodevicies
XIX. Un-de-viginti	undevicesimus	undevicies
†XX. Viginti	vicesimus	vicies
†XXI. Viginti unus, &c.	vicesimus primus	semel et vices
XXVIII. Duo-de-triginta	duodetricesimus	duodetricies
XXIX. Un-de-triginta	undetricesimus	undetricies
XXX. Triginta	tricesimus	trices
XL. Quadraginta	quadragesimus	quadrages
L. Quinquaginta	quingagesimus	quingages
LX. Sexaginta	sexagesimus	sexages
LXX. Septuaginta	septuagesimus	septuages
LXXX. Octoginta	octogesimus	octogies
XC. Nonaginta	nonagesimus	nonages
XCIX. Un-de-centum	undecentesimus	undecenties
C. Centum	centesimus	centies
CC. Ducent-i, -æ, -a	ducentesimus	ducenties
CCC. Trecenti, &c.	trecentesimus	trecenties
CCCC. Quadringenti	quadringentesimus	quadringenties
D. Quingenti	quingentesimus	quingenties
DC. Sexcenti	sexcentesimus	sexcenties
DCC. Septingenti	septingentesimus	septingenties
DCCC. Octingenti	octingentesimus	octingenties
CM. Nongenti	nongentesimus	nongenties
M. Mille	millesimus	millicies
MM. Duo millia	bis millesimus	bis millicies.

* Or decem et septem.

† Or unus et viginti.

DISTRIBUTIVES	MULTIPLICATIVES	PROPORTIONALS
Answer the question, <i>Quoteni? How many to each?</i>	Answer the question, <i>Quotuplex? How many fold?</i>	Answer the question, <i>Quotuplus? How many times as great?</i>
1. Singul-i, -æ, -a	simplex (ἁπλοῦς)	simplus
2. Bini	duplex (διπλοῦς, κ. τ. λ.)	duplex (διπλάσιος)
3. Terni	triplex	triplex (τριπλάσιος, κ. τ. λ.)
4. Quaterni	quadruplex	quadruplus
5. Quīni	quincuplex	quintuplus
6. Sēni	sescuplex	sescuplus
7. Septēni	septemplex	septuplus
8. Octōni	octuplex	octuplus
9. Noveni	novemplex	novuplus
10. Dēni	decemplex	decuplus
11. Un-deni	undecemplex	undecuplus
12. Duo-deni	duodecemplex	duodecuplus
13. Terni-deni	&c.	&c.
20. Viceni	&c.	&c.
100. Centeni	centuplex	centuplus
1000. Milleni	&c.	&c.
2000. Bis milleni	&c.	&c.

The first *three* Cardinals have been declined above.

From Four to One Hundred they are undeclinable. — (Cp. Gr. Gr § 36.)

All Ordinals are declined like *bonus*. — (Cp. Gr. Gr. § 36.)

§ 30. — Obs. 1. Examples of *Distributives* :

Sæpe tribus lectis videas cœnare *quaternos*. — *Hor.*

Quinas hic capiti mercedes exsecat. — *Hor.*

Obs. 2. Ordinals are used in Latin where Cardinals are used in English: as, *every four years*, *quarto quoque anno*.

Obs. 3. The Poets use the *Distributives* for Cardinals: as, *Per duodena regit cœli Sol aureus astra* — *Virg.*; especially with Substantives which have no singular; as, *binæ litteræ*, for *duæ*.

Obs. 4. In the Numerals up to *twenty*, the *smaller* number *precedes*, unless *et* is used: as, *septem decem*, *tertius decimus*, *decem et septem*, *decimus et tertius*: after *twenty*, the *reverse* of this is the case; as, *septem et triginta*, or *triginta septem*.

In Numerals above 100, the *greater* number *precedes*, with or without *et*.

Obs. 5. The Numerals up to 900,000 are formed by addition ; after it by multiplication : thus,

For 1,000,000, say *decies centena millia* ; or, simply, *decies*.

Obs. 6. Also *mille* (χίλιοι) used as an *Adjective* is undeclinable : as,
Tentat mille vafer modis. — *Hor.*

But *Mille*, a neuter *Substantive* (χίλις) of the Third Declension, is declined, and takes a genitive after it :

Ille armatorum multis cum *millibus* ibat.

Millia frumenti tua triverit area centum. — *Hor*

—— scribit sibi *millia* quinque

Esse domi *chlamydum*. — *Hor.*

—— positis intus Chii veterisque Falerni

Mille cadis, nihil est, tercentum *millibus*, acre

Potet acētum. — *Hor.*

TEMPORAL NUMERALS.

YEAR, of this year, *hormus*, *hornotinus*.

YEAR.	MONTH.
1. Anniculus	
2. Bimus	bimestris
3. Trimus	trimestris
4. Quadrimus	
6.	semestris
20. Vicenarius	
30. Tricenarius.	

Obs. 7. *Biennis* and *triennis* are not to be used, but their Derivatives, *biennium* and *triennium*, may be.

Obs. 8. The Neuters of Ordinals are used adverbially, as *Primo* or *Primum Consul*, *Secundum Consul*.

Obs. 9. To Numerals may be added the words *Unio*, *Ternio*, *Quaternio*, *Serio*.

§ 31.—OF A PRONOUN.

A PRONOUN is used instead of a Noun (*pro nomine*), and is declined with number, case, and gender.—(Gr. Gr. § 37.)

		<i>Cujus-a,-um</i>	whose ?	<i>cujas</i>	of what country ?
<i>Ego</i>	I ;	<i>meus</i>	mine.		
<i>tu</i>	thou or you ;	<i>tuus</i>	thine.		
<i>ille</i>	he ;	<i>noster</i>	ours ;	<i>nostras</i>	of our country.
<i>is</i>	he ;	<i>vester</i>	yours ;	<i>vestras</i>	of your country.
<i>sui</i>	of himself ;	<i>suus</i>	his own.		
<i>ipse</i>	he himself.				
<i>iste</i>	that.				
<i>hic</i>	this.				

To these may be added their compounds, *egomēt* I myself ; *tutē* thou thyself ; *idem* the same ; also the relative *qui* who or what.

§ 32.—DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

PERSONAL.

Ego, tu, sui, are Pronouns *Personal*, and are thus declined :

Singular.			Plural.		
N.	<i>Ego</i>	<i>I</i>	N.	<i>Nos</i>	<i>we</i>
G.	<i>Mei</i>	<i>of me</i>	G.	<i>Nostrum</i>	<i>of us</i>
D.	<i>Mihi</i> (<i>mī</i>)	<i>to me</i>	D.	<i>Nobis</i>	<i>to us</i>
A.	<i>Me</i>	<i>me</i>	A.	<i>Nos</i>	<i>us</i>
V.	—		V.	—	
A.	<i>Me</i>	<i>from or by me.</i>	A.	<i>Nobis</i>	<i>from or by us.</i>
	(Cp. <i>ἐγώ</i> , Gr. Gr. § 37.)			(Cp. <i>ὡς</i> , Gr. Gr. § 37.)	
N.	<i>Tu</i>	<i>thou or you</i>	N.	<i>Vos</i>	<i>ye or you</i>
G.	<i>Tui</i>	<i>of thee or you</i>	G.	<i>Vestrum</i>	<i>of you</i>
D.	<i>Tibi</i>	<i>to thee or you</i>	D.	<i>Vobis</i>	<i>to you</i>
A.	<i>Te</i>	<i>thee or you</i>	A.	<i>Vos</i>	<i>you</i>
V.	<i>Tu</i>	<i>o thou or you</i>	V.	<i>Vos</i>	<i>o ye</i>
A.	<i>Te</i>	<i>from or by thee or you.</i>	A.	<i>Vobis</i>	<i>from or by you.</i>
	(Cp. <i>σύ</i> , Gr. Gr. § 37.)			(Cp. <i>σφῶ</i> , Gr. Gr. § 37.)	

§ 33. — *Obs.* 1. The *Genitives nostrūm, vestrūm*, of us, of you, are equivalent to *ex nobis, ex vobis*, i. e. consisting of or taken from us or you : as, *unus nostrūm*, one of us.

Obs. 2. The *Genitives nostri, vestri* (in the phrases *amor nostri, memor vestri*), do not come from *nos, vos*, but from *noster, vester*, and are genitives singular of the neuter gender.

Obs. 3. *Venio tui videndi causā* is said even of a woman, and not *videndæ*.

§ 34. — *Sui*, of himself, herself, itself, themselves, has no Nominative or Vocative Case, and is thus declined :

Singular and Plural.

G.	Sui	of himself,	} herself, itself, themselves, &c.
D.	Sibi	to himself,	
A.	Sē et sēsē	himself,	
Ab.	Se et sese	by himself,	

(Cp. *ob*, Gr. Gr. § 37.)

§ 35. — POSSESSIVE.

Meus, tuus, suus, cujus, noster, vester are Pronouns *Possessive*, and declined like *bonus*, except that *meus* makes *mī* in the Vocative Case Singular *Masculine* (*mea* in *Feminine*) ; and *tuus, suus*, with many other Pronouns, have no Vocative Case.

(Cp. *ἐμὸς, οὖός, ἐός*, Gr. Gr. § 38.)

Sui and *suius* are called *Reciprocal* or *Reflexive* Pronouns, because they refer to the *Subject* of the sentence whose act reverts upon *himself, herself, itself, or themselves*.

Ex. — Scipiadēs Pōnos, proprios et vicit amores ;

Vicit *Eos* ; — sed *Se* vincere, majus erat. (See below, § 154.)

§ 36. — *Nostrās, vestras, and cujas* are declined like *felix*, thus : — Nom. *nostras*, Gen. *nostrātis*.

Hic has been declined above, p. 4.

§ 37.—DEMONSTRATIVE. (See below, § 154.)

Ille, illa, illud, he, she, that; and *ist-e, -a, -ud*, that; are Pronouns *Demonstrative*, and are thus declined:

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Ill-e	ill-a	ill-ud	N. Ill-i	ill-æ	ill-a
G. Ill-ius			G. Ill-orum	ill-arum	ill-orum
D. Ill-i			D. Ill-is		
A. Ill-um	ill-am	ill-ud	A. Ill-os	ill-as	ill-a
V. —			V. —		
A. Ill-o	ill-â	ill-o.	A. Ill-is.		

Obs. OLLUS is an old form of *ille*.

In like manner is also declined *ipse* he himself, except that the Nominative and Accusative Cases Singular make *ipsum* (not *ipsud*) in the Neuter Gender.

Obs. Add, N. *illic* he or this man here, *illæc*, *illoc* or *illuc*;

Ac. *illunc*, *illanc*, *illoc* or *illuc*;

Ab. *illoc*, *illâc*, *illoc*.

So, *isthic* that person there.

§ 38.—*Is, ea, id*, he, she, that, is thus declined:

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Is	ea	id	N. Ii	eæ	ea
G. Ejus			G. Eorum	earum	eorum
D. Ei			D. Iis <i>vel</i> eis.		
A. Eum	eam	id	A. Eos	eas	ea
V. —			V. —		
A. Eo	eâ	eo.	A. Iis <i>vel</i> eis.		

(Cp. Gr. Gr. § 38.)

In like manner also is declined its compound *idem* (is-dem) the same: as, Nom. *īdem*, *eādem*, *īdem*; Gen. *ejusdem*, &c.

§ 39.—*Obs.* 1. *Is* refers to a person mentioned before, or one implied in the relative *qui*. *Idem* (*is-dem*) and *ipse* (*is-pse*) are emphatic for *Is*.

Obs. 2. The Genitive *Ejus* is very rare in *Poetry*; it is *never* used by Virgil, *twice* only by Horace in his Odes, and *twice* only by Ovid.

Obs. 3. *Iste* is very often in a *bad* sense: *Ille* in a *good*.

§ 40.—RELATIVE, INDEFINITE AND INTERROGATIVE.

Qui who, is a Pronoun *Relative*, and is thus declined :

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Qui	quæ	quod	N. Qui	quæ	quæ
G. Cujus			G. Quorum	quarum	quorum
D. Cui			D. Quibus <i>vel</i>	queis	
A. Quem	quam	quod	A. Quos	quas	quæ
V. —			V. —		
A. { Quo	quâ	quo <i>vel</i>	A. Quibus <i>vel</i>	queis	
{ Qui	quî	quî.			

INDEFINITE AND INTERROGATIVE.

So is declined also *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, who *or* what ? In like manner are also declined the compounds of *qui* : *quidam*, *quædam*, *quoddam* or *quiddam*, a *certain person* (whom I know, but do not wish to mention by name) ; *quivis*, *quilibet*, any one you choose ; *quicunque* whosoever.

Quis, *quæ*, *quid*, who *or* what ? is a Pronoun *Interrogative*, and is also declined like *qui*.

As is also *aliquis* some one (generally some *great* or *important* object) ; and other compounds of *quis* are also declined like *qui*, as *ecquis* who ?

Quis, *ecquis*, and *aliquis* make the Feminine Gender of the Nominative Case Singular, and the Neuter of the Nominative and Accusative Cases Plural, in *quâ*.

Examples of QUI Interrogative.

Qui gurgēs, aut *quæ* flumina lugubris

Ignara belli ?—*quod* mare Dauniae

Non decoloravere cædes ?

Quæ caret ora cruore nostro ? — *Hor.*

Obs. *Quid* and its compounds are used *substantively*, as *quid consilii* ?

Quod is used as an *Adjective*, as *quod consilium* ?

Like *qui* are also declined *quisque* each, *unusquisque* every one, *quispiam* some one or other, *quisquam* any one at all.

Obs. *Quispiam* is not so particular and certain as *aliquis*.

Obs. 1. *Quispiam* and *quisquam* are used only in the Singular.

Obs. 2. *Quisque* signifies *each* of persons really existing.

Quivis (ὁ τυχὼν), *any one* of persons whom you may suppose to exist.

Quilibet any one you choose.

Quotusquisque signifies *how few!* literally, of what (a small) amount is the every one! Ex. *Quotus enim quisque disertus est?*

Quisquis whosoever, is thus declined:

Nom. *Quisquis*, *quidquid vel quicquid*,

Acc. *Quemquam*, *quidquid vel quicquid*,

Abl. *Quoquo*, *quâquâ*, *quoquo*.

§ 41.—EXAMPLES of Pronouns formed with QUI and QUIS.

Quicquid delirant Reges, plectuntur Achivi. — *Hor.*

Aude *aliquid* brevibus Gyaris et carcere dignum,

Si vis esse *aliquis*. — *Juv.*

Non recito *cuiquam* nisi amicis, idque coactus;

Non *ubivis*, coramve *quibuslibet*. — *Hor.*

An *quidquam* tanto nobis sit munere majus?

Occurrit *quidam* notus mihi nomine tantum.

Qualibet in *quemvis* opprobria fingere sævus.

Non *cuivis* homini contingit adire Corinthum. —

Ut *cuique* est ætas, ita *quemque* facetus adopta.

Quisque suæ vitæ semina jacta metet.

Præsentem monstrat *qualibet* herba Deum.

Est *aliquid*, *quocunque* loco, *quocunque* recessu,

Unius sese dominum fecisse lacertæ. — *Juv.*

Quidam ait, 'est *aliquid*, non *quâvis* ire;' neque errat

Quisquam, *quæque* sequens optima, *quicquid* agit.

§ 42.—*Obs. 1.* *Quisquis*, whosoever, is more commonly used as a *Substantive*, and *Quicunque* as an *Adjective*: as,

Pindarum *quisquis* studet æmulari. — *Hor.*

Ne, *quicunque* Deus, *quicunque* adhibebitur heros. — *Hor.*

Obs. 2. *Quicunque* is often used with a *tnesis*.

Quem fors dierum *cunque* dabit, lucro appone. — *Hor.*

Obs. 3. *Quisquam* is more generally used as a Substantive, and *ullus* as an Adjective: as

Non isthic obliquo oculo mea commoda *quisquam*
Limat; — nec citharæ nec musæ deditus *ulli*. — *Hor.*

Obs. 4. *Quisquam* and *ullus* are only used with negatives and questions; and they *exclude all persons*, as *quivis* and *quilibet* *include all*.

Sis memor, includunt *Quivis* et *Quilibet* omnes;
Sed contra *Quisquam* cunctos excludit et *Ullus*.



§ 43.—SYLLABLES PREFIXED AND AFFIXED TO PRONOUNS.

PREFIXES.

ALI (for *alius*) is prefixed to Pronouns: as, *ali-quis*.

Ec (*en ! ecce !*) is prefixed to Pronouns: as,

Equis (*En ! quis ?*) me hodie vivit fortunatior ?

Eccum, for *ecce eum*; *eccillam*, for *ecce illam*.

NE is prefixed as a Negative to Pronouns: as, (*nē ūter*) *neuter* (*obditerpos*), neither of the two; (*ne ullus*) *nullus*, none; (*ne usquam*) *nusquam*, no where; (*ne unquam*) *nunquam*, never; (*ne homo*) *nēmo*, no one.

Obs. *Nēmo* takes its Genitive and Ablative from *nullus*; *neminis* and *nemine* being rarely used.



§ 44.—AFFIXES.

Ce, **dem**, **met**, **pse**, **pte**, **te**, are added to Pronouns, as *self* and *own* are in English: —

Ce, **CINE** are affixed to *hic*, as *hic-ce*, *il-lic* (for *ille-ce*), *istic* (for *iste-ce*), *hic-cine* (for *hicce-ne* ?) interrogative. So also *siccine* ?

DEM to *is*, as *idem* from *is-dem*: so to Numerals and Adverbs, as *totidem*, *item* (for *ita-dem*); *tantum-dem*, *tandem* (for *tandem*).

Equidem is for *ego-quidem*, and is used with the *first person singular*: as,

Equidem de te nil tale verebar. — *Virg.*

Semina vidi *equidem* multos medicare serentes. — *Virg.*

ME is added to the Personal Pronouns *ego*, *tu*, *sui*, (especially before *ipse*), and to their Possessives, in all cases (except genitive plural), as *ego-met*, *tu-met*, *se-met*; except that for *tumet*, *tute* is used.

NA and **NU** are interrogative, as *quisnam?* *numquis?*

NE interrogative, as *tu-ne?* *me-ne?*

PS is added to Pronouns of the Third Person, as *ipse* for *is-pse*, *re-pse* for *re-ed-pse*.

PT is added to the Possessives *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, in the Ablative Case, as *meâpte*, *sudpte*.

TE is added to Pronouns of the Second and Third Persons, as *tu-tē*, *is-te* (*iste*).

Also *dam*, *idem*, *piam*, *quam*, *que*, *cunque*, are added to Pronouns:—

DAM is demonstrative, as *quidam* a certain one; *quondam* (*quomdam*) at a certain time.

IDEM, to *tot*, as *totidem*; to *tantum*, as *tantumdem*.

PIAM and **QUAM** are added to *quis*: *piam*, affirmatively, as *quispiam*; *quam* negatively, as *quisquam*.

Add to these **QUE** (in the sense of *every*): *quis-que* every one, *ubi-que* every where, *cum-que* every when, *undi-que* every whence.

CUNQUE at each time (*cum-que*) to *qui*: as *quicunque* whosoever; so *qualiscunque*, *quotcunque*, *utcunque*, *ubicunque*, *quandocunque*, *undecunque*, *quocunque* — of what sort-, how many-, when- or how-, where-, when-, whence-, whither-, -soever.

§ 45. — OF A VERB.

A **VERB** expresses the *action* or *being* of a thing, and is usually the principal word (*verbum*) of a sentence. (Gr. Gr. § 39.)

§ 46. — Of VERBS there are two VOICES.

1. The *Active* (from *ago*, *actus*—*to do*): as, *amo* I love.
2. The *Passive* (from *patior*, *passus*—*to suffer*): as, *amor* I am loved.

Ex. — *Otia damnantur quæ nulla negotia tractant.*

Verbs are either **TRANSITIVE** or **INTRANSITIVE**.

A Verb is called *Transitive*, when the action passes on (*transit*) to a noun following: as, *vinco te* I conquer thee, *amo patrem* I love my father, *vera loquor* I speak the truth, *veneror Deum* I worship God.

A Verb is called *Intransitive*, when the action does not pass on to, or require, a noun following: as, *dormio* I sleep, *curro* I run, *sto* I stand, *glorior* I boast.

Of Verbs ending in *o* some are *Transitive*, as, *vinco* I conquer; and *o* is changed into *or* when these become *Passive*, as *vincor* I am conquered.

But in those in *o* which are *Intransitive*, as, *niteo* I shine, *o* cannot be changed into *or*.

Some Verbs ending in *or* are called *Deponents*, laying aside (*deponentia*) the *Passive signification*; and some are *Transitive*, as, *vera loquor* I speak the truth; some are *Intransitive*, as, *glorior* I boast.

Verbs *Deponent* are *declined* like Verbs *Passive*; but with *Gerunds* and *Supines*, like Verbs *Active*.

Those *Intransitive Verbs* which have in all their tenses an *Active form*, as, *lateo* I lie hid, are called *Neuters* (*neuter* neither, *i. e.* neither *Active* nor *Passive*).

Those *Intransitives* are named *Neuter-Passives*, which take a *Passive form* in the *Perfect* and tenses derived from it: as, *gaudeo* I am glad; *Perfect*, *gavisus sum*. So, *audeo* I dare; *Perfect*, *ausus sum*.

Those *Intransitives* are named *Neutral-Passives* which have an *Active form*, but a *Passive sense*, throughout: as, *vāpūlo* I am beaten, *vēneo* I am sold (*venum eo* I go to sale), *exulo* I am banished.

Obs. Verbs in the *Passive Voice* often have a reflex sense: as, *lavimur* we bathe; as in the *Middle Voice*, *λουόμεθα*, in Greek. (Gr. Gr. § 39.)

Ex. — Medio agmine Turnus vertitur, arma tenens (*turns himself* *τρέπεται*). See below, Syntax, § 155.

Verbs that have different persons are called Verbs PERSONAL : as, *ego amo* I love, *tu amas* thou lovest.

But such as have not different persons are called Verbs IMPERSONAL : as, *tædet* it irketh, *oportet* it behoveth ; where the *person* to whom the Verb refers is not expressed in the Nominative Case.

§ 47. — OF MOODS.

THERE are *four Moods*. (Gr. Gr. § 40.)

I. The first *mood* is called *Indicative*, and declares (*indicat*) a thing positively, or unconditionally : as, *ego amo* I love. Or it asks a question, as, *amas tu* dost thou love ?

II. The second *mood* is called *Imperative*, and commands (*impērat*), or entreats : as, *veni huc* come hither, *parce mihi* spare me.

III. The third *mood* is called sometimes *Subjunctive*, sometimes *Potential*. It is called *Subjunctive* when it is *subjoined* to another clause going before it : as, *eram miser cum amarem* I was unhappy when I loved, *nescio qualis sit* I know not what sort of man he is.

It is called *Potential*, when it signifies *power* (*potentia*), *disposition*, *likelihood*, or *duty* ; and is commonly known by these signs, *may*, *can*, *might*, *would*, *could*, *should* or *must* : as, *amem* I may love, *amarem* I might love.

The Potential sometimes expresses a *wish* : as *sis felix* may you be happy ! and may be then called *Optative*. (Gr. Gr. § 40., Obs.)

It sometimes *exhorts* and *advises* : as, *eamus* let us go, *amemus patriam* let us love our country.

Examples of the POTENTIAL MOOD.

Garganum mugire putes nemus, aut mare Tuscum. — *Hor.*

Eloquar, an sileam ? — *Virg.*

Mortalia facta peribunt,

Nedum sermonum stet honos et gratia vivax. — *Hor.*

Hoc Ithacus velit, et magno mercentur Atridæ. — *Virg.*

Quid *faceret* ? quo se raptâ bis conjuge *ferret* ?

Quo fletu Manes, quâ Numina voce *moveret* ?

Proh Pudor ! et nostris *illuserit* advena regnis !

Sis felix ; nostrumque *leves*, quæcunque, laborem ! — *Virg.*

Obs. In the following Conjugations, the word Subjunctive is used as a common term for the *Potential* as well as *Subjunctive* ; but their *difference in power* should be remembered. It is sometimes called the *Conjunctive Mood*.

IV. The fourth *mood* is called *Infinitive*, and is so called (*infinitus* undefined*), because it has neither number nor person before it ; and is known commonly by this sign, *to* : as, *amare* to love.



§ 48. — OF THE TENSES OF VERBS.

IN Verbs there are *Six Tenses or Times (Tempora)*, expressing the time of an action : the Present, the Preterimperfect, the Preterperfect, the Preterpluperfect, and two Futures. (Gr. Gr. § 41.)

1. The *Present* Tense speaks of a thing present, or now doing : as, *amo* I love or am loving.

2. The *Preterimperfect* Tense speaks of a thing that was being done, but not ended, at some time past : as, *amabam* I did love or was loving (*at that time*).

Obs. It sometimes expresses a *habit* or *custom* ; sometimes a *desire* to do something, or a setting about it.

3. The *Preterperfect* Tense speaks of a thing done.

Obs. The Preterperfect has two distinct significations : one *Indefinite*, the other *Definite*. The first is rendered into English by *have*, the second is construed without *have* : as, *scripsi* I have written, *scripsi* I wrote.

The former answers to the Greek *Preterperfect* ; as, ἔγραψα I have written : the latter to the Greek *Aorist* ; as, ἔγραψα I wrote.

* *Infinitivus* est, quod nec personas nec numeros *definit*. — Priscian, viii. 13. 69.

4. The *Preterpluperfect* Tense refers to a thing done at some time past, and then ended: as, *amaveram* I had loved.

Ex. — *Irruerant* Danai, et tectum omne *tenebant*.

5. The *First Future* Tense speaketh of a thing to be done hereafter: as, *amabo* I shall or will love.

6. The *Second Future* Tense (*Futurum Exactum*) speaketh of a thing which will have been done, when another thing has been done: as, *amavero* I shall have loved, *cum videro* when I shall have seen. — *Ex.* Ut sementem *feceris*, ita metes. — *Cic.*

§ 49.—The TENSES are either ABSOLUTE or RELATIVE.

ABSOLUTE.—1. Present, *amo* I love. 2. Perfect, *amavi* I have loved.
3. Future, *amabo* I will love.

RELATIVE.—*i. e.* depending on some other action.

1. Imperfect, *amabam* I was loving—*i. e.* when something else happened.

2. Pluperfect, *amaveram* I had loved—*i. e.* when something else happened.

3. Perfect aorist, *amavi* I loved at some time—*i. e.* which I need not specify particularly.

4. Second Future, or Future Perfect, *amavero* I shall have loved—*i. e.* when something else has happened.

§ 50.—OF NUMBERS AND PERSONS.

VERBS have two Numbers, Singular and Plural, like unto Nouns, and three Persons in each Number: as,

Sing. *Ego amo* I love
Tu amas thou lovest
Ille amat he loveth.

Plur. *Nos amamus* we love
Vos amatis ye love
Illi amant they love.

§ 51.—OF GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

VERBS have *three* GERUNDS, ending in *di*, *do*, *dum*, which have commonly an active signification: as, *amandi* of loving, *amando* in loving, *amandum* to love.

Obs. The Gerunds are used as Oblique Cases of the Infinitive: as, *ars scribendi* the art of writing, *scribendo* by writing, *inter scribendum* during writing, where in Greek the Infinitive is used with the article, τοῦ γράφειν, τῷ γράφειν, ἐν τῷ γράφειν.

The SUPINES of VERBS are *two*:

The one ending in *um*, which signifies Actively: as, *eo amatum* I go to love.

The other ending in *u*, and having, for the most part, a Passive signification: as, *difficilis amatu* hard to be loved.

§ 52. — *Obs.* 1. The Supines, also, are Cases of Verbal Substantives of the Fourth Declension: thus, *amatum* is the Accusative Case from *amatus* (like *gradus*), and *amatu* the Ablative. — *Ex.* *Paterfamilias primus cubitu surgat, postremus cubitum eat.* — *Cato, R. R.*

Obs. 2. The Dative Case of these Substantives is found in some phrases: as, *habere despiciatui, habere derisui.*

Obs. 3. The Future Tense Infinitive of the Passive Voice is formed of the Supine in *um*, and of *iri*, the Present Infinitive Passive (used impersonally) of the verb *eo* to go: as, *Omnes vos amatum iri ab eo video* — I see that you will be all loved by him (*literally*, that it is *being gone* by him to love you all).

Hence, the termination in *um* is never changed. — *Ex.* *Arbitrantur se benevolos visum iri* — *Cic.* They think that they themselves will appear benevolent (*literally*, that it is *being gone* to see them benevolent).

Obs. 4. Hence, when the Verb is *without a Supine*, the Future Passive must be formed in some other way; and it is then formed by *fore ut* followed by a Subjunctive Mood: as, *Spero fore, ut hoc a te discatur* — I hope that this will be learnt by you; *Sperabam fore, ut hoc a te disceretur* — I hoped that this would be learnt by you; *Sperabam futurum fuisse, ut hoc a te disceretur* — I hoped that this would have been learnt by you.

Obs. 5. Of Gerunds and Supines, see further below, § 70, *Obs.* 8—11.

§ 53. — OF A PARTICIPLE.

A PARTICIPLE is a part of speech derived from a Verb, and also taketh part (*partem capit*), as Number, Gender, Case, and Declension, of a Noun; and part of a Verb, as Tense and Signification.

§ 54. — There are Four PARTICIPLES.

Obs. 1. One of the Present Tense, which ends in *ans* or *ens*: as, *amans loving*, *docens teaching*.

Obs. Participials end in *bundus*, and express *fulness*; as, *mirabundus*, *cogitabundus*, *furibundus*: or *futurition*, as, *moribundus*, just about to die.

Obs. 2. One of the Future in *rus*, which signifies a *likelihood* or *design* of doing a thing: as, *amaturus* intending to love, or about to love.

Obs. 3. One of the Preterperfect Tense which has generally a *Passive* signification: as, *lectus* read, *doctus* taught, *visus* seen.

Obs. 4. One of the Future in *dus*, which also has a *Passive* signification, and expresses an action to be done hereafter: as, *amandus* to be loved.

Obs. Only Verbs which govern an *Accusative case* have any Participle in *dus*. Except *utendus*, *fungendus*, *fruendus*, *pœnitendus*, which are sometimes, though rarely, used: so *erubescendus*. — *Hor.*

Note. All Participles are declined like Nouns Adjective.

Obs. 5. The Latin Language doth not possess a Participle of the Perfect Active, nor of the Present Passive.

Instead of a Perfect Participle, *quum* with the Pluperfect Subjunctive is used; as, He, having come, *Quum venisset*.

Above all it is to be observed, that the Perfect Participle Active is supplied by the *Ablative Absolute Passive*: as, Antony, *having divorced Octavia*, the sister of Cæsar Octavianus, married Cleopatra, Queen of Egypt — *Antonius, repudiata Octaviâ, sorore Cæsaris Octaviani, Cleopatram, Reginam Ægypti, duxit uxorem.* — *Eutrop.*

Obs. But *Deponents* from their nature have *Perfect Participles* of an Active sense though Passive form.

Ex. *Utilis interdum est ipsis injuria passis.* — *Öv.*

Obs. 6. The Present Participle Passive is supplied by *quum* with the Present Indicative: as, He, being loved by you, is happy — *quum amatur a te, felix est.*

It is also supplied by the Preterperfect Participle: as, A certain peace

is better than a wished-for victory — *Melior est certa pax quam sperata victoria*; sometimes by the Future in *du*, as, The praise of Thebes being freed is due to Pelopidas — *Liberandarum Thebarum propria laus est Pelopidæ*.

Examples of Participles.

Cantantes licet usque minus via lædit eam. — *Virg.*

Plura locuturi subito diducimur imbre.

Pulsus Aristides patriâ Lacedæmōna fugit. — *Ov.*

Threicio Regi furtim mandārat *alendum*. — *Virg.*

(See below, § 70.)

§ 55.—OF THE VERB *ESSE*, to be.

Before other Verbs are declined, it is necessary to learn the Verb *Esse*, to be.

Sum, es, fui, esse, futurus, to be.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE — *Am*.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sum</i>	<i>I am</i>
	<i>Es</i>	<i>thou art</i>
	<i>Est</i>	<i>he is.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sumus</i>	<i>We are</i>
	<i>Estis</i>	<i>ye are</i>
	<i>Sunt</i>	<i>they are.</i>

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE — *Was*.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Er-am</i>	<i>I was</i>
	<i>Er-as</i>	<i>thou wast</i>
	<i>Er-at</i>	<i>he was.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Er-āmus</i>	<i>We were</i>
	<i>Er-atis</i>	<i>ye were</i>
	<i>Er-ant</i>	<i>they were.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE — *Have*.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Fu-i</i>	<i>I have been</i>
	<i>Fu-isti</i>	<i>thou hast been</i>
	<i>Fu-it</i>	<i>he has been.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Fu-īmus</i>	<i>We have been</i>
	<i>Fu-istis</i>	<i>ye have been</i>
	<i>Fu-ērunt vel fu-ēre</i>	<i>they have been.</i>

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE.—*Had.*

<i>Sing.</i> Fu-eram	<i>I had been</i>
Fu-eras	<i>thou hadst been</i>
Fu-erat	<i>he had been.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Fu-erāmus	<i>We had been</i>
Fu-eratis	<i>ye had been</i>
Fu-erant	<i>they had been.</i>

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE.—*Shall or will.*

<i>Sing.</i> Er-o	<i>I shall or will be</i>
Er-is	<i>thou shalt or will be</i>
Er-it	<i>he shall or will be.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Er-īmus	<i>We shall or will be</i>
Er-itis	<i>ye shall or will be</i>
Er-unt	<i>they shall or will be.</i>

6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE.—*Shall have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Fu-ero	<i>I shall have been</i>
Fu-eris	<i>thou shalt have been</i>
Fu-erit	<i>he shall have been.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Fu-erimus	<i>We shall have been</i>
Fu-eritis	<i>ye shall have been</i>
Fu-erint	<i>they shall have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE—*No first person.*

<i>Sing.</i> Sis, es, esto	<i>Be thou</i>
Sit, esto	<i>be he, or let him be.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Simus	<i>Be we, or let us be</i>
Sitis, este, estōte	<i>be ye</i>
Sint, suntō	<i>be they, or let them be.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*May or can.*

<i>Sing.</i> Sim	<i>I may or can be</i>
Sis	<i>thou mayst or canst be</i>
Sit	<i>he may or can be.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Simus	<i>We may or can be</i>
Sitis	<i>ye may or can be</i>
Sint	<i>they may or can be.</i>

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Might or could.*

<i>Sing.</i> Ess-eim <i>vel</i> for-em	<i>I might or could be</i>
Ess-es <i>vel</i> for-es	<i>thou mightst or couldst be</i>
Ess-et <i>vel</i> for-et	<i>he might or could be.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Ess-ēmus <i>vel</i> for-ēmus	<i>We might or could be</i>
Ess-etis <i>vel</i> for-etis	<i>ye might or could be</i>
Ess-ent <i>vel</i> for-ent	<i>they might or could be.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*May have, should have, &c.*

<i>Sing.</i> Fu-ërim	<i>I may or should have been</i>
Fu-eris	<i>thou mayst or shouldst have been</i>
Fu-erit	<i>he may or should have been.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Fu-erimus	<i>We may or should have been</i>
Fu-eritis	<i>ye may or should have been</i>
Fu-erint	<i>they may or should have been.</i>

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Might, would have, &c.*

<i>Sing.</i> Fu-issem	<i>I might or would have been</i>
Fu-isses	<i>thou mightst or wouldst have been</i>
Fu-isset	<i>he might or would have been.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Fu-issēmus	<i>We might or would have been</i>
Fu-issetis	<i>ye might or would have been</i>
Fu-issent	<i>they might or would have been.</i>

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Fu-tur-us, -a, -um	{	sim	<i>I</i>	}	<i>may be about to be.</i>
		sis	<i>you</i>		
		sit	<i>he</i>		
		simus	<i>We</i>		
<i>Plur.</i> Fu-tur-i, -æ, -a	{	sitis	<i>ye</i>	}	
		sint	<i>they</i>		

The SECOND FUTURE Subjunctive is *Fuisse*, and sometimes *Futurus sim*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT and PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE.

Esse to be.

PRETERPERFECT and PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE.

Fuisse to have been.

FUTURE TENSE.

Fore, vel Futurum esse to be about to be.

PARTICIPLE OF THE FUTURE in *rus*.

Futurus, -a, -um, about to be.

(Compare εἶμι, Gr. Gr. § 80., with *sum*; and φέω, Gr. Gr. § 94., with *fui*.)

From the old verb *fuo* comes Præs. Subj. *fuam* for *sim*; *forem* and *fore*, are for *fuere* and *fuere*.

§ 56.—Like *sum* are conjugated its compounds: as *absum* (*abfui*, *abesse*, *abfuturus*), *adsum*, *desum*, *intersum*, *præsum*, *prosum*, *supersum*.

Obs. 1. In *prosum*, *d* is inserted whenever a vowel follows *pro*: as, *prosum*, *prodes*, *prodest*.

Obs. 2. Only *absum*, *præsum*, *possum*, have Present Participles: viz. *absens*, *præsens*, *potens*. The rest have none. **Ων* (*ons*) is found in the Latin *sons*, *sonticus* (*causa sontica*), and the dialectic *ens*.

Obs. 3. Example of First Future Subjunctive :

Quid sit futurum cras, fuge quærere. — *Hor.*

Obs. 4. For *sim*, *sis*, an old form, *siem*, *sies* is found.

§ 57.—VERBS REGULAR DECLINED.

THERE are Four Conjugations (or manners of declining) of Verbs, both in the Active and Passive voice.

The *First* Conjugation of Verbs Active hath *a* long before *re* and *ris*, as *amā-re*, *amā-ris*.

The *Second* hath *e* long before *re* and *ris*, as *monē-re*, *monē-ris*.

The *Third* hath *e* short before *re* and *ris*, as *regē-re*, *regē-ris*.

The *Fourth* has *i* long before *re* and *ris*, as *audī-re*, *audī-ris*.

§ 58.—VERBS ACTIVE in *O* are conjugated or declined after these examples following:

1. Am-o, am-ās, am-āvi, am-are; am-andi, am-ando, am-andum; am-ātum, am-ātu; am-ans, am-atūrus: *to love*,
(Compare *τιμῶ*, Gr. Gr. § 43.)

2. Mon-eo, mon-ēs, mon-ŭi, mon-ēre; mon-endi, mon-endo, mon-endum; mon-ītum, mon-ītu; mon-ens, mon-itūrus;
(Cp. *φιλέω*, Gr. Gr. § 43.) *to advise*.

3. Reg-o, reg-īs, rex-i, reg-ēre; reg-endi, reg-endo, reg-endum; rec-tum, rec-tu; reg-ens, rec-tūrus: *to rule or govern.*

(Cp. λέγω, Gr. Gr. § 49.)

4. Aud-io, aud-īs, aud-ivi, aud-īre; aud-iendi, aud-iendo, aud-iendum; aud-ītum, aud-ītu; aud-iens, aud-itūrus: *to hear.*

(Cp. τίω, Gr. Gr. § 52.)

Obs. On the Formation of the PERFECT and SUPINES, see below § 131, 132.

§ 59.—FIRST CONJUGATION—Amo.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—Do, am.

<i>Sing.</i> Am-o	<i>I love, am loving, or do love</i>
Am-as	<i>thou lovest, art loving, or dost love</i>
Am-at	<i>he loveth, is loving, or doth love.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-āmus	<i>We love, are loving, or do love</i>
Am-atis	<i>ye love, are loving, or do love</i>
Am-ant	<i>they love, are loving, or do love.</i>

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—Did, was.

<i>Sing.</i> Am-ābam	<i>I did love, or was loving</i>
Am-abas	<i>thou didst love, or wast loving</i>
Am-abat	<i>he did love, or was loving.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-abāmus	<i>We did love, or were loving</i>
Am-abatis	<i>ye did love, or were loving</i>
Am-abant	<i>they did love, or were loving.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—Have.

<i>Sing.</i> Am-āvi	<i>I loved, or have loved</i>
Am-avisti	<i>thou lovedst, or hast loved</i>
Am-avit	<i>he loved, or hath loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-avīmus	<i>We loved, or have loved</i>
Am-avistis	<i>ye loved, or have loved</i>
Am-avērunt vel -avere	<i>they loved, or have loved.</i>

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—Had.

<i>Sing.</i> Am-avēram	<i>I had loved</i>
Am-averas	<i>thou hadst loved</i>
Am-averat	<i>he had loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-averāmus	<i>We had loved</i>
Am-averatis	<i>ye had loved</i>
Am-averant	<i>they had loved!</i>

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE—*Shall, will.*

<i>Sing.</i> Am-ābo	<i>I shall or will love</i>
Am-abis	<i>thou shalt or wilt love</i>
Am-abit	<i>he shall or will love.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-abīmus	<i>We shall or will love</i>
Am-abitis	<i>ye shall or will love</i>
Am-abunt	<i>they shall or will love.</i>

6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE—*Shall have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Am-avēro	<i>I shall have loved</i>
Am-averis	<i>thou shalt have loved</i>
Am-averit	<i>he shall have loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-averimus	<i>We shall have loved</i>
Am-averitis	<i>ye shall have loved</i>
Am-averint	<i>they shall have loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE—*No first person.*

<i>Sing.</i> Am-a, am-āto	<i>Love thou, or do thou love</i>
Am-et, am-ato	<i>love he, or let him love.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-ēmus	<i>Love we, or let us love</i>
Am-āte, am-atōte	<i>love ye, or do ye love</i>
Am-ent, am-anto	<i>love they, or let them love.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*May, can, would, should.*

<i>Sing.</i> Am-em	<i>I may or can love</i>
Am-es	<i>thou mayst or canst love</i>
Am-et	<i>he may or can love.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-ēmus	<i>We may or can love</i>
Am-etis	<i>ye may or can love</i>
Am-ent	<i>they may or can love.</i>

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Might, could, should.*

<i>Sing.</i> Am-ārem	<i>I might or could love</i>
Am-ares	<i>thou mightst or couldst love</i>
Am-aret	<i>he might or could love.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-arēmus	<i>We might or could love</i>
Am-aretis	<i>ye might or could love</i>
Am-arent	<i>they might or could love.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*Should have, may have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Am-avērim	<i>I should have loved</i>
Am-averis	<i>thou shouldst have loved</i>
Am-averit	<i>he should have loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-averimus	<i>We should have loved</i>
Am-averitis	<i>ye should have loved</i>
Am-averint	<i>they should have loved.</i>

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE — *Would, might, could have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Am-avissem	<i>I would have loved</i>
Am-avisses	<i>thou wouldst have loved</i>
Am-avisset	<i>he would have loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-avissēmus	<i>We would have loved</i>
Am-avissetis	<i>ye would have loved</i>
Am-avissent	<i>they would have loved.</i>

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Am-atur-us, -a, -um	{	sim	<i>I</i>	} <i>may be about to love.</i>
		sis	<i>you</i>	
		sit	<i>he</i>	
<i>Plur.</i> Am-atur-i, -æ, -a	{	simus	<i>We</i>	
		sitis	<i>ye</i>	
		sint	<i>they</i>	

6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Am-atur-us, -a, -um	{	essem	<i>I</i>	} <i>might be about to love.</i>
		esses	<i>you</i>	
		esset	<i>he</i>	
<i>Plur.</i> Am-atur-i, -æ, -a	{	essemus	<i>We</i>	
		essetis	<i>ye</i>	
		essent	<i>they</i>	

Or, Am-aviss-em, -es, -et, -emus, -etis, -ent.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT and PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE.

Am-āre *to love.*

PRETERPERFECT and PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE.

Am-avisse *to have loved.*

FUTURE TENSE.

Am-atūrum esse *to be about to love.*

GERUNDS.

Am-andi *of loving*
 Am-ando *in loving*
 Am-andum *to love.*

SUPINES.

Active.
 Am-ātum *to love.*

Passive.
 Am-ātu *to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT TENSE.

Am-ans *loving.*

FUTURE *in rus.*

Am-atūrus *about to love.*

PERFECT *wanting.* — For it, is used *Quum* or *Qui am-aviss-em, -es, -et, &c.*

§ 60. — FORMATION OF TENSES.

Several Tenses are formed from the Preterperfect Tense of the Indicative Mood: thus, from *amav-i*—

1. The Preterpluperfect of the same mood, *amav-eram*.
2. The Second future Tense of the same mood, *amav-ero*.
3. The Preterperfect of the Potential Mood, *amav-erim*.
4. The Preterpluperfect of the same Mood, *amav-issem*.
5. The Preterperfect Tense of the Infinitive Mood, *amav-isse*.

§ 61. SECOND CONJUGATION — MONEO.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE — *Do, am*.

<i>Sing.</i> Mon-eo	<i>I advise, am advising, or do advise</i>
Mon-es	<i>thou advisest, art advising, or dost advise</i>
Mon-et	<i>he advises, is advising, or doth advise.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Mon-ēmus	<i>We advise, are advising, or do advise</i>
Mon-etis	<i>ye advise, are advising, or do advise</i>
Mon-ent	<i>they advise, are advising, or do advise.</i>

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE — *Did, was*.

<i>Sing.</i> Mon-ēbam	<i>I did advise, or was advising</i>
Mon-ebas	<i>thou didst advise, or wast advising</i>
Mon-ebat	<i>he did advise, or was advising.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Mon-ebāmus	<i>We did advise, or were advising</i>
Mon-ebatis	<i>ye did advise, or were advising</i>
Mon-ebant	<i>they did advise, or were advising.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE — *Have*.

<i>Sing.</i> Mon-ui	<i>I advised, or have advised</i>
Mon-uisti	<i>thou advisedst, or hast advised</i>
Mon-uit	<i>he advised, or hath advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Mon-uīmus	<i>We advised, or have advised</i>
Mon-uistis	<i>ye advised, or have advised</i>
Mon-uērunt <i>vel</i> -uēre	<i>they advised, or have advised.</i>

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE — *Had*.

<i>Sing.</i> Mon-uēram	<i>I had advised</i>
Mon-ueras	<i>thou hadst advised</i>
Mon-uerat	<i>he had advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Mon-uerāmus	<i>We had advised</i>
Mon-ueratis	<i>ye had advised</i>
Mon-uerant	<i>they had advised</i>

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE—*Shall or will.*

<i>Sing.</i> Mon-ēbo	<i>I shall or will advise</i>
Mon-ebis	<i>thou shalt or wilt advise</i>
Mon-ebit	<i>he shall or will advise.</i>
<i>Plur</i> Mon-ebīmus	<i>We shall or will advise</i>
Mon-ebitis	<i>ye shall or will advise</i>
Mon-ebunt	<i>they shall or will advise.</i>

6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE—*Shall have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Mon-uēro	<i>I shall have advised</i>
Mon-ueris	<i>thou shalt have advised</i>
Mon-uerit	<i>he shall have advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Mon-uerimus	<i>We shall have advised</i>
Mon-ueritis	<i>ye shall have advised</i>
Mon-uerint	<i>they shall have advised.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE—*No first person.*

<i>Sing.</i> Mon-e, mon-ēto	<i>Advise thou, or do thou advise</i>
Mon-eat, mon-eto	<i>advise he, or let him advise.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Mon-eāmus	<i>Advise we, or let us advise</i>
Mon-ēte, mon-etōte	<i>advise ye, or do ye advise</i>
Mon-eant, mon-ento	<i>advise they, or let them advise.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*May, can, would, should.*

<i>Sing.</i> Mon-eam	<i>I may or can advise</i>
Mon-eas	<i>thou mayst or canst advise</i>
Mon-eat	<i>he may or can advise.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Mon-eāmus	<i>We may or can advise</i>
Mon-catis	<i>ye may or can advise</i>
Mon-eant	<i>they may or can advise.</i>

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Might, could, should.*

<i>Sing.</i> Mon-ērem	<i>I might or could advise</i>
Mon-eres	<i>thou mightst or couldst advise</i>
Mon-eret	<i>he might or could advise.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Mon-erēmus	<i>We might or could advise</i>
Mon-eretis	<i>ye might or could advise</i>
Mon-erent	<i>they might or could advise.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*Should have, may have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Mon-uērim	<i>I should have advised</i>
Mon-ueris	<i>thou shouldst have advised</i>
Mon-uerit	<i>he should have advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Mon-uerimus	<i>We should have advised</i>
Mon-ueritis	<i>ye should have advised</i>
Mon-uerint	<i>they should have advised.</i>

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Would, might, could have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Mon-uissem	<i>I would have advised</i>
Mon-uissem	<i>thou wouldst have advised</i>
Mon-uisset	<i>he would have advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Mon-uissēmus	<i>We would have advised</i>
Mon-uissetis	<i>ye would have advised</i>
Mon-uissent	<i>they would have advised.</i>

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Mon-itur-us, -a, -um	{	sim	<i>I</i>	} <i>may be about to advise.</i>
		sis	<i>you</i>	
		sit	<i>he</i>	
<i>Plur.</i> Mon-itur-i, -æ, -a	{	simus	<i>We</i>	
		sitis	<i>ye</i>	
		sint	<i>they</i>	

6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Mon-itur-us, -a, -um	{	essem	<i>I</i>	} <i>might be about to advise.</i>
		esses	<i>you</i>	
		esset	<i>he</i>	
<i>Plur.</i> Mon-itur i, -æ, -a	{	essemus	<i>We</i>	
		essetis	<i>ye</i>	
		essent	<i>they</i>	

Or, Mon-uiss-em, -es, -et, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT and PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE.

Mon-ēre *to advise.*

PRETERPERFECT and PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE.

Mon-uisse *to have advised.*

FUTURE TENSE.

Mon-itūrum esse *to be about to advise.*

GERUNDS.

Mon-endi *of advising*
 Mon-endo *in advising*
 Mon-endum *to advise.*

SUPINES.

Active. Mon-ītum *to advise.* *Passive.* Mon-ītu *to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT TENSE.

Mon-ens *advising.*

FUTURE in *rus*.

Mon-itūrus *about to advise.*

PERFECT wanting.—For it, is used *Quum* or *Qui mon-uiss-em, -es -et, &c.*

§ 62.—THIRD CONJUGATION—REGO.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*Do, am.*

<i>Sing.</i> Reg-o	<i>I rule, am ruling, or do rule</i>
Reg-is	<i>thou rulest, art ruling, or dost rule</i>
Reg-it	<i>he ruleth, is ruling, or doth rule.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Reg-īmus	<i>We rule, are ruling, or do rule</i>
Reg-itis	<i>ye rule, are ruling, or do rule</i>
Reg-unt	<i>they rule, are ruling, or do rule.</i>

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Did, was.*

<i>Sing.</i> Reg-ēbam	<i>I did rule, or was ruling</i>
Reg-ebas	<i>thou didst rule, or wast ruling</i>
Reg-ebat	<i>he did rule, or was ruling.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Reg-ebāmus	<i>We did rule, or were ruling</i>
Reg-ebatis	<i>ye did rule, or were ruling</i>
Reg-ebant	<i>they did rule, or were ruling.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*Have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Rex-i	<i>I ruled, or have ruled</i>
Rex-isti	<i>thou ruledst, or hast ruled</i>
Rex-it	<i>he ruled, or hath ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Rex-īmus	<i>We ruled, or have ruled</i>
Rex-istis	<i>ye ruled, or have ruled</i>
Rex-ērunt vel -ēre	<i>they ruled, or have ruled.</i>

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Had.*

<i>Sing.</i> Rex-ēram	<i>I had ruled</i>
Rex-eras	<i>thou hadst ruled</i>
Rex-erat	<i>he had ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Rex-erāmus	<i>We had ruled</i>
Rex-eratis	<i>ye had ruled</i>
Rex-erant	<i>they had ruled.</i>

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE—*Shall or will.*

<i>Sing.</i> Reg-am	<i>I shall or will rule</i>
Reg-es	<i>thou shalt or wilt rule</i>
Reg-et	<i>he shall or will rule.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Reg-ēmus	<i>We shall or will rule</i>
Reg-etis	<i>ye shall or will rule</i>
Reg-ent	<i>they shall or will rule.</i>

6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE — *Shall have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Rex-āro	<i>I shall have ruled</i>
Rex-eris	<i>thou shalt have ruled</i>
Rex-erit	<i>he shall have ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Rex-erimus	<i>We shall have ruled</i>
Rex-eritis	<i>ye shall have ruled</i>
Rex-erint	<i>they shall have ruled.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE — *No first Person.*

<i>Sing.</i> Reg-e, reg-ŷto	<i>Rule thou, or do thou rule</i>
Reg-at, reg-ito	<i>rule he, or let him rule.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Reg-āmus	<i>Rule we, or let us rule</i>
Reg-ŷte, Reg-itōte	<i>rule ye, or do ye rule</i>
Reg-ant, reg-unto	<i>rule they or let them rule.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE — *May, can, would, should.*

<i>Sing.</i> Reg-am	<i>I may or can rule</i>
Reg-as	<i>thou mayst or canst rule</i>
Reg-at	<i>he may or can rule.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Reg-āmus	<i>We may or can rule</i>
Reg-atis	<i>ye may or can rule</i>
Reg-ant	<i>they may or can rule.</i>

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE — *Might, could, should.*

<i>Sing.</i> Reg-ĕrem	<i>I might or could rule</i>
Reg-eres	<i>thou mightst or couldst rule</i>
Reg-eret	<i>he might or could rule.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Reg-erĕmus	<i>We might or could rule</i>
Reg-eretis	<i>ye might or could rule</i>
Reg-erent	<i>they might or could rule.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE — *Should have, may have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Rex-ĕrim	<i>I should have ruled</i>
Rex-eris	<i>thou shouldst have ruled</i>
Rex-erit	<i>he should have ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Rex-erimus	<i>We should have ruled</i>
Rex-eritis	<i>ye should have ruled</i>
Rex-erint	<i>they should have ruled.</i>

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE — *Would, might, could have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Rex-issem	<i>I would have ruled</i>
Rex-isses	<i>thou wouldst have ruled</i>
Rex-isset	<i>he would have ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Rex-issĕmus	<i>We would have ruled</i>
Rex-issetis	<i>ye would have ruled</i>
Rex-issent	<i>they would have ruled.</i>

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Rec-tur-us, -a, -um	{	sim	<i>I</i>	} <i>may be about to rule.</i>
		sis	<i>you</i>	
		sit	<i>he</i>	
<i>Plur.</i> Rec-tur-i, -æ, -a,	{	simus	<i>We</i>	
		sitis	<i>ye</i>	
		sint	<i>they</i>	

6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Rec-tur-us, -a, -um	{	essem	<i>I</i>	} <i>might be about to rule.</i>
		esses	<i>you</i>	
		esset	<i>he</i>	
<i>Plur.</i> Rec-tur-i, -æ, -a,	{	essemus	<i>We</i>	
		essetis	<i>ye</i>	
		essent	<i>they</i>	

Or, Rex-iss-em, -es, -et, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT and PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE.

Reg-ĕre *to rule.*

PRETERPERFECT and PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE.

Rex-isse *to have ruled.*

FUTURE TENSE.

Rec-tūrum esse *to be about to rule.*

GERUNDS.

Reg-endi *of ruling*
 Reg-endo *in ruling*
 Reg-endum *to rule.*

SUPINES.

Active. Rec-tum *to rule.* *Passive.* Rec-tu *to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT TENSE.

Reg-ens *ruling.*

FUTURE in *rus*.

Rec-tūrus *about to rule.*

PERFECT wanting.—For it, is used *Quum* or *Qui rex-iss-em, -es, -et, &c.*

Obs. There are certain Verbs in *io* which belong to the Third Conjugation, as *capio, rapio, cupio, facio, fodio, fugio, &c.*, and their compounds. These retain the *i* only in those tenses where *r* does not follow, *i. e.* only in the Imperfect Indicative (which may not be contracted into *-ibam*), and Future Indicative and Present Subjunctive; but where either *r* or *no* letter follows, they take *ĕ*, both in the Active and Passive Voice: as, *capio, capĕ, capĕrem, capĕre*. So in the Passive, *cap-ior, -ĕris, -ĕrer*; and Deponents, as *pat-ior, -ĕris, -ĕrer*. So, *morior*. See below, § 71.

§ 63.—FOURTH CONJUGATION—AUDIO.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*Do, am.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-io	<i>I hear, am hearing, or do hear</i>
Aud-is	<i>thou hearest, art hearing, or dost hear</i>
Aud-it	<i>he heareth, is hearing, or doth hear.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-īmus	<i>We hear, are hearing, or do hear</i>
Aud-itis	<i>ye hear, are hearing, or do hear</i>
Aud-iunt	<i>they hear, are hearing, or do hear.</i>

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Did, was.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-iēbam	<i>I did hear, or was hearing</i>
Aud-iebas	<i>thou didst hear, or wast hearing</i>
Aud-iebat	<i>he did hear, or was hearing.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-iebāmus	<i>We did hear, or were hearing</i>
Aud-iebatis	<i>ye did hear, or were hearing</i>
Aud-iebant	<i>they did hear, or were hearing.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*Have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-ivi	<i>I heard, or have heard</i>
Aud-ivisti	<i>thou heardest, or hast heard</i>
Aud-ivit	<i>he heard, or hath heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-ivimus	<i>We heard, or have heard</i>
Aud-ivistis	<i>ye heard, or have heard</i>
Aud-ivērunt <i>vel</i> -ivēre	<i>they heard, or have heard.</i>

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Had.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-ivēram	<i>I had heard</i>
Aud-iveras	<i>thou hadst heard</i>
Aud-iverat	<i>he had heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-iverāmus	<i>We had heard</i>
Aud-iveratis	<i>ye had heard</i>
Aud-iverant	<i>they had heard.</i>

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE—*Shall or will.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-iam	<i>I shall or will hear</i>
Aud-ies	<i>thou shalt or wilt hear</i>
Aud-iet	<i>he shall or will hear.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-iēmus	<i>We shall or will hear</i>
Aud-ietis	<i>ye shall or will hear</i>
Aud-ient	<i>they shall or will hear</i>

6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE — *Shall have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-ivĕro	<i>I shall have heard</i>
Aud-iveris	<i>thou shalt have heard</i>
Aud-iverit	<i>he shall have heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-iverimus	<i>We shall have heard</i>
Aud-iveritis	<i>ye shall have heard</i>
Aud-iverint	<i>they shall have heard.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE — *No first Person.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-ī, aud-īto	<i>Hear thou, or do thou hear</i>
Aud-iat, aud-ito	<i>hear he, or let him hear.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-iāmus	<i>Hear we, or let us hear</i>
Aud-īte, aud-itōte	<i>hear ye, or do ye hear</i>
Aud-iant, aud-iunto	<i>hear they, or let them hear.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE — *May, can, would, should.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-iam	<i>I may or can hear</i>
Aud-ias	<i>thou mayst or canst hear</i>
Aud-iat	<i>he may or can hear.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-iāmus	<i>We may or can hear</i>
Aud-iatīs	<i>ye may or can hear</i>
Aud-iant	<i>they may or can hear.</i>

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE — *Might, could, should.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-īrem	<i>I might or could hear</i>
Aud-īres	<i>thou mightst or couldst hear</i>
Aud-iret	<i>he might or could hear.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-irēmus	<i>We might or could hear</i>
Aud-iretis	<i>ye might or could hear</i>
Aud-irent	<i>they might or could hear.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE — *Should have, may have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-ivĕrim	<i>I should have heard</i>
Aud-iveris	<i>thou shouldst have heard</i>
Aud-iverit	<i>he should have heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-iverimus	<i>We should have heard</i>
Aud-iveritis	<i>ye should have heard</i>
Aud-iverint	<i>they should have heard</i>

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE — *Would, might, could have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-ivissem	<i>I would have heard</i>
Aud-ivisses	<i>thou wouldst have heard.</i>
Aud-ivisset	<i>he would have heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-ivissēmus	<i>We would have heard</i>
Aud-ivissetis	<i>ye would have heard.</i>
Aud-ivissent	<i>they would have heard.</i>

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-itur-us, -a, -um	{	sim	<i>I</i>	} <i>may be about to hear.</i>
		sis	<i>you</i>	
		sit	<i>he</i>	
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-itur-i, -æ, -a	{	simus	<i>We</i>	
		sitis	<i>ye</i>	
		sint	<i>they</i>	

6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-itur-us, -a, -um	{	essem	<i>I</i>	} <i>might be about to hear.</i>
		esses	<i>you</i>	
		esset	<i>he</i>	
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-itur-i, -æ, -a	{	essemus	<i>We</i>	
		essetis	<i>ye</i>	
		essent	<i>they</i>	

Or, Aud-iviss-em, -es, -et, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT and PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-īre *to hear.*

PRETERPERFECT and PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-ivisse *to have heard.*

FUTURE TENSE.

Aud-itūrum esse *to be about to hear.*

GERUNDS.

Aud-iendi *of hearing*
 Aud-iendo *in hearing*
 Aud-iendum *to hear.*

SUPINES.

Active. Aud-ītum *to hear.* *Passive.* Aud-ītu *to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT TENSE.

Aud-iens *hearing.*

FUTURE *in rus.*

Aud-itūrus *about to hear.*

PERFECT *wanting.*— For it, is used *Quum* or *Qui aud-iviss-em, -es, -et, &c.*

§ 64.—OBSERVATIONS ON THE TENSES IN THE ACTIVE VOICE.

Obs. 1. The Imperfect of the Fourth Conjugation is sometimes contracted into *ibum*, as *lenibat, vestibat* (Virgil), for *leniebat, vestiebat*.

Obs. 2. In the Perfect, and Tenses formed from it, *v* is often thrown out, and the first *i* shortened: as *audīi* for *audīvī*, *audīerem* for *audīverim*.

Obs. 3. In other Perfects this *syncōpē*, or shortening by absorption, occurs where *r* or *s* follows *ve* or *vi*; as, *laudārun̄t* for *laudavērunt*, *laudāstis* for *laudavistis*, *trīsti* for *trivisti* (Catull.).

Obs. 4. So *summōram*, *summōssem*, *summōsse*, for *summovēram*, *summovissem*, *summovisse*; and in old Latin writers, *evāsti* for *evasisti*, *surrexe* for *surrexisse*, *levasso* for *levavero*, *adjūro* for *adjuvēro*.

Obs. 5. The following Verbs, *dīco*, *dūco*, *fūcio*, *fēro*, suffer *apocōpē* in the Second Person Singular of their Imperatives: as, *dīc*, *auc*, *fac*, *fer*, for *dīce*, *dūce*, *fūce*, *fēre*: so *fi* from *fīo*, to be made.

Obs. 6. The Futures of the Subjunctive are formed by the Future in *rus* and the Verb *sum*. Ex. — Doubt not that I will come — Ne dubites quin *venturus sim*.

Obs. 7. The Future in *rus* makes with the Verb *sum* a Conjugation of its own, which expresses *intention* or *wish* to do a thing; as,

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Amaturus	sum	<i>I am</i>	
	eram	<i>I was</i>	
	fui	<i>I have been</i>	
	fueram	<i>I had been</i>	
	ero	<i>I shall be</i>	
	fuiro	<i>I shall have been</i>	
		sim	<i>I may be</i>
		essem	<i>I might be</i>
		fuerim	<i>I might have been</i>
		fuissem	<i>I shall have been</i>
			about to love.

This is sometimes called the *Periphrastic* or *Circumlocutory* (περὶ *circum*, φράζω *loquor*) *Conjugation*. (See § 70.)

Ex. — Musæ Plautino sermone *locuturæ fuissent*, si Latinè loqui vellent.

Obs. 8. Many of the Latin Forms of Verbs are derived from the Greek, through the *Æolic* Dialect: as λέγομεν *legimus*; λέγουσι *legunt*; ἰστάμεν *sistens*; ἐδελξασθα *dixisti*.

Obs. 9. Some Verbs belong to two Conjugations: as, *lavo*, *lavare* and *lavēre*; so, *fervere* and *fervēre*.

Obs. 10. The forms in *-to* of the Imperative are *emphatic*, and are used in Legal Edicts, Medical Prescriptions, and other *didactic* Formulæ, as,

Censores bini sunt.

Ter uncti

Transnanto Tiberim somno quibus est opus alto. — Hor.

Laudato ingentia rura,

Exiguum colito. — Virg.

§ 65.—DECLENSION OF VERBS PASSIVE.



1. Am-or, am-āris *vel* am-are, am-atus sum *vel* fui, am-ari
am-atus, am-andus : *to be loved*

2. Mon-eor, mon-ēris *vel* mon-ere, mon-ītus sum *vel* fui
mon-eri ; mon-ītus, mon-endus : *to be advised*

3. Re-gor, reg-ēris *vel* reg-ere, rec-tus sum *vel* fui, reg-i
rec-tus, reg-endus : *to be ruled*

4. Aud-ior, aud-īris *vel* aud-ire, aud-ītus sum *vel* fui,
aud-iri ; aud-ītus, aud-iendus : *to be heard.*



§ 66.—FIRST CONJUGATION—AMOR.



INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—Am.

<i>Sing.</i> Am-or	<i>I am loved</i>
Am-āris <i>vel</i> am-are	<i>thou art loved</i>
Am-atur	<i>he is loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-āmur	<i>We are loved</i>
Am-amīni	<i>ye are loved</i>
Am-antur	<i>they are loved.</i>

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—Was.

<i>Sing.</i> Am-ābar	<i>I was loved</i>
Am-abāris <i>vel</i> am-abare	<i>thou wast loved</i>
Am-abatur	<i>he was loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-abamur	<i>We were loved</i>
Am-abamīni	<i>ye were loved.</i>
Am-abantur	<i>they were loved.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—Have been.

<i>Sing.</i> Am-atus sum <i>vel</i> fui	<i>I have been loved</i>
Am-atus es <i>v.</i> fuisti	<i>thou hast been loved</i>
Am-atus est <i>v.</i> fuit	<i>he has been loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-ati sumus <i>v.</i> fuimus	<i>We have been loved</i>
Am-ati estis <i>v.</i> fuistis	<i>ye have been loved</i>
Am-ati sunt, fuerunt <i>v.</i> fuere	<i>they have been loved.</i>

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Had been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Am-atus eram <i>vel</i> fuëram	<i>I had been loved</i>
	Am-atus eras <i>v.</i> fueras	<i>thou hadst been loved</i>
	Am-atus erat <i>v.</i> fuerat	<i>he had been loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Am-ati eramus <i>v.</i> fueramus	<i>We had been loved</i>
	Am-ati eratis <i>v.</i> fueratis	<i>ye had been loved</i>
	Am-ati erant <i>v.</i> fuerant	<i>they had been loved.</i>

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE—*Shall or will be.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Am-abor	<i>I shall or will be loved</i>
	Am-abëris <i>vel</i> am-abere	<i>thou shalt or wilt be loved</i>
	Am-abitur	<i>he shall or will be loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Am-abimur	<i>We shall or will be loved</i>
	Am-abimini	<i>ye shall or will be loved</i>
	Am-abuntur	<i>they shall or will be loved.</i>

6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE—*Shall have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Am-atus ero <i>vel</i> fuero	<i>I shall have been loved</i>
	Am-atus eris <i>v.</i> fueris	<i>thou shalt have been loved</i>
	Am-atus erit <i>v.</i> fuerit	<i>he shall have been loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Am-ati erimus <i>v.</i> fuerimus	<i>We shall have been loved</i>
	Am-ati eritis <i>v.</i> fueritis	<i>ye shall have been loved</i>
	Am-ati erunt <i>v.</i> fuerint	<i>they shall have been loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE—*No first Person.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Am-are, am-ātor	<i>Be thou loved</i>
	Am-etur, am-ator	<i>let him be loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Am-emur	<i>Let us be loved</i>
	Am-amini, am-aminor	<i>be ye loved</i>
	Am-entur, am-antor	<i>let them be loved.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*May, can, would, should be.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Am-er	<i>I may or can be loved</i>
	Am-ëris <i>vel</i> am-ere	<i>thou mayst or canst be loved</i>
	Am-etur	<i>he may or can be loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Am-emur	<i>We may or can be loved</i>
	Am-emiini	<i>ye may or can be loved</i>
	Am-entur	<i>they may or can be loved.</i>

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Might, could, should be.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Am-arer	<i>I might or could be loved</i>
	Am-arëris <i>vel</i> am-arere	<i>thou mightst or couldst be loved</i>
	Am-aretur	<i>he might or could be loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Am-aremur	<i>We might or could be loved</i>
	Am-aremini	<i>ye might or could be loved</i>
	Am-arentur	<i>they might or could be loved.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*May, should have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Am-atus sim <i>vel</i> fuerim	<i>I should have been loved</i>
Am-atus sis <i>v.</i> fueris	<i>thou shouldst have been loved</i>
Am-atus sit <i>v.</i> fuerit	<i>he should have been loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-ati simus <i>v.</i> fuerimus	<i>We should have been loved</i>
Am-ati sitis <i>v.</i> fueritis	<i>ye should have been loved</i>
Am-ati sint <i>v.</i> fuerint	<i>they should have been loved.</i>

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Might, could, would have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Am-atus essem <i>vel</i> fuissem	<i>I would have been loved</i>
Am-atus esses <i>v.</i> fuisses	<i>thou wouldst have been loved</i>
Am-atus esset <i>v.</i> fuisset	<i>he would have been loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-ati essemus <i>v.</i> fuissemus	<i>We would have been loved</i>
Am-ati essetis <i>v.</i> fuissetis	<i>ye would have been loved</i>
Am-ati essent <i>v.</i> fuissent	<i>they would have been loved.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT and PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE.

Am-ari	<i>to be loved.</i>
--------	---------------------

PRETERPERFECT and PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE.

Am-atum esse <i>vel</i> fuisse	<i>to have been loved.</i>
--------------------------------	----------------------------

FUTURE TENSE.

Am-atum iri	<i>to be about to be loved.</i>
-------------	---------------------------------

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT TENSE *wanting*.—For it, is used *Quum* or *Qui am-or, -āris, -ātur*.

PRETERPERFECT TENSE.

FUTURE *in dus*.

Am-atus	<i>loved or being loved.</i>	Am-andus	<i>to be loved</i>
---------	------------------------------	----------	--------------------

§ 67.—SECOND CONJUGATION—MONEOR.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*Am.*

<i>Sing.</i> Mon-eor	<i>I am advised</i>
Mon-ēris <i>vel</i> mon-ere	<i>thou art advised</i>
Mon-etur	<i>he is advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Mon-emur	<i>We are advised</i>
Mon-emiini	<i>ye are advised</i>
Mon-entur	<i>they are advised.</i>

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE — *Was.*

<i>Sing.</i> Mon-ēbar	<i>I was advised</i>
Mon-ebāris <i>vel</i> mon-ebare	<i>thou wast advised</i>
Mon-ebatur	<i>he was advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Mon-ebamur	<i>We were advised</i>
Mon-ebamini	<i>ye were advised</i>
Mon-ebantur	<i>they were advised.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE — *Have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Mon-ītus sum <i>vel</i> fui	<i>I have been advised</i>
Mon-itus es <i>v.</i> fuisti	<i>thou hast been advised</i>
Mon-itus est <i>v.</i> fuit	<i>he hath been advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Mon-īti sumus <i>v.</i> fuimus	<i>We have been advised</i>
Mon-īti estis <i>v.</i> fuistis	<i>ye have been advised</i>
Mon-īti sunt, fuerunt <i>v.</i> fuere	<i>they have been advised.</i>

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE — *Had been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Mon-itus eram <i>vel</i> fueram	<i>I had been advised</i>
Mon-itus eras <i>v.</i> fueras	<i>thou hadst been advised</i>
Mon-itus erat <i>v.</i> fuerat	<i>he had been advised</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Mon-īti eramus <i>v.</i> fueramus	<i>We had been advised</i>
Mon-īti eratis <i>v.</i> fueratis	<i>ye had been advised</i>
Mon-īti erant <i>v.</i> fuerant	<i>they had been advised.</i>

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE — *Shall or will be.*

<i>Sing.</i> Mon-ēbor	<i>I shall or will be advised</i>
Mon-ebēris <i>vel</i> mon-ebere	<i>thou shalt or wilt be advised</i>
Mon-ebitur	<i>he shall or will be advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Mon-ebimur	<i>We shall or will be advised</i>
Mon-ebimini	<i>ye shall or will be advised</i>
Mon-ebuntur	<i>they shall or will be advised.</i>

6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE — *Shall have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Mon-itus ero <i>vel</i> fuero	<i>I shall have been advised</i>
Mon-itus eris <i>v.</i> fueris	<i>thou shalt have been advised</i>
Mon-itus erit <i>v.</i> fuerit	<i>he shall have been advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Mon-īti erimus <i>v.</i> fuerimus	<i>We shall have been advised</i>
Mon-īti eritis <i>v.</i> fueritis	<i>ye shall have been advised</i>
Mon-īti erunt <i>v.</i> fuerint	<i>they shall have been advised.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE — *No first Person.*

<i>Sing.</i> Mon-ēre, mon-etor	<i>Be thou advised</i>
Mon-eatur, mon-etor	<i>let him be advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Mon-eamur	<i>Let us be advised</i>
Mon-eminī, mon-eminor	<i>be ye advised</i>
Mon-eantur, mon-entor	<i>let them be advised.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*May, can, would, should be.*

<i>Sing.</i> Mon-ear	<i>I may or can be advised</i>
Mon-eāris <i>vel</i> mon-eare	<i>thou mayst or canst be advised</i>
Mon-eatur	<i>he may or can be advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Mon-eamur	<i>We may or can be advised</i>
Mon-eamini	<i>ye may or can be advised</i>
Mon-eantur	<i>they may or can be advised.</i>

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Might, could, should be.*

<i>Sing.</i> Mon-ērer	<i>I might or could be advised</i>
Mon-erēris <i>v.</i> mon-erere	<i>thou mightst or couldst be advised</i>
Mon-eretur	<i>he might or could be advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Mon-eremur	<i>We might or could be advised</i>
Mon-eremini	<i>ye might or could be advised</i>
Mon-erentur	<i>they might or could be advised.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*May, should have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Mon-itus sim <i>vel</i> fuerim	<i>I should have been advised</i>
Mon-itus sis <i>v.</i> fueris	<i>thou shouldst have been advised</i>
Mon-itus sit <i>v.</i> fuerit	<i>he should have been advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Mon-iti simus <i>v.</i> fuerimus	<i>We should have been advised</i>
Mon-iti sitis <i>v.</i> fueritis	<i>ye should have been advised</i>
Mon-iti sint <i>v.</i> fuerint	<i>they should have been advised.</i>

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Might, could, would have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Mon-itus essem <i>vel</i> fuisset	<i>I would have been advised</i>
Mon-itus esses <i>v.</i> fuisses	<i>thou wouldst have been advised</i>
Mon-itus esset <i>v.</i> fuisset	<i>he would have been advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Mon-iti essemus <i>v.</i> fuissetis	<i>We would have been advised</i>
Mon-iti essetis <i>v.</i> fuissetis	<i>ye would have been advised</i>
Mon-iti essent <i>v.</i> fuissent	<i>they would have been advised.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT and PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE.

Mon-eri *to be advised.*

PRETERPERFECT and PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE.

Mon-itum esse *vel* fuisset *to have been advised.*

FUTURE TENSE.

Mon-itum iri *to be about to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT TENSE *wanting*.—For it, is used *Quum* or *Qui mon-eor*
-ēris, ētūr.

PRETERPERFECT TENSE.

Mon-itus *advised or being advised.*

FUTURE in dus.

Mon-endus *to be advised.*

§ 68.—THIRD CONJUGATION—REGOR.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*Am.*

<i>Sing.</i> Reg-or	<i>I am ruled</i>
Reg-ëris <i>vel</i> reg-ere	<i>thou art ruled</i>
Reg-ïtur	<i>he is ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Reg-imur	<i>We are ruled</i>
Reg-imini	<i>ye are ruled</i>
Reg-untur	<i>they are ruled.</i>

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Was.*

<i>Sing.</i> Reg-ēbar	<i>I was ruled</i>
Reg-ebaris <i>vel</i> reg-ebare	<i>thou wast ruled</i>
Reg-ebatur	<i>he was ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Reg-ebamur	<i>We were ruled</i>
Reg-ebamini	<i>ye were ruled</i>
Reg-ebantur	<i>they were ruled.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*Have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Rec-tus sum <i>vel</i> fui	<i>I have been ruled</i>
Rec-tus es <i>v.</i> fuisti	<i>thou hast been ruled</i>
Rec-tus est <i>v.</i> fuit	<i>he hath been ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Rec-ti sumus <i>v.</i> fuimus	<i>We have been ruled</i>
Rec-ti estis <i>v.</i> fuistis	<i>ye have been ruled</i>
Rec-ti sunt, fuerunt <i>v.</i> fuere	<i>they have been ruled.</i>

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Had been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Rec-tus eram <i>vel</i> fueram	<i>I had been ruled</i>
Rec-tus eras <i>v.</i> fueras	<i>thou hadst been ruled</i>
Rec-tus erat <i>v.</i> fuerat	<i>he had been ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Rec-ti eramus <i>v.</i> fueramus	<i>We had been ruled</i>
Rec-ti eratis <i>v.</i> fueratis	<i>ye had been ruled</i>
Rec-ti erant <i>v.</i> fuerant	<i>they had been ruled.</i>

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE—*Shall or will be.*

<i>Sing.</i> Reg-ar	<i>I shall or will be ruled</i>
Reg-āris <i>vel</i> reg-ere	<i>thou shalt or wilt be ruled</i>
Reg-etur	<i>he shall or will be ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Reg-emur	<i>We shall or will be ruled</i>
Reg-emiini	<i>ye shall or will be ruled</i>
Reg-entur	<i>they shall or will be ruled.</i>

6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE—*Shall have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Rec-tus ero <i>vel</i> fuero	<i>I shall have been ruled</i>
Rec-tus eris <i>v.</i> fueris	<i>thou shalt have been ruled</i>
Rec-tus erit <i>v.</i> fuerit	<i>he shall have been ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Rec-ti erimus <i>v.</i> fuerimus	<i>We shall have been ruled</i>
Rec-ti eritis <i>v.</i> fueritis	<i>ye shall have been ruled</i>
Rec-ti erunt <i>v.</i> fuerint	<i>they shall have been ruled.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE—*No first Person.*

<i>Sing.</i> Reg-ěre reg-itor	<i>Be thou ruled</i>
Reg-atur, reg-itor	<i>let him be ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Reg-amur	<i>Let us be ruled</i>
Reg-imini, reg-iminor	<i>be ye ruled</i>
Reg-antur, reg-untor	<i>let them be ruled.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*May, can, would, should be.*

<i>Sing.</i> Reg-ar	<i>I may or can be ruled</i>
Reg-āris <i>vel</i> reg-are	<i>thou mayst or canst be ruled</i>
Reg-atur	<i>he may or can be ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Reg-amur	<i>We may or can be ruled</i>
Reg-amini	<i>ye may or can be ruled</i>
Reg-antur	<i>they may or can be ruled.</i>

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Might, could, should be.*

<i>Sing.</i> Reg-ěrer	<i>I might or could be ruled</i>
Reg-erēris <i>vel</i> reg-erere	<i>thou mightst or couldst be ruled</i>
Reg-eretur	<i>he might or could be ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Reg-eremur	<i>We might or could be ruled</i>
Reg-eremini	<i>ye might or could be ruled</i>
Reg-erentur	<i>they might or could be ruled.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*May, should have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Rec-tus sim <i>vel</i> fuerim	<i>I should have been ruled</i>
Rec-tus sis <i>v.</i> fueris	<i>thou shouldst have been ruled</i>
Rec-tus sit <i>v.</i> fuerit	<i>he should have been ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Rec-ti simus <i>v.</i> fuerimus	<i>We should have been ruled</i>
Rec-ti sitis <i>v.</i> fueritis	<i>ye should have been ruled</i>
Rec-ti sint <i>v.</i> fuerint	<i>they should have been ruled.</i>

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE — *Might, could, would have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Rec-tus essem <i>vel</i> fuissem	<i>I would have been ruled</i>
	Rec-tus esses <i>v.</i> fuisses	<i>thou wouldst have been ruled</i>
	Rec-tus esset <i>v.</i> fuisset	<i>he would have been ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Rec-ti essemus <i>v.</i> fuissemus	<i>We would have been ruled</i>
	Rec-ti essetis <i>v.</i> fuissetis	<i>ye would have been ruled</i>
	Rec-ti essent <i>v.</i> fuissent	<i>they would have been ruled.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT and PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE.

Reg-i *to be ruled.*

PRETERPERFECT and PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE.

Rec-tum esse *vel* fuisse *to have been ruled.*

FUTURE TENSE.

Rec-tum iri *to be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT TENSE *wanting.* — For it, is used *Quum* or *Qui reg-or, -ēris, -itur, &c.*

PRETERPERFECT TENSE.

Rec-tus *ruled or being ruled.*FUTURE *in dus.*Reg-endus *to be ruled.*

§ 69.—FOURTH CONJUGATION—AUDIOR.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*Am.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Aud-ior	<i>I am heard</i>
	Aud-iris <i>vel</i> aud-ire	<i>thou art heard</i>
	Aud-itur	<i>he is heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Aud-imur	<i>We are heard</i>
	Aud-imini	<i>ye are heard</i>
	Aud-iuntur	<i>they are heard.</i>

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Was.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Aud-īebar	<i>I was heard</i>
	Aud-iebaris <i>vel</i> aud-iebare	<i>thou wast heard</i>
	Aud-iebatur	<i>he was heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Aud-iebamur	<i>We were heard</i>
	Aud-iebamini	<i>ye were heard</i>
	Aud-iebantur	<i>they were heard.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*Have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-itus sum <i>vel</i> fui	<i>I have been heard</i>
Aud-itus es <i>v.</i> fuisti	<i>thou hast been heard</i>
Aud-itus est <i>v.</i> fuit	<i>he has been heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-iti sumus <i>v.</i> fuimus	<i>We have been heard</i>
Aud-iti estis <i>v.</i> fuistis	<i>ye have been heard</i>
Aud-iti sunt, fuerunt <i>v.</i> fuere	<i>they have been heard.</i>

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Had been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-itus eram <i>vel</i> fueram	<i>I had been heard</i>
Aud-itus eras <i>v.</i> fueras	<i>thou hadst been heard</i>
Aud-itus erat <i>v.</i> fuerat	<i>he had been heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-iti eramus <i>v.</i> fueramus	<i>We had been heard</i>
Aud-iti eratis <i>v.</i> fueratis	<i>ye had been heard</i>
Aud-iti erant <i>v.</i> fuerant	<i>they had been heard.</i>

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE—*Shall or will be.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-iar	<i>I shall or will be heard</i>
Aud-iāris <i>vel</i> aud-iere	<i>thou shalt or wilt be heard</i>
Aud-ietur	<i>he shall or will be heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-iamur	<i>We shall or will be heard</i>
Aud-iamini	<i>ye shall or will be heard</i>
Aud-ientur	<i>they shall or will be heard.</i>

6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE—*Shall have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-itus ero <i>vel</i> fuero	<i>I shall have been heard</i>
Aud-itus eris <i>v.</i> fueris	<i>thou shalt have been heard</i>
Aud-itus erit <i>v.</i> fuerit	<i>he shall have been heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-iti erimus <i>v.</i> fuerimus	<i>We shall have been heard</i>
Aud-iti eritis <i>v.</i> fueritis	<i>ye shall have been heard</i>
Aud-iti erunt <i>v.</i> fuerint	<i>they shall have been heard.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.—*No first Person.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-ire, aud-itor	<i>Be thou heard</i>
Aud-iatur, aud-itor	<i>let him be heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-iamur	<i>Let us be heard</i>
Aud-imini, aud-iminor	<i>be ye heard</i>
Aud-iantur, aud-iuntor	<i>let them be heard.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*May, can, would, should be.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-iar	<i>I may or can be heard</i>
Aud-iāris <i>vel</i> aud-iare	<i>thou mayst or canst be heard</i>
Aud-iatur	<i>he may or can be heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-iamur	<i>We may or can be heard</i>
Aud-iamini	<i>ye may or can be heard</i>
Aud-iantur	<i>they may or can be heard.</i>

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*Might, could, should be.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-irer	<i>I might or could be heard</i>
Aud-irēris <i>vel</i> aud-irere	<i>thou mightst or couldst be heard</i>
Aud-iretur	<i>he might or could be heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-iremur	<i>We might or could be heard</i>
Aud-iremini	<i>ye might or could be heard</i>
Aud-irentur	<i>they might or could be heard.</i>

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*May, should have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-itus <i>sim vel</i> fuerim	<i>I should have been heard</i>
Aud-itus sis <i>v.</i> fueris	<i>thou shouldst have been heard</i>
Aud-itus sit <i>v.</i> fuerit	<i>he should have been heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-iti <i>simus v.</i> fuerimus	<i>We should have been heard</i>
Aud-iti sitis <i>v.</i> fueritis	<i>ye should have been heard</i>
Aud-iti sint <i>v.</i> fuerint	<i>they should have been heard.</i>

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*Would, might, could have been*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-itus <i>essem vel</i> fuissēm	<i>I would have been heard</i>
Aud-itus esses <i>v.</i> fuisses	<i>thou wouldst have been heard</i>
Aud-itus esset <i>v.</i> fuisset	<i>he would have been heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-iti <i>essemus v.</i> fuissemus	<i>We would have been heard</i>
Aud-iti essetis <i>v.</i> fuissetis	<i>ye would have been heard</i>
Aud-iti essent <i>v.</i> fuissent	<i>they would have been heard.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT and PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-iri	<i>to be heard.</i>
---------	---------------------

PRETERPERFECT and PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-itum <i>esse vel</i> fuisset	<i>to have been heard.</i>
----------------------------------	----------------------------

FUTURE TENSE.

Aud-itum iri	<i>to be about to be heard.</i>
--------------	---------------------------------

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT *wanting*.—For it, is used *Quum* or *Qui aud-ior, -iris -itur, &c.*

PRETERPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-itus	<i>heard or being heard.</i>
----------	------------------------------

FUTURE *in dus*.

Aud-iendus	<i>to be heard.</i>
------------	---------------------

§ 70.—OBSERVATIONS ON THE TENSES IN THE PASSIVE VOICE.

Obs. 1. All Present, Imperfect, and First Future Indicative Tenses, in the Passive Voice, are formed from the corresponding ones in the Active by changing *o* into *or*, or *m* into *r*; as *amo, amor; amabam, amabar; amabo, amator*. So, the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive: *amem, amer; amarem, amarer*. So in *moneo, rego, audio*.

Obs. 2. The Second Person Imperative Passive is always the same as the Infinitive Active: as *amāre, monēre, regēre, audire*.

Obs. 3. Neither the Active nor Passive Voice has a Future Subjunctive; but the other tenses of the Subjunctive supply its place:

Examples.—He said he would write, when he should have heard: *promisit se scripturum, quum audivisset: promitto me scripturum, si hoc a me audiatur*. If no Future has preceded, the Future in *rus*, with the Auxiliary Verb in the Subjunctive, is used for the Active: as, *non dubito quin auditurus sim: non dubitabam quin auditurus essem*; and, in the Passive Voice, *futurum sit ut, or fore ut*, followed by the Passive Subjunctive: as, *non dubito quin futurum sit, ut hoc audiatur*; or, *non dubito fore, ut hoc audiatur*.

Obs. 4. In Poetry the Infinitive Passive has sometimes another form besides *i*; viz. in *ier*: as, *amarier*: thus, *Spargier agno*.—Hor. *Dicier hic est*.—Pers.

Obs. 5. The Gerund and Future in *dus* of the Third and Fourth Conjugations ended, in old Latin, in *undus*: as *gerundus, audiundus*.

Obs. 6. The Futures in *dus* make, with the Verb *sum*, a Conjugation of their own, which expresses *necessity* or *fitness*: as follows,

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Amandus	sum	<i>I am</i>	
	eram	<i>I was</i>	
	fui	<i>I have been</i>	
	fueram	<i>I had been</i>	
	ero	<i>I shall be</i>	
	fuero	<i>I shall have been.</i>	
		sim	<i>I may be</i>
		essem v. forem	<i>I might be</i>
		fuerim	<i>I might have been</i>
		fuissem	<i>I should have been</i>
			<i>to be loved.</i>

INFIN. — Amandum esse, fuisse, fore.

This is called the *Periphrastic Conjugation*. (See § 64.)

Obs. 7. No Verbs, except Deponents and Neuter Passives, have a Participle of the Perfect in an Active Sense, —

Thus: say not *ventus* having come, but use *quum* with the Pluperfect Subjunctive; thus, *quum venissem*. But you will say *profectus* having set out, because *proficiscor* is a deponent; and you will say *confusus* having trusted, because *fido* is a Neuter Passive.

(See under PARTICIPLES, § 54, *Obs. 5.*)

Obs. 8. Also the Gerund in dum (or Gerund of Necessity) makes a Periphrastic Conjugation with sum: as,

Amandum	{	mihi tibi illi nobis vobis illis	}	est	{	I you he We ye they	}	must love.
---------	---	---	---	-----	---	------------------------------------	---	------------

So, *amandum erat, erit, fuit, fuerat, fuerit, &c.*, for the other Tenses.

Obs. 9. Examples of GERUNDS, and of the PARTICIPLES in dus, the latter used as Adjectives: —

Quæ finis standi? — nos flendo ducimus horas.
Nate Deâ, superanda omnis fortuna ferendo est.
Sublimes animas ad cœlum hinc ire putandum est.

Parcendum teneris: et dum se lætus ad auras
Palmes agit, laxis per purum immissus habenis,
Ipsa acie nondum falcis tentanda, sed uncis
Carpendæ manibus frondes, interque legendæ.
Texendæ sepes etiam et pecus omne tenendum.

Sollicitanda tamen tellus pulvisque movendus,
Et jam maturis metuendus Jupiter uvis. — Virg

Obs. 10. Example of the SUPINE in um: —

Missi sunt speculatum arcem.

This may be also put thus: —

Missi sunt	{	ad speculandum arcem ad arcem speculandam, speculandæ arcis causâ, speculaturi, or qui specularentur, or ut specularentur arcem.
------------	---	--

§ 71.—DEPONENT VERBS.*

DEPONENTS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

<i>Abŭmīnor</i> I abhor.	<i>Caupōnor</i> deal by retail.
<i>Adversor</i> oppose.	<i>Causor</i> allege.
<i>Adŭlor</i> flatter.	<i>Cōmissor</i> revel.
<i>Æmŭlor</i> rival.	<i>Cōmītor</i> accompany (Active only in the poets).
<i>Allŭcinor</i> dote, talk idly.	<i>Commentor</i> reflect upon, dispute.
* <i>Altercor</i> quarrel.	<i>Conciōnor</i> harangue.
<i>Amplexor</i> embrace.	<i>Confictor</i> contend.
<i>Ancillor</i> am a handmaid.	<i>Cōnor</i> attempt.
<i>Aprīcor</i> sun myself.	<i>Consilior</i> advise.
<i>Aquor</i> fetch water, <i>frumentor</i> collect corn, <i>lignor</i> collect wood, <i>materior</i> fell timber, <i>pabulor</i> forage.	<i>Consōlor</i> comfort.
<i>Arbitror</i> think.	<i>Conspīcor</i> behold.
<i>Architector</i> build.	<i>Contemplor</i> contemplate.
<i>Argūmentor</i> prove.	<i>Convīcor</i> revile.
<i>Argŭtor</i> chatter.	<i>Convīvor</i> feast.
<i>Aspernor</i> despise.	<i>Cornīcor</i> chatter as a crow.
<i>Assentor</i> agree, flatter.	<i>Crimīnor</i> accuse.
<i>Adstipŭlor</i> support.	<i>Cunctor</i> delay.
<i>Auctiōnor</i> sell at auction.	<i>Deversor</i> lodge.
<i>Aucŭpor</i> catch birds.	<i>Depecŭlor</i> plunder.
<i>Aversor</i> dislike.	<i>Despīcor</i> despise; <i>despīcatus</i> is Passive, despised.
<i>Augŭror</i>	<i>Diglādior</i> fight.
* <i>Auspīcor</i>	<i>Dignor</i> think worthy.
<i>Hāriōlor</i>	<i>Dedignor</i> disdain.
<i>Vaticīnor</i>	<i>Dōmīnor</i> rule.
<i>Auxīlor</i> aid.	<i>Elucubror</i> produce by dint of labour.
<i>Bacchor</i> revel as a Bacchanal.	<i>Epŭlor</i> feast.
* <i>Cachinnor</i> laugh aloud.	<i>Exsecror</i> execrate.
<i>Cālumnior</i> cavil.	* <i>Fabrīcor</i> fashion.
<i>Cavīllor</i> ridicule.	<i>Fabŭlor</i> , <i>confabulor</i> , talk.

* Obs. These words are used also in the Active, but less frequently.

<i>Fænĕror</i> lend at interest (in later writers Active).	<i>Misĕror</i> , <i>commiseror</i> , pity.
<i>Fĕrior</i> keep holiday.	<i>Möddĕror</i> restrain, temper.
<i>Frustror</i> disappoint.	<i>Mödülor</i> modulate.
<i>Fūrōr</i> , <i>suffūrōr</i> , steal.	<i>Möriĕror</i> comply.
<i>Glōrior</i> boast.	<i>Mōror</i> delay.
<i>Græcor</i> live luxuriously.	* <i>Münĕror</i> , <i>remuneror</i> , reward.
<i>Grassor</i> advance, attack.	<i>Mūtuor</i> borrow.
<i>Gratificor</i> comply with.	<i>Nĕgōtiōr</i> carry on business.
<i>Grātor</i> , <i>grātūlor</i> , give thanks, present congratulations.	<i>Nidūlor</i> build a nest.
<i>Grāvōr</i> think heavy.	<i>Nundīnor</i> deal in buying and selling.
<i>Helluor</i> gluttonize.	<i>Nūgor</i> trifle.
<i>Hortor</i> exhort.	<i>Nutricor</i> nourish.
<i>Hospītor</i> am a guest, lodge.	<i>Obversor</i> to be present to sight or thought.
<i>Jacūlor</i> throw, dart.	<i>Odōror</i> smell out.
<i>Imaginor</i> imagine.	<i>Ominor</i> prophesy.
<i>Imitor</i> imitate.	<i>Opĕror</i> bestow labour on.
<i>Indignor</i> am indignant, spurn.	<i>Opīnor</i> think.
<i>Infītor</i> deny.	<i>Opitūlor</i> lend help.
<i>Insidior</i> plot.	<i>Oscūlor</i> kiss.
<i>Interprĕtor</i> explain.	* <i>Oscitor</i> yawn.
<i>Jōcor</i> jest.	<i>Otiōr</i> have leisure.
<i>Lator</i> rejoice.	<i>Pālor</i> wander.
<i>Lamentor</i> lament.	<i>Palpor</i> stroke, flatter.
<i>Latrōcīnor</i> rob.	<i>Parasītor</i> act the flatterer.
<i>Lenōcīnor</i> (<i>alicui</i>) flatter.	<i>Patrocīnor</i> patronize.
<i>Lībidīnor</i> am voluptuous.	<i>Percontor</i> inquire.
<i>Līcītor</i> bid at an auction.	<i>Peregrīnor</i> dwell as a stranger.
<i>Lucror</i> gain.	<i>Periclitōr</i> try, am in danger.
<i>Luctor</i> strive, wrestle.	<i>Philōsōphor</i> philosophize.
* <i>Ludificor</i> ridicule.	* <i>Pignĕror</i> take a pledge, bind by a pledge.
<i>Machīnor</i> devise.	<i>Pigror</i> am idle.
<i>Medīcor</i> heal.	<i>Piscor</i> fish.
<i>Medītor</i> meditate.	* <i>Popūlor</i> lay waste.
<i>Mercor</i> buy.	<i>Prædor</i> plunder.
* <i>Mĕrīdior</i> repose at noon.	<i>Præstōlor</i> wait for.
<i>Mĕtor</i> measure out.	<i>Prævāricor</i> walk with crooked legs (<i>figur.</i> act dishonestly in litigation).
<i>Minor</i> , <i>minītor</i> threaten.	
<i>Mīror</i> wonder.	

Præcor pray.
Prælior fight a battle.
Ratiōcīnor reason.
Recordor remember.
Refrāgor oppose.
Rīnor examine minutely.
Rīzor wrangle.
Rustīcor live in the country.
Scītor, sciscītor, inquire.
Scrūtor, perscrūtor, search.
Sector follow.
Sermōcīnor hold discourse.
Sōlor, consōlor comfort.
Spātior, exspatior, walk.
Spēcūlor keep a good look out.
Stīpūlor make a bargain.
Stomāchor am indignant.
Suāvior kiss.

Suffrāgor assent to.
Suspīcor suspect.
Tergiversor shuffle.
Testor, testīcor, bear witness.
Trīcor make unreasonable difficulties (*tricas*).
Trīstor sad.
Tūmultuor make uproar.
Tūtōr defend.
Vādōr summon to trial.
Vāgor wander.
Vēlītor skirmish with light troops.
Vēneror venerate.
Vēnor hunt.
Vērēcundor feel shame at doing.
Versor (properly Passive of *veras*) dwell, am occupied in.
Vōcīfērōr vociferate.

DEPONENTS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

Fāteor, fassus sum, fateri, acknowledge. *Confīteor, confessus sum*, confess; so *profīteor, diffīteor*.
Līceor, licitus sum, bid at an auction. *Polliceor* promise.
Mēdeor heal.
Mēreor, meritus sum, more commonly *merui*, deserve. *Meritus* has usually a passive sense. *Commereor, demereor, promereor*.
Misereor, miseritus or *misertus sum*, pity.
Reor, rātus sum, rēri, think (no subjunctive mood).
Tueor, tuitus sum, look upon (defend). *Contueor, intueor*, look upon.
Vcreor, veritus sum, fear. *Revereor, subvereor*.

DEPONENTS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

From the obsolete *Apīscor, aptus sum, apisci*, are derived *Adīpīscor adeptus sum*, and *indīpīscor*, obtain.
Expergīscor, experrectus sum, expergīsci, awake.

Fruor, fructus (or *fructus*) *sum, frui*, enjoy. *Perfruor, perfructus sum*.

Fungor, functus sum, fungi, perform. *Defungor*.

Grādior, Aggredior, aggressus sum, aggrēdi; so *congrēdior, digrēdior, &c.*

Invēhor, invectus sum, invēhi, inveigh against, (properly Passive of *veho*).

Irascor, irasci, (properly an inchoative,) grow angry; *iratus sum* I am angry. I have been or was angry, is *succensui*.

Lābor, lapsus sum, lābi, fall. *Collābor* sink together; *dilābor* fall in pieces.

Lōquor, loquutus (or *locutus*) *sum, loqui*, speak. So *allōquor* address; *colloquor* speak with; *eloquor, &c.*

From the obsolete *miniscor, Comminiscor, commentus sum, comminisci*, devise, imagine. *Reminiscor* has no perfect; *recordatus sum* is used for the perfect.

Mōrior, morēris, imperative *morēre*: *morerer, moriebar, moriar, mortuus sum*, (participle future *moriturus*,) *mori*, to die, (*moriri* poetical). *Emorior, commorior, demorior*.

Nanciscor, nactus sum, nancisci, obtain.

Nascor, natus sum, nasci, nasciturus, am born. *Innascor, renascor*.

Nitor, nisus or *nixus sum, niti*, lean upon, strive. So *adaltor, connitor, renitor*, and *enitor*, exert myself; in the sense of 'bring forth' the participle *enixa* is preferable; *obnitor* has most commonly *obnixus*.

Obliviscor, oblitus sum, oblivisci, forget.

Orior, ortus sum, (part. fut. *oriturus*,) has in the infinitive *oriri*, and imperf. subj. *orirer*, according to the Fourth Conjugation; the present follows the Third, *orēris* or *oriris, oritur, orimur*. *Coorior* and *exorior* are formed in the same way; of *adorior, adoriris* and *adoritur* are more in use than *adorēris, adoritur*.

Pāciscor, pactus sum, (or *pepigi*, see *pango*,) make a bargain. *Depaciscor, depactus sum*; or *depeciscor, (depectus* not used).

Pascor, pastus sum, feed; intransitive. (Properly Passive of *pasco*.)

Pātiōr, passus sum, pāti, suffer. *Perpetior perpassus sum, perpēti*, endure.

From *plecto* twine, are derived, *Amplector* and *complector, complexus sum*, embrace.

Prōficiscor, profectus sum, proficisci, travel.

Quēror, questus sum, quēri, complain. *Conquēror*.

Ringor, (no perfect or participle,) *ringi*, grin, shew the teeth.

Sēquor, sequutus (or *secutus*) *sum, sēqui*, follow. *Assēquor, consequor* &c.

Vescor, (no perf. or sup.) *vesci*, eat. *Edi* is used as the perfect.

Ulciscor, ultus sum, ulcisci, revenge, punish.

Utor, ūtus sum, uti, usc. Abūtor, abuse.

Divertor, prāvertor, and revertor. They take the perfect from the Active form; *reversus sum* is not so common as *reverti*.

DEPONENTS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Adsentior, adsensus sum, adsentiri, assent. The Active *adsentio, adsensi, adsensum, adsentire*, is not so common.

Blandior, blanditus sum, blandiri, flatter.

Experior, expertus sum, experiri, experience, try.

Largior, largitus sum, largiri, give money. Dilargior.

Mentior, mentitus sum, mentiri, lie. Ementior.

Metior, mensus sum, metiri, measure. Dimetior, emetior, permetior.

Molior, molitus sum, moliri, move a mass, plan. Amolior, demolior, &c.

Opperior, oppertus sum, opperiri, wait for.

Ordior, orsus sum, ordiri, begin. Exordior, redordior.

Orior, ortus sum, oriri, arise.

Partior, partitus sum, partiri, divide. Dispartior, dispartitus sum (more frequently Active); *impertior* (also *impertio, impartio, impartior*).

Potior, potitus sum, potiri, possess myself of. The present indic. and the imperf. subj. are sometimes formed after the Third Conjugation; *potitur, potimur; potēretur, poteremur.*

Sortior, sortitus sum, sortiri, cast lots.

§ 72. — IRREGULAR VERBS DECLINED.

CERTAIN Verbs vary from the general rule, and are formed in the manner following:—

1. Possum, pōtēs, potui, posse; potens: *to be able.*
2. Vōlo, vīs, volui, velle; volendi, volendo, volendum; volens: *to be willing.*
3. Nōlo, nonvis, nolui, nolle; nolendi, nolendo, nolendum; nolens: *to be unwilling.*

4. Mālo, mavis, malui, malle; malendi, malendo, malendum; malens: *to be more willing or to have rather.*

5. Edo, ēdis *vel* ēs, edi, edēro *vel* esse; edendi, edendo, edendum; esum, esu; edens, esūrus: *to eat.*

6. Fēro, fers, tūli, ferre; ferendi, ferendo, ferendum; lātum, latu; ferens, laturus: *to bear or suffer.*

7. Fio, fis, factus sum *vel* fui, fīcīri; factus, faciendus: *to be made or done.*

8. Fēror, ferris *vel* ferre, latus sum *vel* fui, ferri; latus, ferendus: *to be borne or suffered.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE — *I am able, &c.*

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Possum	potes	potest	possūmus	potestis	possunt.	
Volo	vis	vult	volūmus	vultis	volunt.	
Nolo	nonvis	nonvult	nolūmus	nonvultis	nolunt.	
Malo	mavis	mavult	malūmus	mavultis	malunt.	
Edo	edis <i>vel</i> es	edit <i>v. est</i>	edīmus	editis <i>v. estis</i>	edunt.	
Fero	fers	fert	ferīmus	fertis	ferunt.	
Fio	fis	fit	fīmus	fitis	fiunt.	
Feror	ferris <i>v. ferre</i>	fertur	ferīmur	ferimini	feruntur.	

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE — *I was able, &c.*

Pot-eram	-eras	-erat	-erāmus	-eratis	-erant.	
Vol-ēbam	-ebas	-ebat	-ebāmus	-ebatis	-ebant.	
Nol-ēbam						
Mal-ēbam						
Ed-ēbam						
Fer-ēbam						
Fi-ēbam						
Fer-ēbar, -ebaris <i>v. -ebare, -ebatur</i>			-ebāmur	-ebamini	-ebantur	

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE — *I have been able, &c.*

Potui	-isti	-it	-īmus	-istis	-ērunt <i>vel</i> -ēre	
Volui						
Nolui						
Malui						
Edui						
Tului						
Factus	sum	es	est	-i sumus	estis	sunt, fuērunt
	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>
Lat-us	fui	fuisti	fuit	fuīmus	fuistis	fuēre.

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE — *I had been able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>		
Potu-eram	}			-eras	-erat	-erāmus -eratis -erant.
Volu-eram						
Nolu-eram						
Malu-eram						
Ed-eram						
Tul-eram						
Fact-us	}	eram	eras	erat	-i erāmus	eratis erant
Lat-us		vel	vel	vel	vel	vel
		fuēram	fueras	fuerat	fuerāmus	fueratis fuerant.

5. FIRST FUTURE TENSE — *I shall or will be able, &c.*

Pot-ēro	-eris	-erit	-erīmus	-erītis	-erunt.
*Vol-am	}				
*Nol-am					
*Mal-am					
Ed-am					
Fer-am					
Fi-am	-es	-et	-ēmus	-etis	-ent.
Fer-ar	-ēris v. -ēre	-etur	-ēmur	-emini	-entur.

6. SECOND FUTURE TENSE — *I shall have been able, &c.*

Potu-ēro	}					
Volu-ēro						
Nolu-ēro						
Malu-ēro						
Ed-ēro						
Tul-ēro						
Fact-us	}	ero	eris	erit	-i erimus	eritis erunt
Lat-us		vel	vel	vel	vel	vel
		fuēro	fueris	fuerit	fuerimus	fueritis fuerint.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Obs. *Possum, volo, malo*, have no Imperative Mood.

PRESENT TENSE — *Be thou unwilling, &c.*

<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Noli, nolito	}	}	edāmus	nolite, nolitōte.	
Ede, edito				{ edīte, edītōte, }	edant,
vel es, esto					
Fer, ferto; ferat, ferto,	}	}	ferāmus;	ferte, fertote;	fer-ant, -unto.
Fi, fīto; fiat, fīto,			fīāmus;	fīte, fītote;	fiant, fiunto
Fer-re, fer-tor; fer-ātur,			fer-āmur;	fer-imini, fer-iminor;	fer-
[fer-tor,				[-antur, fer-untor	

* *Volam, nolam, malam* are very rare.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE—*I may be able, &c.*

Singular.

Plural.

Poss-im	}	-is	-it	-īmus	-itis	-int.
Vel-im						
Nol-im						
Mal-im						
Ed-am	}	-as	-at	-āmus	-atis	-ant.
Fer-am						
Fi-am						
Fer-ar						
		-āris vel -āre	-ātur	-āmur	-amini	-antur.

2. PRETERIMPERFECT TENSE—*I might be able, &c.*

Poss-em	}	-es	-et	-ēmus	-etis	-ent.
Vell-em						
Noll-em						
Mall-em						
Edēr-em						
vel						
Ess-em	}	-ēris vel ēre	-etur	-ēmur	-emini	-entur
Ferr-em						
Fiēr-em						
Ferr-er						

3. PRETERPERFECT TENSE—*I should have been able, &c.*

Potu-ērim	}	-eris	-erit	-erimus	-eritis	-erint.
Volu-ērim						
Nolu-ērim						
Malu-ērim						
Ed-ērim						
Tul-ērim	}	sim	sis	sit	-i simus	sitis
Fact-us						
Lat-us						
		vel	vel	vel	vel	vel
		fuērim	fueris	fuerit	fuerimus	fueritis
					fuerint.	fuerint.

4. PRETERPLUPERFECT TENSE—*I would have been able, &c.*

Potu-issem	}	-isses	-isset	-issēmus	-issetis	-issent.
Volu-issem						
Nolu-issem						
Malu-issem						
Ed-issem						
Tul-issem	}	essem	esses	esset	-i essēmus	essetis
Fact-us						
Lat-us						
		vel	vel	vel	vel	vel
		fuissem	fuiesses	fuisset	fuissemus	fuissetis
					fuisissent.	fuisissent.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT and PRÆTERIMPERFECT TENSE — *To be able, &c.*

Posse.	Nolle.	Edere vel esse.	Fiēri.
Velle.	Malle.	Ferre.	Ferri.

PRÆTERPERFECT and PRÆTERPLUPERFECT TENSE — *To have been able, &c.*

Potuisse.	Noluisse.	Edisse.	Fac-tum esse vel fuisse.
Voluisse.	Maluisse.	Tulisse.	La-tum esse vel fuisse.

FUTURE TENSE — *To be about to eat, &c.*

Esūrum esse.	Factum iri.
Latūrum esse.	Latum iri.

Obs. *Possum, volo, nolo, malo*, have no Future Tense of the Infinitive Mood.

§ 73. — OBSERVATIONS ON IRREGULAR VERBS.

Obs. 1. *Possum* is from *pōtīs-sum*, *pōtē-sum*, I am able. *Nōlo* is from *non volo*; *mālo* is from *magis-volo*, or *māgē-vōlo*.

Obs. 2. The *r* is doubled only in those tenses of *Fero* where *e* has been thrown out: thus, instead of *ferērem*, (like *regerem*), is used *ferrem*; so for the Infinitive Active, *ferere*, is used *ferre*; so for the Second Person Indicative Passive, *fereris*, is used *ferris*.

Obs. 3. *Tuli* is for *tētūli*, from the old word, *tulo*, a form of *tollo* connected with *τλάω, τληπὸν*, whence *lātum*.

Obs. 4. With *Fio* cp. *φύω*, Gr. Gr. § 94.

EO to go, is also a verb irregular.

Eo, *is*, *ivi*, *ire*, *itum*, *iens*, *itūrus*.

INDIC. MOOD.	}	<i>Sing.</i> Eo, is, it. <i>Plur.</i> Imus, itis, eunt.
<i>Pres. T.</i>		
<i>Præterimperf. Tense.</i>	}	<i>Sing.</i> Ibam, ibas, ibat. <i>Plur.</i> Ibāmus, ibatis, [ibant.]
<i>Future Tense.</i>		
IMPERAT. M.	<i>Sing.</i> I, ito; eat, ito. <i>Plur.</i> Eāmus; ite, itōte; [eant, eunto.]	

SUBJUNCT. M. *Sing.* *Eam*, *eas*, *eat*. *Plur.* *Eāmus*, *eatis*, *eant*.

GERUNDS. *Eundi*, *eundo*, *eundum*.

PARTICIPLE *Pres. Tense.* *Iens*; *Gen.* *eūntis*.

In all other Moods and Tenses *Eo* is declined like *audio*.

(Cp. *εἰμι*, *ibo*, Gr. Gr. § 80.)

§ 74.—*Obs.* 1. In like manner the compounds of *Eo* are declined; so *queo* to be able, and *nequeo* to be unable; except that these two last have no Imperative Mood nor Gerunds.

Obs. 2. The compounds of *Eo* rarely take *ivi*, but *ii*, in the Perfect and Tenses formed from it: as, *redeo*, I turn, makes *redii*, *rediissem*, not *redivi*. So *abeo*, *abii*, and the rest: as, *abeo*, *intereo*, *perco*, *vēneo* I am sold, from *vēnum eo*.

§ 75.—DEFECTIVE VERBS.

VERBS are called *Defective* that have only some particular Tenses and Persons: as,

AIO *I say ay, or I affirm.*

INDIC. MOOD, *Pres. Tense*, *Sing.* Aio, āis, ait. *Plur.* Aiunt.

Preterimp. T. *Sing.* Aiē-bam, -bas, -bat.

Plur. Aie-bāmus, -batis; -bant.

Preterperf. T. *Sing.* Aisti. *Plur.* Aistis.

SUBJUNCT. M., *Present T.* *Sing.* Aias, aiat. *Plur.* Aiant.

Obs. 1. *Ain'*, for *Aisne*.

Obs. 2. See below, **INQUAM**.

ĀVĒ or **HAVE** *Hail!*

IMPERATIVE MOOD, *Sing.* Āve, avēto. *Pl.* Avēte, avetōte.

INFINITIVE MOOD, Avēre.

AUSIM *I may dare.*

INDIC. or POTENT. MOOD, *Sing.* Ausim, ausis, ausit.

Plur. Ausint.

Obs. *Ausim* is an old Perfect Subjunctive, from *audeo*. (Compare *fazim*.)

CĒDŌ *Give me.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD, *Sing.* Cedo. *Plur.* Cedīte, Cette.

CŒPI *I begin.* (*Co-apio, coepi.*) (See **NOVI**.)

INDIC. M., *Preterperf. Tense*, *Sing.* Cœpi, cœpisti.

PARTICIP., *Fut. in rus*, Cœpturus. *Particip. Pass.* Cœptus.

Obs. With an Infinitive Passive, *cœpi* is not used, but *cœptus sum*: as, *Urbs obsideri cœpta est*. So, *desītus sum*, not *desiī*.

FAXO or FAXIM *I will or may do it.*

INDIC. or POT. M., Fut. T'. Sing. Faxo *vel* faxim, faxis, faxit.
Plur. Faximus, faxitis, faxint.

Obs. Faxo is an old Second Future for *fecero*. Faxim is an old Perfect Subjunctive for *fecerim*.

INQUAM (ἐνέπω) *Say I.*

INDIC. M., Present Tense, Sing. In-quam, in-quis, inquit.
Plur. In-qui-mus, -qui-tis, -qui-unt.
Preterimp. T. Sing. In-qui-ē-bam, -bas, -bat.
Plur. In-qui-e-bamus, -batis, -bant.
Preterp. Tense, Sing. In-qui-i, in-quisti.
Plur. In-quistis.
Future Tense, Sing. In-qui-es, in-quiet.
Plur. In-qui-ent.
IMPERATIVE MOOD, Sing. In-que, in-quito.

PARTICIPLE, In-quiens.

Obs. 1. *Inquam* is used to quote what another said, or to repeat what one has said oneself. It never stands the first word in a sentence.

Obs. 2. *Ait* introduces an *oratio obliqua*; but *inquit*, an *oratio recta*.
Example: —

Nil *ait* esse prius, melius nil cælibe vitâ.

"Nil satis est," *inquit*, "quia tanti quantum habeas sis." — *Hor.*

Obs. 3. *Ait* is used for both purposes by the Poets.

MEMINI *I remember.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD, Sing. Memento. Plur. Mementôte
(See *Novi*.)

NOVI *I know*; and **MEMINI** *I remember*. These two verbs have the tenses only that are formed from the Preterperfect Tense of the Indicative Mood: as of

Memin-i are formed *memin-eram, -ërim, -issem, -ëro, -isse*.

In like manner *Cæpi* and *Odi* also form these tenses.

Novi contracts its tenses: as, *novisti, nôsti; noveram, nôram*.

ODI *I hate.* (See *Novi*.)

INDIC. M., Preterperf. T. Sing. Odi, odisti, odit.
Plur. Odêrunt.

Second Future T. Sing. Oder-o, -is, -it, &c.

l'ARTICIP., Preterperf. T. OSUS. Fut. in rus, Osurus.

QUÆSO (*quæro*) *Prithæe.*INDIC. M., *Present Tense.*

Sing. Quæso, quæsis, quæsit.

Plur. Quæsumus.

INFIN. M., Quæsere.

PARTICIPLE, Quæsens.

SALVE *Hail!*INDICAT. M., *Future Tense,* Sing. Salvēbis.

IMPERATIVE MOOD,

Sing. Salve, salvēto. Plur. Salvēte

INFINITIVE MOOD,

Salvēre.

So VALE *Farewell!*

§ 76.—IMPERSONAL VERBS.

VERBS, when expressed in general without any *Person* as Nominative case, and which in English take the word *it* before them, are called *Impersonals* : as,

It delighteth *delectat, delectabat, delectavit, &c.*It becometh *decet, decebat, decuit, &c.*It is fought *pugnatur, pugnabatur, pugnatum est, &c.*It seemeth *videtur, videbatur, videbitur, visum est, &c.*It happeneth *fit, accidit, evenit, contingit.*

IMPERSONALS are thus declined :

PRESENT, Juvat, Sing.	{ me te illum	}	<i>it delights.</i>	{ me thce him.
Plur.	{ nos vos illos	}		{ us you them.

IMPERF. Juvabat.

PERFECT, Juvit.

For the Imperative, you will use the Subjunctive : as, Be thou ashamed *Pudeat te.*

Obs. Miseret in the Perfect makes Misertum est.

Piget	"	"	Piguit or Pigitum est.
Pudet	"	"	Puduit or Puditum est.
Tædet	"	"	Tæduit or Pertæsum est.
Decet	"	"	Decuit.
Dedecet	"	"	Dedecuit.
Licet	"	"	Licuit.
Oportet	"	"	Oportuit.
Pœnitet	"	"	Pœnituit.

§ 77.—OF AN ADVERB.

AN ADVERB is a part of speech joined to Verbs (*ad verba*), Adjectives, and Substantives, to qualify their signification; and answers the questions *how? where? when?* as, *How* does he speak? He speaks *well*. *Where* is he? *Here*. *When* does he come? *To-morrow*.

AN ADVERB is to a Verb what an Adjective is to a Substantive.

§ 78. ADVERBS are

- | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. MODI of manner. | 3. TEMPORIS of time. |
| 2. LOCI of place. | 4. QUANTITATIS of quantity. |

§ 79.—ADVERBIA MODI, see below, § 119.

<i>Where?</i>	<i>whence?</i>	<i>whither?</i>	<i>by what way?</i>	<i>in what direction?</i>	<i>how far?</i>
<i>Ubi?</i>	<i>unde?</i>	<i>quo?</i>	<i>quā?</i>	<i>quorsum?</i>	<i>quātēnus</i>
<i>Here,</i>	<i>hence,</i>	<i>hither,</i>	<i>by this way,</i>		<i>thus far,</i>
<i>Hic;</i>	<i>hinc;</i>	<i>huc;</i>	<i>hāc;</i>		<i>hāctenus.</i>
<i>There,</i>	<i>thence,</i>	<i>thither,</i>	<i>by that way,</i>		<i>so far,</i>
<i>Ibi;</i>	<i>inde, exin, exinde;</i>	<i>eo;</i>	<i>by your way,</i>		<i>eātenus.</i>
<i>Where you are,</i>	<i>from your place,</i>	<i>to your place,</i>	<i>isthuc;</i>		
<i>Isthic;</i>	<i>isthinc;</i>	<i>to that place,</i>	<i>by his way,</i>	<i>in that direction,</i>	
<i>Where is he,</i>	<i>from that place,</i>	<i>illuc;</i>	<i>illac;</i>	<i>illorsum.</i>	
<i>Illic;</i>	<i>illinc;</i>	<i>to the same place,</i>	<i>by the same way,</i>		
<i>In the same place,</i>	<i>from the same place,</i>	<i>eodem;</i>			
<i>Ibidem;</i>	<i>indidem;</i>				
<i>In both places,</i>	<i>from both sides,</i>				
<i>Utrōbique;</i>	<i>utrinque.</i>				
<i>Every where,</i>	<i>from all sides,</i>				
<i>Ubique;</i>	<i>undique.</i>				
<i>Some where,</i>	<i>from some place or other, to some place,</i>	<i>by some way,</i>		<i>to some point,</i>	<i>aliquātenus *</i>
<i>Alicubi;</i>	<i>alicunde;</i>	<i>aliquo;</i>	<i>aliquā;</i>		
<i>Where you please,</i>	<i>whence you please,</i>	<i>to any place you like,</i>	<i>by any way you like,</i>		
<i>Ubivis, ubilibet;</i>	<i>undēvis, undelibet;</i>	<i>quovis, quolibet;</i>	<i>quāvis, quālibet.</i>		
<i>Any where,</i>		<i>to any place,</i>			
<i>Uspiam, usquam;</i>		<i>quoquam, quoquam.</i>		<i>in some other direction,</i>	
<i>Elsewhere,</i>	<i>from another place,</i>	<i>to another place,</i>	<i>by another way,</i>	<i>aliorsum.</i>	
<i>Alibi;</i>	<i>aliunde;</i>	<i>alio;</i>	<i>aliā;</i>		
<i>Wherever,</i>	<i>from what place soever, whithersoever,</i>	<i>by whatsoever way,</i>	<i>by whatsoever direction,</i>		
<i>Ubiqueque;</i>	<i>undecunq̄ue, undeunde; quocunq̄ue, quoquo;</i>	<i>quācunq̄ue, quāquā;</i>	<i>quocunq̄ue, quāquā;</i>	<i>quoquoque, quocunq̄ue.</i>	
<i>No where,</i>					
<i>Nusquam.</i>					

* Add to these — *To a certain point, quādamtenus. Example: Est quādam prodire tenuis, si non datur ultra. — Hor.*
† Add to these — *To the right, dextrorsum (dextro-versum). To the left, sinistrorsum. Inwards, introrsum. Within, intus. Backwards, retrorsum. Upwards, sursum. Downwards, deorsum. Under, subtus. Add also, eminus, cominus, foras, cœlitus, funditus, pēnitus, antiquitus, humanitus, extrinsecus, intrinsicus.*

Obs. 1. Ubique is used after *omnis qui, quotquot, quicquid*; in other cases *usquequæque* is used.

Obs. 2. In these Adverbs tenus always takes the Ablative Case and Feminine Gender : as, *hæc-tenus*.



§ 81.—ADVERBIA TEMPORIS, ADVERBS OF TIME.

(Cp. Gr. Gr. § 114.)

I. WHEN? quando?

Now nunc (νῦν).

To-day hōdiē (hoc die).

Then tunc, tum (τὸν—i. e. τότε χρόνον)

Yesterday hērī (χθές).

Before ante, antea.

After post, posteā, exin, exinde.

At that time, long before or after, olim (ollus, ille), *definite*;
quondam (quēm-dam) *indefinite*.

Long since dūdum, pridem.

Lately nūper (νέον-περ).

The day before pridie.

The day before yesterday nūdius tertius (nunc dies tertius).

In the morning manē.

By day interdiū (inter die).

In the evening vesperī (ἑσπέρas).

By night noctu (νυκτός).

To-morrow cras.

The day after postrīdie.

The day after to-morrow perendīe (peremptā die).

Next day, soon, propēdiem.

Very soon jamjam, mox, statim, protinus, illico (in loco), cito,
confestim, actūtum (ad tuitum).

Not yet nondum.

At some time aliquando, interdum, nonnunquam.

In the mean time interea, intērim.

Always semper, nunquam non.

At length tandem, denīque, aliquando.

Never nunquam.

II. How OFTEN? quōties? (ποσάκις;)

Every day quotīdie.

Every year quotannis.

Often sæpe, crebro, sæpĕnumero.

Pretty often aliquoties.

So often toties.

From time to time identidem, subinde.

Sometimes interdum, aliquando.

Generally plerumque.

Again and again etiam atque etiam, itĕrum iterumque.

Seldom raro.

III. HOW LONG? quamdiu? *To what time?* quousque?

So long tantisper.

Some (long) time aliquandiu, aliquantisper.

A little time parumper, paulisper.

IV. OF THINGS IN PROGRESS.

One after another in succession deinceps.

Day after day indies.

§ 82.—ADVERBIA QUANTITATIS, ADVERBS OF QUANTITY.

How much? quantum? Much multum, ita, valde, magnopere, summopere, admōdum.

So much tantum.

Too much nimis, nimium.

Little paulum, paululum.

Too little pārū.

Enough satis, abunde, affĕtim.

At least certe, saltem.

Only dumtaxat, tantum, modo.

More plus, magis.

Obs. 1. Plus means more in quantity; magis more in quality. Plus answers the question how much? magis answers the question how? Plus is more; magis is rather: as, Plus valet, qui magis arte agit quàm vi, quàm qui vi agit magis quàm arte.

Obs. 2. Adverbs of equality, resemblance, and the contrary, are—like, for example, velut, ut, sicut; just as if perinde ac si, æque ac si, non aliter ac si, non secus ac si.

Obs. 3. In these phrases ac is generally used when the difference or resemblance of two different objects is to be expressed; quam when different degrees of the same object.

For ADVERBS OF ORDER OR RANK, see above, under NUMERALS, § 29.

§ 83. — ADVERBS — INTERROGATIVE, AFFIRMATIVE, NEGATIVE.

INTERROGATIVE, which ask questions, are DIRECT OR INDIRECT.

DIRECT — *An, ne?* in a dubitative sense.

Cur (for *cui rei*), *quare* (for *quā rē?*) why? *quomodo* how? *ut* how?

Quin (*quid ne*) why not?

Num (*μῶν*) *numne?* expecting answer No.

Non, nonne? expecting answer Yes.

Obs. Hence *hiccine* (*hicce-ne*) is always interrogative.

Examples.

An? *Auditis? An me ludit amabilis*

Insania? — Hor.

Ne? *Novistine locum potiore rure beato? — Hor.*

Nonne? — *Nonne vides, croceos ut Tmolus odores,*
India mittit ebur, molles sua thura Sabæi? — Virg.

Num? — — — *Cocto num adest honor idem? — Hor.*

— *Num Sigeis occumbere campis,*
Num capti potuere capi? num incensa cremavit
Troja viros? — Virg.

Quin? *Quin potius pacem æternam pactosque hymeneos*
Exercemus? — Virg.

Ut? *Ut valet? ut meminit nostri? — Hor.*

An—anne? *An mare quod suprâ, memorem, quodque alluit infrâ?*
Anne lacus tantos? — Virg.

Ne—an? *Furorne cæcus, an rapit vis acrior? — Hor.*

Pacemne huc fertis? an arma? — Virg.

INDIRECT:

An? *Romulum post hoc priùs, an quietum*
Pompilî regnum memorem, an superbos
Tarquinî fascès, dubito, an Catonis

Nobile lethum. — Hor.

Ambigitur quid enim? Castor sciat, an Docilis plus. — Hor.

Ne—an? *Intererit multum Davusne loquatur, an heros,*
Maturusne senex, an adhuc flofente juventâ
Fervidus; et, matrona potens, an sedula nutrix. — Hor.

Utrum—an? *Ipse, quis sit, utrum sit, an non sit, id quoque nescit. — Catull.*

An non? *Quid refert, dictis ignoscat Mutius, an non? — Juv.*

AFFIRMATIVE, in reply : *etiam, sane, ita vero, ulique, imo vero.*

By means of two negatives : *non possum non, non possum quin, nemo non.*

NEGATIVE, in reply : *non vero, minimè gentium, nihil minus, nego ita esse.*

Obs. Haud scio an, means *perhaps* : *as, fors-an, forsit-an.*

Ne quidem NOT EVEN (*οὐδέ*) ; the emphatic word stands between them : *as,*

*Ne nocturna quidem carpentes pensa puellæ
Nescivere hyemem. — Virg.*

Amicum lædere ne joco quidem licet. — Sen.

Ne Hercules quidem contra duos.

Not—denying a *fact* or *supposition* — *No* : *as, You say that I know ; or you ask me whether I know ; but the fact is, I do not know, Non scio.*

Not — *Do not*, in *prohibitions* — *Nē* : *as Ne facias hoc, Do not do this.*

Obs. Say, ne quis for ut nemo, and ne quid for ut nihil.

Not—by no means — *Haud* (*οὐδέ*) ; especially with other negatives, or extenuations : *as, By no means ill, Haud male*—and particularly with *Adverbs, Adjectives, and Impersonals.*

Ex. — Haud male Telemachus, proles patientis Ulyssæi,

Non est aptus equis Ithacæ locus. — Hor.

Haud ignara ac non incauta futuri. — Hor.

BY NO MEANS—*haudquâquam, nequâquam, neutiquam.*

TO NO PURPOSE—*Nēquidquam.*

MUCH LESS—*Nedum* (*ne dicam* not to mention). *Ex. Vim tribunitiam sustinere non potuerunt, nedum his temporibus. — Cic.*

NOT ONLY NOT, when followed by *but not even*, is expressed by *non modo* or *non solum* without a second *non* : *as, Dolere non modo summum, sed ne malum quidem Philosophi affirmant. — Cic. Non modo, quod non possumus, sed ne quantum possumus quidem, cogimur. — Cic.*



§ 84.—COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

ADVERBS are compared, by taking the Neuter of the Comparative of the Adjective from which they come, as their Comparative ; and by changing the last syllable of its Superlative into *mè*, for their Superlative : *as doctè, doctiùs, doctissimè ; pulchrè, pulchriùs, pulcherrimè ; malè, pejùs, pessimè.*

Obs. Here are to be noticed the Diminutive forms : as, sæpiuscülè, meliuscülè, breviuscülè.

§ 85.—OF CONJUNCTIONS.

A CONJUNCTION is a part of speech that joineth together (*conjungit*) words and sentences; as, my father *and* my mother.

CONJUNCTIONS—COPULATIVE, which unite, are: *et, ac, atque, necnon, etiam, quoque, que* (enclitic); and, *neque, nec* NEITHER.

Obs. *Ac* stands only before Consonants. Before a *Vowel*, *atque* is to be used.

DISJUNCTIVE—*aut* (*ad, adre*), *vel* (*volo, velle*), *sive* (*si, sit, vel*), *seu, ve* (enclitic), OR.

Here are to be observed those which are repeated or united with some other Conjunction in the same clause: as,

EITHER followed by OR—*aut, aut; vel, vel.*

BOTH followed by AND—*cum, tum; et, et; tum, tum; tam, quam.*

NOW followed by THEN—*modo, modo; modo, nunc.*

NEITHER followed by NOR—*neque, neque; neque, nec; nec, neque: nec, nec.*

WHETHER IT BE SO, OR SO—*sive, seu.*

Examples.

Et followed by *et*,

Et sapit et mecum facit et Jove judicat æquo.—*Hor.*

Et followed by *que*,

Et studiis annos septem dedit, insenuitque.—*Hor.*

Que followed by *et*,

Tribulaque, traheæque, et iniquo pondere rastri.—*Virg.*

Que followed by *que* (in poetry),

Nesæe, Spioque, Thaliaque, Cymodoceque.—*Virg.*

§ 86.—On the difference of *AUT* and *VEL*, and the use of *SIVE*, *SEU*, *NEVE*, *NEU*, and *VE*.

Obs.—*AUT* *diversa sibi sensu et contraria jungit*;

VEL *dicta emendat, vel dictis addere gaudet*,

SIVE et *SEU* *quosvis gaudent supponere casus*;

NEVE et *NEU* *prohibent: AUT* *vertitur in Vx Poetis.*

Omnia quæ lyrico demonstrat carmine Flaccus:—

*Quem Virum AUT Heroa lyrâ, VEL acri
Tibiî sumes celebrare, Clio ?*

*AUT in umbrosis Heliconis oris,
AUT super Pindo, gelidove in Hæmo. —*

*Ille, seu Parthos Latio imminentes
Egerit justo domitos triumpho,
SIVE subjectos Orientis oris*

Seras et Indos —

*NEVE te nostris vitiis iniquum
Ocyor aura*

Tollat —

*NEU sinas Medos equitare inultos
Te duce, Casar.*

Aut prodesse volunt aut delectare Poetæ.

Aut famam sequere, aut sibi convenientia finge.

O Laertiade, quicquid dicam, aut erit aut non. — Hor.

Vel duo vel nemo. Vel clam vel cum scrobe. — Pers.

§ 87.

AFFIRMATIVE — **SURELY, VERILY**, *ne (val)* generally before Pronouns; *profecto* (pro-facto); *scilicet* (scire-licet), often ironical; *nimirum* (no mirum sit); *nempe* (nam-pe); *quip-pe* (quid-pe), generally introducing a reason.

CONCESSIVE — **ALTHOUGH**, *etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, licet, quamquam, quamvis, ut*; **HOWEVER MUCH YOU LIKE**, *quantumvis*.

OPPOSING — **YET**, *at, atqui, attâmen, verum, enimvêro, sed, tamen, verumtâmen*.

CONDITIONAL — **IF**, *si, si forte*; **IF ONLY**, *si modo*; **IF HOWEVER**, *si tâmen, sin, sin autem, sin vero, sin minus*; **EXCEPT**, *nisi, ni, nisi forte*; **PROVIDED**, *dummôdo*.

CAUSAL — **FOR**, *etenim, enim, nam, namque*; **SINCE**, *cum, quando, quia, quod, quoniam, quandoquidem, siquidem, utpote, quippe*.

CONCLUSIVE — **THEREFORE**, *ergo, igitur, idcirco, ideo, itaque, quocirca*.

FINAL — **IN ORDER THAT**, *ut, quo*; **LEST**, *ne, ut ne, neve, neu, quin, quominus*.

TEMPORAL — **BEFORE THAT**, *antequam, priusquam*; **AFTER THAT**, *postquam*; **UNTIL**, *donec, quoad, dum*; **WHILST**, *donec, quamdiu, dum, quoad*; **SO SOON AS**, *simul ac*; **SO OFTEN AS**, *quoties*.

Obs. *Tamen, itaque, igitur*, can stand either as first or second words of a sentence. *Ve, que, nē* (interrogative) are enclitics, and commonly follow other words. *Enim, quoque, autem, quidem*, cannot begin a sentence.

§ 88. — OF PREPOSITIONS.

A PREPOSITION is a part of speech most commonly set before (*præposita*) a Noun: as, *ad dextram* on the right hand; or else is joined in composition with it: as, *in-doctus* unlearned, *per-jucundus* very pleasant, *præ-dives* very rich, *sub-obscurus* rather obscure.

§ 89. — The Prepositions following have an ABLATIVE Case after them:

A, ab, abs from or by.

Absque without.

Clam without the knowledge of.

Coram before or in presence of.

Cum with.

De of or from.

E, ex of, from, or out of.

Præ, before or in comparison of.

Pro for.

Sine without.

Tenus up to or as far as.

Prepositions governing an ABLATIVE CASE:

Ablativum volunt hæ:

A, ab, absque, abs, et de,

Coram, clam, cum, ex, et e,

Sine, tenus, pro, et præ.

§ 90. — The remaining Prepositions have an ACCUSATIVE Case after them, and are

Ad to or at.

Adversum, adversus against.

Ante before.

Apud at or near.

Circa, circum, circiter about.

Cis, citra on this side.

Contra against.

Erga toward.

Extra without.

Infra beneath.

Inter between or among.

Intra within.

Juxta beside or nigh to.

Ob for or because of.

Penes in the power of.

Per by or through.

Pone behind.

Post after or since.

Præter beside or except

Prope nigh or near to.

<i>Propter, propter</i> near, for, or be- cause of.	<i>Trans</i> beyond.
<i>Secundum</i> according to, along, or	<i>Ultra</i> beyond.
<i>Supra</i> above. [next.	<i>Usque</i> until.
	<i>Versus</i> towards.

Prepositions governing an ACCUSATIVE Case :

Exigunt accusativum,
Ante, apud, ad, adversum,
Circum, circa, citra, cis,
Erga, contra, inter, extra,
Infra, intra ; Adde his
Juxta, ob, et penes, pōnē,
Post, et præter, prope, propter,
Per, secundum, supra, versus ;
Ultra, trans his junxeris.

§ 91. — *Obs. 1. Ante* is often omitted in the reckoning of days: as *ix Kalendas Octobres*, i. e. *ix ante Kalend. Oct.*

Obs. 2. Versus is set after its case: as, *Londinium versus* towards London.

Likewise *pōnēs* may be so placed.

Obs. 3. A stands before all consonants but *b*.

Obs. 4. Ab stands before all vowels, and before all consonants but *m* and *v*.

Obs. 5. Abs stands before *q*, *r*, and *t*.

Obs. 6. Cum is set after some Pronouns: as, *mecum, tecum, quicum*; and *tenu* is set after its case: as *portā tenu* as far as the gate; and in the Plural Number the Noun is commonly put in the Genitive Case: as, *aurium tenu* up to the ears.

§ 92. — The Prepositions following serve to *both* the ACCUSATIVE and ABLATIVE Cases.

In, for *into*, signifying motion to, or against, has an Accusative Case: as *eo in urbem* I go into the city; *oratio in Catilinam* a speech against Catiline.

In, for *in* only, without motion, serves to the Ablative Case: as, *in eo spes est* my hope is in him.

Sub: as, *sub noctem* a little before night; *sub oculos venit* it comes in sight; *sub iudice* *Ha est* the matter is before the judge: *sub dio* in the open air; *sub nocte* at night-time.

Subter : as, *subter terram* under the earth; *subter aquâ* under the water.

Super (motion to, Accus.): as, *super lapidem* upon a stone; (position, Abl.): as, *fronde super viridi* upon a green bough.



§ 93.—ON PECULIAR MEANINGS OF CERTAIN PREPOSITIONS.

1. Governing ACCUSATIVE.

Ad summum at most.

Ad unum omnes to a man.

Ad mille homines as many as a thousand men.

Ad tempus from time to time.

Ad breve tempus for a short time.

Ad manum at hand.

Ad verbum literally.

Ad fistulam saltare to dance to the flute.

Ad quartum a Roma lapidem four miles from Rome.

Apud me at my house.

Apud Homerum, Virgilium, Horatium, &c. in Homer, Virgil, Horace, &c.

Apud judices before the judges.

Cis paucos dies within a few days.

Circiter meridiem about midday.

Extra culpam innocent.

Extra periculum safe.

Extra jocum seriously.

Inter cœnandum while at supper. — So, *inter legendum, equitandum, studendum, &c.*

Juxta patrem te amo I love you next after my father.

Ob oculos before the eyes

Per me licet you may, as far as I am concerned.

Per tres annos during three years.

Per te Deos oro I pray you by the Gods.

Per quietem in sleep.

Per vim violently.

Per jocum in sport.

Post homines natos since the beginning of the world.

Præter castra currit he runs past the camp.

Præter consuetudinem contrary to habit.

Præter modum immoderately.

Præter opinionem unexpectedly.

Secundum aurem vulnus accepit he received a wound in his ear.

Secundum flumen with the stream.

Secundum quietem in sleep.

Secundum te next to you.

§ 94.—2. Governing ABLATIVE.

A fronte in front.

A puero from childhood.

A tergo behind.

Statim a prælio directly after the battle.

Tibi a bibliotheca your librarian.

Tibi ab epistolis your secretary.

Tibi a potione your cupbearer.

A rationibus an accountant.

Ab Africo tegitur it is shaded towards the South.

Ab his stare to be on their side.

Ab oculis doleo my eyes ache.

Non abs re foret it would not be foreign to the purpose.

Clam patre without the father's knowledge.

Cum imperio in command.

Cum telo armed.

Nobiscum facit it is on our side.

De cælo servare to observe the heavens (as an augur).

De cælo tactus struck by lightning.

De die from daytime.

De Gallis triumphat he triumphs over the Gauls.

De industria on purpose.

De integro afresh.

De republicâ bene meruit he deserved well of the state.

De scripto dicere to speak from paper.

E regione opposite.

E republica for the good of the state.

Statim e somno lavatur he bathes directly after sleeping

Ex animo heartily.

Hares ex asse sole heir.

Ex composito by consent.

Ex decreto according to decree.

Ex voto according to vow.

Ex testamento according to will.

Ex improviso unexpectedly.

Ex remige factus orator become an orator from (being) a rower : so,

Ex nitido fit rusticus. — *Ex humili potens.* — *Hor.*

Ex vestigio forthwith.

Præ gaudio lacrymor I weep for joy.

Præ nobis magnus great when compared with us.

Pro concione speaking in the public assembly.

Pro rostris speaking in the public assembly.

Pro foribus before the door.

Faciam pro virili parte I will do as well as I can.

Prope abest a Sicilia it is near Sicily.

§ 95. — Governing both ACCUSATIVE and ABLATIVE Cases.

Mutatur in horas he changes from hour to hour.

In lucem to daybreak.

In os laudare to praise to his face.

Mirum in modum strangely.

In universum universally.

In ære alieno in debt.

In hoste Priamo in the case of Priam an enemy.

In loco at the proper occasion.

Sub galli cantum at cock-crow.

Sub idem tempus about the same time.

§ 96. — OF INTERJECTIONS.

AN INTERJECTION is a part of speech which is thrown between (*interjecta*), and betokeneth a sudden emotion of the mind, — be it grief: as, *heu* alas! *proh*, *væ*, *hei mihi*! — surprise: as, *vah*! *papæ*! — pleasure, admiration: as, *ejă*, *macte esto*! — or other passion.

Sometimes Nouns and Verbs are used as Interjections: as, *nefas*! *malum*! *miserabile*! *quæso*, *amabo*, *age*, *sodes* (*si audes*), *sis* (*si vis*), *agësis*, *agëdum*.

§ 97.—ETYMOLOGY.

TREATS of the forming of Words.

Obs. 1. In Etymology, it is above all things necessary to note what letters are uttered by what Organs of the Voice.

Obs. 2. Letters uttered by the *same* organs are frequently interchanged with each other in the forming of words.

Obs. 3. The LABIALS, or Letters pronounced by the Lips, are *b, f, m, p, v*.
The GUTTURALS, or Letters pronounced by the Throat, *c, g, h, k, q, x*.
The LINGUALS, or Letters pronounced by the Tongue, *d, l, n, r, s, t*.

Or thus—LIPS, *b, f, m*, and *p* and *v*.

THROAT, *g, h, k, q, x*, and *c*.

TONGUE, *d, l, n, r, s*, and *t*.

Cp. Gr. Gr. § 3. — Labials, *π, β, φ*.

Gutturals, *κ, γ, χ*.

Linguals, *τ, δ, θ*.

§ 98.—INTERCHANGE OF VOWELS.

A is changed into *æ, arma, inermis; halo, anhelus.*
i, manus, cominus, eminus.
u, salsus, insulsus; lābor, lubricus.

E is changed into *i, tenax, pertinax.*
o, terra, extorris.
u, tego, tūgūrium

I is changed into *u, similis, simulo.*

O is changed into *æ, ὀπὸς, serum.*
ὄροφος, ervum.
γόνυ, genu.
i, locus, illico.
u, hoc, adhuc.

U is changed into *i, famulus, familia.*

Æ is changed into *ui, quæro, exquiro.*

AU is changed into *æ, audio, obēdio.*
o, fauces, suffoco; plaulo, explōdo.
u, causa, accūso, excuso.

Œ is changed into *u, pœna, pūnio; Pœnus, Pūnicus.*

Obs. *u* after *v* was, in the Augustan age, generally written *o*: as *Divom, ævom*, for *Divum, ævum*.

§ 99. — GREEK — U into γ, ὕλη, *sylva*.

ΑΙ into α, Αἰνείας, *Æneās*; Αἰγαῖον, *Ægeum* (not *Ægeum*).

ΑΙ, Αἴας, *Ajax*.

ΕΙ into ε, Μουσείον, *musæum* (not *musæum*).

Ι, Ἰφιγένεια, *Iphigenia*.

ΟΙ into ο, πόλη, *pōla*.

ΟΙ, Τροία, *Troja*.

ΟΥ into υ, Μούσα, *mūsa*. — (Cp. Gr. Gr. § 2.)



§ 100. — INTERCHANGE OF CONSONANTS.

LABIALS — (b, f, m, and p and v):

Νυβο, *nypsi*, *nympha*; νέφος, *nimbus*; *populus*, *publicus*; βρέμω, *fremito*.

φέρω, *fero* (bear); *fortis*, *porto*; φήρ, *dēh*, *fera*.

Βροτὸς, *μορτὸς*, *mortalis*.

Μέρος, *pars*; μύρμηξ, *formica*.

Πῦρ, *ferveo*, *febris* (fire); Πᾶν, *Faunus*; πῶλος, *pullus*, *jūal*, *fowl*.

Βούλομαι, *volo*; βέω, *teo*; βᾶω, *vado*; βασκαίνω, *fuscino*; βόσκω, *pasco*, *vescor*; οἶς, *upilio*.

GUTTURALS — (g, h, k, q, x, and c):

Χάω, *hio hisco* (chasm); χάμαι, *hanti*; χθέρ, *hēti*; χελιδών, *hirundo*.

Κέω, *κειμαι*, *quies*; κόσος, *quotus*.

Κυβερνῶ, *gubernō* (govern); δείκνυμι, *digitus*.

Τραῖο, *traxi*, *tractus*, *tragula*.

Πέρτιο, *pertica*.

Σεκουο, *sequundus*, *secundus*.

Ινκολο, *inquinus*.

LINGUALS — (d, l, n, r, s, and t):

Quatuor (τέσσαρες, τέτορες), *quadra*:

Δεινός, *dirus*; μόνη, *mora*; πλήρης, *plenus*; δῶρον, *donum*.

Παῖς, *puer*; *haurio*, *hausi*; *gero*, *gessi*.

Ὀδυσσεύς, *Odyssēa*; μελετᾶω, *meditor*; ὀσδω, *odor*, *oleo*.

Θεός, *Deus*; θύρα, *fores* (door).

Μέσος, *medius*; *medius fidius* (*filius*).

Obs. 1. π is frequently changed into the Latin *c* and *qu*; as, ἵππος, *equus*; ἑπομαι, *sequor, secundus, socius*; πόσος, κόσος, *quotus*; πέπω, *coquo*; πέπων, *cicur*; τέτορες, τίσυρες, *quatuor*; λείπω, *linquo*.

Obs. 2. Many Latin forms are derived from Greek, through the Æolic dialect (*see above*, § 4 and *below* § 102 and § 120), by the change of certain letters: as,

1. σ and ρ: παῖς, ποῖρ, *puer*; ἔσομαι, *ero*.
2. β and γ: as, βάλανος, γάλανος, *glans*; γαληνός, *blandus*.
3. π and τ: as, στάδιον, σπάδιον, *spatium*; σπονδή, *studium*.

§ 101.—ASSIMILATION.

Assimilation is when a consonant changes itself to one which follows it, or to one like it: as, *submitto, summissus*.

B, in *ob* and *sub*, assimilates itself to the Labials and Gutturals: as *oppignero, suppono, offendo, occido, succurro, suggero*.

D, in *ad*, assimilates itself to all Linguals and Gutturals: as, *attraho, annuo, arrideo, accedo, acquirō, afficio, appono, assequor*.

M, in *com* (*cum*), assimilates itself to *l* and *r*, as *colliigo, corruo*, and changes itself in *am* (*ambi, ἀμφι*), *com, circum*, and other words: as *quorum, circum, tantum*;—to *n*, especially before Labials and Gutturals: as, *anceps, anquiro, condo, congero, quoniam* (*quom jam*), *quondam* (*quom dam*), *eundem, septendecim*.

N, in *in*, assimilates itself to *l* and *r*: as, *illustris, irrideo*; and changes itself to *m* before Labials: as, *immunis, imberbis, impono*.

R, in *inter* and *per*, assimilates itself to *l*: as, *intelligo, pellucidus*.

§ 102.—INSERTION OF LETTERS.

V, the Æolic DIGAMMA, or sixth letter of the old Greek Alphabet (*Gr. Gr.* § 1, *Obs. 2*), is inserted before and after vowels.

Thus *pluvia* from *pluo*, *exuvia* from *exuo*; thus, *audio* makes *audivi*; *bos, bovis*; *idus, vidua, divido*.

So also *Divus* from *δῖος*; *clavis* from *κλεῖς*; *ovum* from *ὠν*; *avum* from *αἰὼν*; *viscus* from *ἰξδς*; *ver* from *ἦρ*; *vesper* from *ἕσπερος*; *venter* from *ἐντερος*; *vinum* from *οἶνος*; *vicus* from *οἶκος*; *viginti* from *εἴκατι*; *video* from *εἰδέω*; *vulpes* from *ἀλώπηξ*; *vox* from *ῥψ*; *novem* from *ἐννέα*; *novus* from *νέος*.

This letter often appears as *F*, and takes the place of *H*; as, *Formiæ*, for *Hormiæ* (*ὀρμῆς, ὀρμίαι*); *frigus* from *βῆγος*; *frangō* from *βήγω*.

Sometimes as *B*: as *bustum* for *ustum*.

Sometimes as *U*: as, *duellum* for *bellum*, *ninguo* for *ningo*.

C is inserted after *si*, *ne*, and *ali* : as *sicubi*, *necubi*, *alicubi*.

D is inserted after *re*, *pro*, *se* : as *redigo*, *prodigus*, *prodest*, *seditione*.

D, in the older Latin writings, stands at the end of Ablatives and Adverbs : as, *Gnaivod* for *Cnaeo*, *extrad* for *extra*.

R is inserted in declension : as, *vis*, *vires* ; *musa*, *musarum*.

S is inserted in place of the Greek breathing, especially the aspirate : as, *sub* from ὑπὸ ; *super* from ὑπὲρ ; *sum* from εἰμι ; *sisto* from ἵστημι ; *somnus* from ὕπνος ; *salio* from ἅλλομαι ; *sylva* from ὕλη ; *sedeo* from ἕδω.

S is also inserted before consonants : as, γράφω, *scribo* ; κάραβος, *scarabæus*.



§ 103.—OMISSION OF LETTERS.

C, G, are omitted before another consonant : as,

Percunctor, *percontor* ;

Spargo, *spargsi*, *sparsi* ;

Exigo, *exugmen*, *exūmen*, *exūmino*,

M, omitted : as, *quamsi*, *quasi* ;

elided at end of words before vowels and *h* ; as,

Monstr', *horrend'*, *informe*, *ingens*.

D, N, T, omitted before *s* : as,

Rado, *radsi*, *rasi* ; *amants*, *amans* ;

Adspiro, *aspiro* ; *monstrum*, *mostellum*,

Obtundo, *obtunsus*, *obtusus*.

ST, omitted : as, *postmeridianus*, *pomeridianus*.

R, omitted : as *prorsa*, *prosa*.

S, elided at end of words : as,

Tum laterali' dolor certissimu' nuntiu' mortis. — Luer.



§ 104.—FORMING OF WORDS.

OF NOUNS: SUBSTANTIVES—

1. Patronymics, 2. Gentiles or National Substantives,
3. Diminutives, 4. Appellatives, 5. Abstract Words.

§ 105.—I. PATRONYMICS (Gr. Gr. § 100) indicate the name of the father (πατρὸς ὄνομα), or ancestor from whom a person is descended. (Gr. Gr. § 101.)

Obs. Patronymics are generally formed from the Genitive Case, and in such a manner as to be admissible into an HEXAMETER Verse. They end in

1. *ādēs, iādēs* ; as,

Ænēās, Ænēādēs.

Hippōtēs, Hippotādēs.

Anchīsēs, Anchisiādēs.

Thestius, Thestiādēs.

Scipio, Scipiādēs.

Amphitryō, Amphitryoniādēs.

2. *idēs* ; as *Priāmūs, Priāmīdēs* ;

Cecrops, Cecropīdēs ;

Agēnor, Agenorīdēs.

3. *ides* : as, *Atrēus, Atrīdes.*

FEMININE PATRONYMICS end in

1. *ās iās* : as, *Thestius, Thestiās* ;

Telamon, Telamonias ;

Laertes, Laertius.

2. *is* : as, *Tantūlus, Tantūlis* ;

Briseus, Briseīs ;

Acrisius, Acrisioneīs ;

Athamas, Athamantis ;

Minos, Minōis.

3. *inē, iōne* : as, *Neptunus, Neptuninē* ;

Acrisius, Acrisiōnē.

§ 106.—II. GENTILE NOUNS indicate the Country to which a Person belongs.—(Gr. Gr. § 107.)

Gentile Nouns end in

1. *us*, from countries in *us* and *os* : as, *Ægyptius, Cyprius, Rhodius.*

Obs. Virgil always uses *Troius*, never *Troicus* ; Horace always uses *Troicus*, never *Troius*.

2. *inus*, from countries in *ē, um, ium*, and *ia* : as, *Prænestinus, Tarentinus, Latinus, Venusinus.*

3. *ānus, ensis*, from countries of the First and Third Declensions : as, *Albanus, Carthaginiensis.*

Obs. *Hispanus* is a Spaniard, but *Exercitus Hispaniensis* is an army raised in Spain.

4. as, Gen. *ātis*, from Italian places in *um*, and *a* : as, *Arpinas, Capēnas.*

5. *ides*, poetical : as, *Mæonia, Mæonides* ; *Mænalus, Mænalides.*

The *feminines* in *is* and *iās* : as, *Tanarus, Tanarīs* ; *Ilium, Iliās* ; *Castalia, Castālīs* ; *Helicon, Heliconiās.*

Add to these other Gentile words:

Masculines: as, *Car*, *Mucedo*, *Arabs*.

Common: as, *Arcās*, Gen. -*ādis*; *Ligūr*, Gen. -*ūris*.

And purely Latin forms, *Samn-is*, Gen. -*itis*; *Allo-brox*, Gen. -*brōgis*; *A-fer*, Gen. -*fri*; *Veiens*, *Laurens*, *Camers*, *Tiburs*.

Also the Gentile Adjectives: as, *Sardōus* (from *Σαρδὴν* *Sardinia*), *Juddicus*, *Corinthiacus*.

§ 107.—III. DIMINUTIVES indicate a smaller size of the Primitives from which they come.—(Gr. Gr. § 101.)

Obs. 1. Diminutives usually take the Gender, and often the Termination, of their Primitives. Hence they serve as useful aids for remembering the *Genders* of their Primitives. Thus, by means of *corculum* it may readily be remembered that *cor* is neuter; by *flosculus*, *libellus*, *monticulus*, that *flos*, *liber*, *mons* are masculine.

Obs. 2. The Masculines end in *ellus*, *illus*, *ōlus*, *ūlus*, *ullus*, *culus*, *unculus*. The Feminines and Neuters in the corresponding forms in *a* and *um*: as,

Asinus, *asellus*.

Caput, *capitulum*.

Carbo, *carbunculus*.

Cōdex, *codicillus*.

Cor, *corculum*.

Corpus, *corpusculum*.

Dies, *diēcula*.

Filius, *filiōlus*.

Flos, *flosculus*.

Frater, *fraterculus*.

Homo, *homuncio*, *homunculus*,
homullus.

Hortus, *hortulus*.

Ignis, *igniculus*.

Lapis, *lapillus*.

Lectus, *lectulus*.

Liber, *libellus*.

Mons, *monticulus*.

Mulier, *muliercula*.

Munus, *munusculum*.

Negotium, *negotiōlum*.

Oratio, *oratiuncula*.

Pars, *particula*.

Plaustrum, *plostellum*.

Res, *rēcula*.

Rivus, *rivulus*.

Rumor, *rumusculus*.

Signum, *sigillum*.

Uncia, *unciōla*.

Vox, *vocula*.

So, also, in Proper Names: as, *Tullia*, *Tulliōla* — Cic.: many of these are terms of endearment

Some end in *io*, *aster*, and *iscus*: as, *homo*, *homuncio*; *senex*, *senēcio*; *olea*, *oleaster*; *Pan*, *Paniscus*.

Some have two forms: as, *avis*, *avicula*, *avicella* (Ital. *uccello*); *porcus*, *porculus*, *porcellus*; *os*, *osculum*, *oscillum*; *cista*, *cistula*, *cistella*.

Obs. 3. Some are from Greek Primitives: as *κόραξ*, *graculus*; *κορη* *corinna*, *corilla* (girl).

Obs. 4. To these may be added the Diminutive Adjectives: *pulcher, pulchellus; parvus, parvulus, paulus; frigidus, frigidusculus; durior, duriusculus; major, majusculus; aureus, aureolus; miser, misellus; vetus, vetulus; minor, minusculus.*

§ 108.—IV. APPELLATIVES are (1) Personal, *i.e.* Names of Persons; (2) Local, of Places; (3) Real, of Things.

1. PERSONAL (Gr. Gr. § 104) ending —

In *ā*: as, *poeta, advēna, scriba, incōla.*

In *ānus*: as *veteranus.*

In *ārius*, trades: as *aviarius, carbonarius, statuarius*

In *inus*: as *concupinus.*

In *o*, Gen. *-ōnis*, generally in a bad sense: as, *ludio, morio, aleo, comēdo, bibo, prædo, lutro, restio, cachinno.*

In *or*, Gen. *-ōris*: as, *cursor, lector, viātor, janitor.*

2. LOCAL (Gr. Gr. § 103) ending —

In *ārium*: as, *granarium, ærarium, tabularium, aviarium.*

In *ōrium*: as, *diversorium, tentorium.*

In *ētum* (Greek *-ών*, Gen. *-ōvos*), *-ictum, -ultum, -ustum*: as *myrtetum, rubetum, rosetum, lauretum, esculētum, arboretum, vinetum, saxetum, salictum, virgultum, arbustum.*

In *ile*, place of animals: as, *equile, bovine, caprile, hædile, suile.*

In *illum*: as, *cubiculum.*

In *crum*: as, *lavacrum, sepulcrum.*

In *trina, trīnum*: as, *tonstrina, pistrinum.*

In *trum*: as, *claustrum, rastrum.*

3. REAL (Gr. Gr. § 102) ending —

In *illum*, instrument: as, *venabulum, operculum, ferculum.*

In *crum, trum*, instrument: as, *fulcrum, aratrum.*

In *men*: as, *flūmen* (*fluīmen*), *agmen* (*agīmen*), *lumen, regimen, specimen.*

In *mentum*, means: as, *alīmentum, docūmentum, monūmentum, argūmentum, instrūmentum.* — (Gr. Gr. § 104, 106.)

§ 109.—V. ABSTRACTIONS and PROPERTIES end

In *ia, itia, ēdo, ido, itudo, tās, itas, iētas, tūs*: as, *audacia, clementia, avaritia, albedo, dulcedo, pinguedo, libido, cupido, altitudo, venustas, honestas, ædilitas, crudelitas, cupiditas, varietas, pietas, juventus, servitus* (*-ūtis*).

In *sum*, state or relation : as, *exilium*, *gaudium*, *conjugium*, *hospitium*.

In *io*, action : as, *lectio*, *reprehensio*, *optio*.

In *or*, bodily or mental state : as, *algor*, *pallor*, *timor*, *furor*.

In *atus* : as, *equitatus*, *consulatus*, *auguratus*, *tribunatus*.

In *ela* : as, *tutela*, *corruptela*.

In *ura*, mode, office : as, *junctura*, *usura*, *Censura*, *Prætura*, *Dictatura*, *Quæstura*.

§ 110. — Change of APPELLATIVE from MALE to FEMALE.

Us is changed to *a* : as, *cervus*, *cerva* ; *socius*, *socia*.

Er into *ra* : as, *caper*, *capra* ; *magister*, *magistra*.

Tor into *trix* : as, *victor*, *victrix* ; *janitor*, *janitrix*.

O into *a* : as, *caupo*, *cōpa* ; *leo*, *lea*.

En into *ina* : as, *fidicen*, *fidicina* ; *tibicen*, *tibicina*.

Some are irregular :

Avus becomes, in the Feminine, *avia* ; *gallus*, *gallina* ; *hospēs*, *hospita* ; *nepos*, *neptis* ; *rex*, *rēgina* ; *socer*, *socrus*.

Some are altogether unlike :

Aries, in Feminine, becomes *ovis* ; *taurus*, *vacca* ; *verres*, *scrōfa*.

Some are Greek, and follow Greek rules. — (Gr. Gr. § 107.)

Thus, *Poëta* becomes, in the Feminine, *Poëtriā* ; *Psalter*, *Psalteria* ; *Spartiātā*, *Spartiātis* ; *Sarmāta*, *Sarmātis* ; *Æthiops*, *Æthiopissa* ; *Phœnix*, *Phænissa* ; *Threx*, *Thressa* ; *Cres*, *Cressa* ; *Laco*, *Lacena* ; *Tros*, *Trōās* ; *Scytha*, *Scythis*. See above § 106.



§ 111. — FORMING OF ADJECTIVES. — (Gr. Gr. § 106.)

ADJECTIVES of the FIRST and SECOND DECLENSIONS end

In *icius* (from Nouns in *is*, with *i* short) : as, *gentilicius*.

or *itius* (from Verbs and Nouns in *us*, with *i* long) : as, *conducticius*, *novitiis*, *multitiis*.

In *icus* (from Nouns) : as, *aulicus*, *bellicus*, *civicus*.

In *icus* (from Verbs and Adverbs) : as, *amicus*, *apricus* (*aperio*), *antiquus*, *anticus* (*ante*).

In *aticus* : as, *aquaticus*, *erraticus*.

In *ucus* : as, *caducus*.

In *idus* (from Verbs), denoting bodily state, or quality : as, *frigidus*, *algidus*, *tepidus*, *humidus*, *candidus*, *rapidus*, *cupidus*.

In *undus*, denoting bodily or mental feeling or faculty (from Verbs):
as, *irācundus*, *fācundus* (from *for*, *fāri*), *furibundus*, *jūcundus*.

In *eus* and *āceus*, denoting a material: as, *lanceus*, *areus*, *roseus*, *saxeus*,
aureus, *marmoreus*, *testaceus*.

In *ius*, belonging to: as, *regius*, *patrius*.

In *ārius*: as, *contrarius*, *agrarius*.

In *arius*, holding so much: as, *sextarius* holding $\frac{1}{16}$ th; *vicesimarius*
holding $\frac{1}{20}$ th.

In *ōrius*: as, *oratōrius*, *motōrius*, *adulatorius*.

In *lus*, diminutives. See above, § 107, Obs. 4.

In *ulus*, verbals: as, *bibulus*, *credulus*, *garrulus*.

In *imus*: as, *maritimus*, *finitimus*.

In *ānus*: as, *humanus*, *montanus*, *Cæsaritanus*.

In *ānus*, denoting the legion: as, *primanus* of the first legion.

In *ēnus*: as, *plenus*, *terrenus*.

In *inus*, denoting material: as, *faginus*, *crystallinus*.

In *inus*, denoting time: as, *crastinus*, *diutinus*, *nundinæ*, *hornotinus*,
perendinus, *pristinus*, *serotinus*; all with *penultima* short, except
matutinus and *vespertinus*.

In *inus*, denoting quality: as, *agninus*, *caninus*.

In *ōnus*: as, *patronus*.

In *ernus*: as, *hibernus*, *æternus*, *hodiernus*, *hesternus*.

In *urnus*: as, *diurnus*, *nocturnus*.

In *ūnus*: as, *opportunist*, *jejunus*.

In *ōnus*: as, *animosus*, *belluosus*, *ventosus*, *saxosus*, *morosus*, *officiosus*.

In *ātus*, *ītus*, *ūtus*: as, *aldtus*, *oculdtus*, *auritus*, *crinitus*, *cornūtus*,
acūtus.

In *entus*: as, *violentus*, *gracilentus*, *luculentus*.

In *stus*: as, *nefastus*, *funestus*, *onustus*.

In *ivus*: as, *æstivus*, *stativus*, *furtivus*, *nocivus*.

ADJECTIVES of the THIRD DECLENSION end

In *ālis*: as, *regalis*, *hospitalis*, *glacialis*.

In *ēlis*: as, *crudelis*, *fidelis*.

In *ilis* (from Nouns): as, *juvenilis*, *herilis*, *senilis*, *virilis*, *puerilis*.

In *ilis* (from Verbs): as, *flexilis*, *pensilis*, *habilis*, *utilis*, *fissilis*, *rasilis*,
tonsilis, *fragilis*, *coctilis*, *sculptilis*, *sectilis*, *facilis*.

In *bilis* (from Verbs): as, *penetrabilis*, *delebilis*, *nōbilis*, *volūbilis*.

In *ūlis*: as, *edulis*.

In *ātilis*: as, *aquātilis*.

In *āris* : as, *popularis, vulgaris, salutaris*.

In *ensis* : as, *pratensis, forensis*.

In *stris* : as, *palustris, sublustris*.

In *ens* : as, *violens*.

In *es* : as, *locuples, -ētis*.

In *ber, bris, cer, cris* : as, *salūber, salubris, ācer, acris*.

In *ax* : as, *ferax, edax, -ācis*.

In *ex* : as, *seminex, -ēcis*.

In *ox* : as, *atrox, velox, -ōcis*.

Obs. In *mnus, mna, mnum*, derived from the Greek Participles Passive Present and Perfect: as, *stamnus* from *ιστάμενος*, *columna* from *κεκολουμένη*, *lamna* from *ἐληλαμένη*, *ærumna* from *αἰρομένη*.



§ 112. — FORMING OF VERBS. — (Gr. Gr. § 110.)

1. Inceptives : 2. Desideratives : 3. Frequentatives : 4. Diminutives.

Verbs derived from Nouns, if Transitive, have usually the termination of the First Conjugation ; if Intransitive, of the Second : as, *albus, albare* to make white, *albēre* to be white.

Obs. But *nigrare* is neuter.

§ 113.—I. INCEPTIVES indicate the beginning of an action expressed in their Primitives. Inceptives are derived from the Second Person Singular Present Indicative Active of their Primitives by adding *co* or *cor*.

In *asco* : as, *collabasco, congelasco, inveterasco*.

In *esco* : as, *acesco, conticesco, marcesco, excandesco, frondesco, exardesco, frigesco, calesco, coalesco, convalesco, occallesco, pallesco, adolesco, inolesco, obsolesco, exolesco, aresco, horresco, duresco, delitesco, languesco, liquesco, effervesco*.

In *isco* : as, *scisco, glisco, ingemisco, tremisco, resipisco, fatisco*.

Nominal Inceptives are as follow : — *Advesperasco, repuerasco, increbresco, dulcesco, obsurdesco, recrudesco, vilesco, canesco, mitesco, innotesco, obmutesco, obbrutesco, ingravesco*.

Obs. Inceptives are *Neuter*, and of the Third Conjugation, and take (if any) the Perfects and Subjunctives of their Primitives.

§ 114.—II. DESIDERATIVES indicate a desire to do something expressed in their Primitives. Desideratives end

In *ūrio*; and are formed by changing the last syllable of the Supine in *um* into *ūrio*: as, *ēdo*, *ēsum*, *ēsūrio*; *pārio*, *partum*, *partūrio*; so, *emp-tūrio*, *cenatūrio*.

Obs. *Ligūrio*, *scatūrio*, *prūrio*, where the *u* is long, are not Desideratives.

§ 115.—III. FREQUENTATIVES indicate a repetition of the action expressed in their Primitives.—(Gr. Gr. § 111.) Frequentatives end

In *to*, *tor*, *ito*: as, *canto* from *cāno*, *canīto*: *volūto* from *volvo*, *volu-tum*: *minītor* (from *minor*), *sector*, *sciscitor*: *noscito*, *agito*, *rogito*, *clamito*, *sessito*, *factito*, *lectito*, *dictito*, *scriptito*, *fluīto*.

Obs. Frequentatives are of the FIRST CONJUGATION.

§ 116.—IV. DIMINUTIVES end

In *illo*: as, *cantillo* from *canto*, *conscribillo*, *sorbillo*, *focillo*.

REPETITIVE DIMINUTIVES end

In *īlo*: as, *ventilo*.

In *ūlo*, *ūlor*: as, *pullulo*, *gesticulor*.

Add to these

§ 117.—(1). INTENSIVES, which indicate eagerness of action, and end

In *ssō*: as, *laccessō*, *facessō*, *capessō*, *appetissō*.

(2). IMITATIVES, which end

In *zō*: as, *atticizō*, *græcizō*.

In *co* and *cor*: as, *rhetoricō*, *cornicor*.

(3). EFFECTIVES, which indicate the production of what is expressed in their Primitives, and end

In *īgo*: as, *mitīgo*, to make *mitis* (tame); *lēvīgo*, to make *levis* (smooth); (*jure ago*, *jurgo*, *objurgo*); *lite ago*, *litigo*.

OTHER DERIVATIVES end

In *īco*, *īcor*, Active: as, *vellico*, *fodico*, *medicor*.

Neuter: as, *albico*, *nigrico*, *rusticor*.

§ 118. — COMPOUNDED VERBS. — Many Compound Verbs are formed from Simple Verbs, with a Preposition, by changing

A into *e*: as, *arceo*, *coerceo*; *patior*, *perpetior*; *carpo*, *decerpo*; *seando*, *ascendo*; *spargo*, *aspergo*; *fallo*, *refello*.

A into *i*: as, *cādo*, *occīdo*; *salio*, *desilio*; *taceo*, *conticeo*.

A into *u*: as, *calco*, *conculco*; *altus*, *exulto*.

Æ into *i*: as, *lædo*, *illīdo*; *cædo*, *occīdo*.

E into *i*: as, *emo*, *redimo*; *lego*, *colligo*; *rego*, *corrigo*; *teneo*, *abstineo*.

As into *ē*, *o*, and *u*: as, *audio*, *obēdio*; *plaudo*, *explōdo*, *supplōdo*; *claudo*, *inclōdo*.

Obs. See *As* in *Præsentī*, vv. 111—151.

Obs. Simple Verbs, which have a reduplication, lose it in composition: as, *tondeo*, *totondī*; *detondeo*, *detondī*.

Except compounds of *do*, *sto*, *disco*, *posco*: as, *circumdo*, *circumdedī*.

See below, *As* in *Præsentī*, vv. 94—98.

§ 119. — FORMING OF ADVERBS. — (Gr. Gr. § 112.)

Adverbs signifying the *manner* in which any thing is done, end

In *ā*: as, *rectā* (*viā*), *frustrā*.

In *ē*: as, *doctē*, *liberē*, *pulchrē*, *planē*.

In *ō*: as, *liquidō*, *falsō*, *crebrō*.

Obs. 1. These are, properly, Ablative Cases of Adjectives in *us*.

In *ē*: as, *facilē*.

Obs. 2. These are Neuter Accusatives of Adjectives in *is*

In *ariam*: as, *bifariam*, *multifariam*.

In *tēr*: as, *clementer*, *audacter*, *fortiter*.

In *iter*: as, *aliter*.

In *is*: as, *gratis*, *foris*.

In *sim*: as, *sensim*, *divisim*, *cæsim*, *passim* (from *pando*), and

In *tim*: as, *strictim*, *punctim*, *striatim*.

Obs. 3. These two last forms are from Supines of Verbs.

In *tim*: as, *partim*.

Obs. 4. These are Accusative Cases of Substantives.

In *tē*: as, *spontē*.

In *ātim*: as, *gregatim* herd by herd; *estiatim* house by house; *vi-catim* street by street; *catervatim*, *cuneatim*, *minutatim*, *turmatim*.

In *ītim*: as, *virītim* man by man; and

In *ūtim*: as, *tribūtim* tribe by tribe.

Obs. 5. These three last Terminations correspond to the Greek ἡδὲν, and signify the taking of the things, expressed by the Primitive, *one by one*. In *itus* : as, *antiquitus, divinitus, funditus*.

§ 120. — ETYMOLOGY OF PREPOSITIONS

A, ab, abs, absque, ἀπό.

Ad, apud.

Adversum : see *Versus*.

Ante, ἀντί.

Apud, apio (apitum), ἀπὸ, ἀπτό.

Circa, circum, circiter, κίρκος, κίρκον.

Cis, ci-tra (ce, in hic-ce ; trahens).

Clam, celo, κλέπτω, καλύπτω.

Con-tra, cum-tra (traho).

Coram, χώραν.

Cum, ξὺν (κούν).

De, δίδ.

Erga, ἐρέγω.

E, ex, extra, ἐκ, ἐξ.

In, ἐν.

Infra, in-fra (fero).

Intra, in-tra (traho).

Juxta, junxta (jungo).

Ob, ἔπω, or ἔπομαι.

Palam, πέλας.

Penes (connected with pendeo, to hang or depend upon).

Per, περί.

Post, pone, positus, postus (from pono).

Præ, præter,

Pro, prope, propter, } παρὰ, πρὸ.

Secundum, sequor, sequundus.

Sine, ἀνευ.

Sub, subter, ὑπό.

Super, ὑπέρ.

Tēnus, τείνω, tendo.

Trans, trahens.

Versus, versus, verto (είρω, ἐρύω).

Ultra, ille trahens.

Usque, ἕως κε.

Obs. The Æolic dialect rejected the aspirate ; hence it has disappeared from many Latin words (as *coram, ob, usque*) derived from the Greek : and in others it appears as s or v. (See § 100, and § 102 *Obs.* 2).

§ 121.—ETYMOLOGICAL FIGURES.

Prosthesis adds at beginning: as, *stlis* for *lis*. — *Epenthesis* in middle: as, *sies* for *sis*. — *Paragoge* at end: as, *dicier* for *dici*.

Aphaeresis takes away at beginning: as, *nosco* for *gnosco*; *Episcopus*, *Vescovo* (Ital.) *Bishop* (Engl.); *ἀποθήκη*, *apothēca*, *bottega* (Ital.); *boutique* (Fr.), *booth* (Engl.) — *Syncope* in middle: as, *calvus* for *calidus*; *periculum* for *periculum*; *puertia* for *pueritia*; *surpuerat* for *surripuerat*. — *Apocope* at end: as, *inger* for *ingere*; *dic* for *dice*.

Antithesis changes one letter for another: as, *lulus* for *bobus*. — *Metathesis* alters the place of the same: as, *lac* from *γάλα*; *pulmo* from *πλευμών*; *forma* from *μόρφη*; *certum* for *cretum*; *rapax* from *ἄρπαξ*; *nervus* from *νεῦρον*; *tener* from *τέρην*; *pistris* for *pristis*; *cōlumnus* for *corulnus*, for *corūllinus*, from *corūlus*, hazel.

§ 122. — *Obs.* The dependence of PROSODY on ETYMOLOGY will be seen below in Prosodia, § 172, p. 187. Observe here, that the Quantity of Primitives may be easily learnt from the Pronunciation of their Derivatives. Thus, from the Pronunciation of *colligo*, *redāmo*, *dirīgo*, *exīgo*, it may readily be remembered that the first syllable of *lego*, *emo*, *rego*, *ago*, is *short*; and conversely, it may be easily remembered, for example, from the pronunciation of *audio*, that the *ē* in *obedio*, its derivative (see § 118), is *long*.

§ 123.—ORTHOGRAPHY.

Obs. 1. ORTHOGRAPHY depends mainly on ETYMOLOGY. Thus we should write *secundus* not *fæcundus*, *fenus* not *fænus*, *felix* not *fælix*, being derived from *feo*, connected with *φύω* *fuo*; *letum* not *lethum*, from *leo*, (*lino*). Hence also *femina* is more correct than *fæmina*. So also write *prelum* not *prælum*, from *premo*: *ancora* not *anchora*, from *ἄγκυρα*: *Halcyon* not *Alcyon*, from *ἁλκίων*: *Bosporus* not *Bosphorus*, from *Βόσπορος*: *postumus* not *posthumus*, from *post*: *Siren* not *Syren*, from *Σειρήν*: *Sphinx* not *Sphynx*, from *Σφίγξ*: *trophæum* not *trophæum*, from *τροφαῖον*; *Museum* not *Musæum*, from *μουσεῖον*.

Obs. 2. Orthography is also governed by authority, i. e. by practice, as seen in ancient Inscriptions, Coins, and Manuscripts.

§ 124.—THE THREE CONCORDS EXPLAINED.

THERE are three ConCORDS or AGREEMENTS in Latin.

1. Between the Nominative Case and the Verb.
2. Between the Substantive and the Adjective.
3. Between the Antecedent and the Relative.

§ 125.—THE FIRST CONCORD.

A VERB agrees with its Nominative Case, in Number and Person.

In order to find out the Nominative Case, ask the question *who?* or *what?* with the Verb; and the word that answers to the question is the Nominative Case to the Verb: as,

Præceptor legit, vos vero negligitis.

The master reads, but ye regard not.

Who reads? The Master. Who regards not? Ye.—Master and *ye* are the Nominative Case.

Obs. In this sentence *Præceptor* is termed the *Subject*, and *legit* is the Predicate. *Alterum est quod loquimur, alterum de quo loquimur.—Quintil. i. 4.*

Sometimes an Infinitive Mood, or a Sentence, is the Nominative Case to the Verb; and sometimes is the Substantive to an Adjective; and sometimes is the Antecedent to a Relative; and in this case the Adjective and the Relative must be in the Neuter Gender: as,

Diluculo surgere saluberrimum est.

To rise at day-break is very wholesome.

In tempore veni, quod omnium est primum.

I came in season, which is the chief thing of all.

Many Nominative Cases Singular have a Verb Plural, which agrees with the Nominative Case of the most worthy person. In Latin, the First Person is said to be more worthy than the Second, and the Second more worthy than the Third: as

Ego et tu sumus in tuto.

I and thou are in safety.

The Substantive which comes next after the Verb, and answers to the question *whom?* or *what?* made by the Verb, will commonly be in the Accusative Case; except the Verb, by some particular rule, requires another case after it: as,

Si cupis placere magistro, quem amas, utere diligentia.

If you desire to please the master, whom you love, use diligence.

Obs. In this Example, *magistro* is not in the Accusative, but the Dative, and *diligentiâ* is in the Ablative Case, according to a *special* rule.

§ 126.—THE SECOND CONCORD.

WHEN you have an Adjective, ask the question *who?* or *what?* with the Adjective, and the word that answers to the question will be the Substantive to the Adjective.

The Adjective, whether it be a Noun, Pronoun, or Participle, agrees with its Substantive, in Case, Gender, and Number: as,

Amicus certus in re incertâ cernitur.

A certain friend is discerned in an uncertain matter.

Obs. 1. The Masculine Gender is more worthy than the Feminine, and the Feminine more worthy than the Neuter. In things without life, the Neuter Gender is considered as most worthy; and in this case, though the Substantive or Antecedent be of the Masculine or Feminine Gender, and not of the Neuter, yet may the Adjective or Relative be put in the Neuter: as,

Arcus et calami sunt bona.

The bow and arrows are good (Neuter).

Arcus et calami, quæ fregisti.

The bow and arrows, which (Neut.) thou hast broken.

Obs. 2. When several Substantives Singular are joined together, they will have an Adjective Plural, which Adjective

will agree with the Substantive of the most worthy Gender: as,

Rex et regina beati.

The king and the queen are *blessed* (Masc.).

Also, when in English the word *thing* is put with an Adjective, you may in Latin leave out the Substantive and put the Adjective in the Neuter Gender: as,

Multa me impedierunt.

Many (Neut.) *things* have hindered me.

§ 127.—THE THIRD CONCORD.

WHEN you have a Relative, ask this question, *who?* or *what?* with the Verb, and the word that answers to the question is the Antecedent to the Relative.

The Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person: as,

Vir sapit, qui pauca loquitur.

The man is wise, *who* speaketh few words.

Obs. 1. If the Relative refers to two Antecedents, or more, then it will be put in the Plural Number: as,

Tu multum dormis, et sæpe potas; quæ ambo sunt corpori inimica.

Thou sleepest much, and drinkest often; *both which* things are naught for the body.

Obs. 2. When the English word *that* may be turned into *who* or *which*, it is a Relative, otherwise it is a Conjunction, expressed in Latin by *quod* or *ut*; and in making Latin, if the preceding Verb express a *sense* or *feeling*, the Conjunction may be better put away, and the Nominative Case to the Verb turned into the *Accusative*, and the Verb into the *Infinitive* Mood: as,

Gaudeo te bene valere.

I am glad *that* thou art in good health.

OF THE GENDERS OF NOUNS.

§ 128.—I. SUBSTANTIVES.

PROPER NAMES.

1. MASCULINE.

PROPRIA *quæ maribus tribuuntur mascula dicas ;*
Ut sunt DIVORUM ; Mars, Bacchus, Apollo : VIRORUM ;
Ut Cato, Virgilius : FLUVIORUM ; *ut,* Tibris, Orontes :
 MENSIIUM ; *ut,* October : VENTORUM ; *ut,* Libs, Notus, Au-
 ster :
 MONTIUM ; *ut,* Othrys, Eryx—Ætna *excipiatur, et* Cæta, 5
 Cyllène, Rhödöpē, Calpe, *excipiantur et* Alpes,
Fæmineæ quæ sunt ;—neutrum Soracte *notetur.*

2. FEMININE.

Propria Fæmineum referentia nomina sexum,
Fæmineo generi tribuuntur, sive DEARUM
Sint ; ut, Juno, Venus : MULIEBRIA ; *ut,* Anna, Philōtis : 10
 URBIIUM ; *ut,* Elis, Opus : REGIONUM ; *ut,* Græcia, Persis :
 INSULÆ *item nomen ; ceu* Creta, Britannia, Cyprus.
Excipienda tamen quædam sunt Urbium ; ut ista
Mascula ; Sulmo, Agrægas : *quædam neutralia ; ut* Argos,
 Tibur, Præneste : *et genus* Anxur *quod dat utrumque.* 15

NOUNS APPELLATIVE.

1. FEMININE GENDER.

Fæminei generis PLANTÆ, GEMMÆ *que Latine,*
Ut myrtus, sapphirus, *erunt ; et nomina vulgo*
Appellativa ARBORUM *erunt muliebria ; ut,* alnus,
 Cupressus, cedrus. *Mas* spinus, *mas* oleaster,
 Carduus, hellebōrus, calāmus, rubus, asphodēlus-*que* 20
 Asparāgus, narcissus, amārācus, *est et* acanthus
Mas ; sunt neutra siler, suber, thus, robur, acer-*que.*

2. EPICENE GENDER.

*Sunt etiam VOLUCRUM, ceu passer, hirundo : FERARUM,
Ut, tigris, vulpes : et PISCIMUM, ut, ostrea, cetus,
Dicta epicæna ; quibus vox ipsa genus feret aptum.* 25

3. NEUTER GENDER.

*Attamen ex cunctis supra, reliquis-que, notandum,
Omne quod exit in um, seu Græcum sive Latinum,
Esse genus neutrum ; sic invariabile nomen,
Ut cornu atque genu, Tempe, fas, nil, nihil, instar.*

First Special Rule.

NOUNS NOT INCREASING.

FEMININE.

*Nomen non crescens genitivo ; ceu, caro carnis, 30
Capra capræ, nubes, nubis ; genus est muliebre.*

1. NOUNS MASCULINE *excepted*.

*Macula nomina in A dicuntur multa virorum ;
Ut, scriba, asseclâ, scurra, et sic lixa, lanista.
Macula, Græcorum quot declinatio prima
Fundit in AS, et in ES ; et ab illis quot per A fiunt : 35
Ut, satrapas satrapa, athletes athleta. Leguntur
Macula item, verres, natalis, aqualis : ab asse
Nata, ut centussis : conjunge lienis, et orbis,
Callis, caulis, follis, collis, mensis, et ensis,
Fustis, funis, cenchris, panis, crinis, et ignis, 40
Cassis, fascis, torris, sentis, piscis, et unguis,
Et vermis, vectis, postis ; sic axis, et amnis.
Macula in ER ; ceu, venter : in OS, vel US ; ut logos, annus.
Feminei at generis sunt, mater, humus, domus, alvus,
Et colus ; et quartæ pro fructu ficus, acus-que, 45
Porticus, atque tribus, socrus, nurus, et manus, idus ;
Huc anus addenda est, huc mystica vannus Iacchi.*

*His jungas OS in US vertentia Græca, papyrus,
Antidôtus, costus, diametrus, byssus, abyssus,
Diphthongus, synôdus, methôdus, dialectus, et arctus, 50
Cum multis aliis, quæ nunc perscribere longum est.*

2. NOUNS NEUTER *excepted*.

*Neutrum nomen in E est, si gignit IS, ut mare, rete ;
Et quot in ON, quæ flexa per I, ceu barbiton ; adde
His virus, pelagus : neutrum modo, mas modo, vulgus ;
Adde chaos, melôs a Græcis, sic cetôs, epos-que.*

54

3. NOUNS of the DOUBTFUL GENDER *excepted*.

*Incerti generis sunt talpa, et dama, canalis,
Et cytisus, bälänus, clunis, finis-que, penus-que,
Pampinus, et corbis, linter, torquis, specus, anguis ;
Pro morbo ficus fici dans, atque phaselus,
Lēcÿthus, atque atömus, grossus, phärus, et paradisus.*

60

4. NOUNS of the COMMON of two GENDERS *excepted*.

*Compositum a verbo dans A, est commune duorum ;
Grajugëna a gigno, agricöla a colo, id advëna monstrant
A venio : adde senex, auriga, et verna, sodalis,
Vates, extorris, patruelis, per-que-duellis,
Affinis, juvenis, testis, civis, canis, hostis.*

65

Second Special Rule.

NOUNS INCREASING LONG.

FEMININE.

*Nomen, crescentis penultima si genitivi
Syllaba longa sonat, velut hæc, pietas pietätis,
Virtus virtütis, monstrant, genus est muliebre.*

1. NOUNS MASCULINE *excepted*.

*Mascula dicuntur monosyllaba nomina quædam :
Sal, sol, ren, et splen, Car, Ser, vir, vas vadis, as, mas, 70
Bes, Cres, præ, et pes, glis gliris habens genitivo,
Mos, flos, ros, et Tros, mus, dens, mons, pons, simul et fons,
Seps pro serpente, et gryps, Thrax, rex, grex gregis, et Phryx.*

*Mascula sunt etiam polysyllaba in N : ut Acarnan,
Lichen, et delphin : et in O signantia corpus ; 75
Ut leo, curculio : sic senio, ternio, sermo.*

*Mascula in ER, OR, et OS: ceu crater, conditor, heros;
 Vis, torrens, nefrens, oriens, conjunge, cliens-que;
 Etque bidens instrumentum, cum pluribus in DENS;
 Adde gigas, elephas, adamas, Garamas-que, tapes-que, 80
 Etque lebes, sic et magnes, unumque meridi-
 s nomen quinta; et quæ componuntur ab asse,
 Ut dodrans, semis: jungantur mascula, Samnis,
 Hydrops et thorax: jungas quoque mascula, vervex,
 Phœnix, et bombyx pro vermiculo. Tamen ex his 85
 Sunt muliebre genus, Siren, necnon soror, uxor.*

2. NOUNS NEUTER excepted.

*Sunt neutralia et hæc monosyllaba nomina: mel, fel,
 Lac, far, ver, æs, cor, vas vasis, os ossis, et oris,
 Rus, thus, jus, crus, pus. Et in AL polysyllaba, in AR-que:
 Ut capital, laquear. Neutrum al-ec, -ex muliebre. 90*

3. NOUNS of the DOUBTFUL GENDER excepted.

*Sunt dubii generis, scrobs, serpens, bubo, rudens, grus,
 Perdix, lynx, limax, stirps pro trunco, pedis et calx:
 Adde dies, numero tantum mas esto secundo.*

4. NOUNS of the COMMON of two GENDERS excepted.

*Sunt commune, parens, auctor-que, infans, adolescens,
 Dux, illex, hæres, exlex: a fronte creata, 95
 Ut bifrons: custos, bos, fur, sus, atque sacerdos.*

Third Special Rule.

NOUNS INCREASING SHORT.

MASCULINE.

*Nomen, crescentis penultima si genitivi
 Sit brevis, ut sanguis, genitivo, sanguinis, est mas.*

1. NOUNS FEMININE excepted.

*Fæminei generis sit hyperdissyllabon in DO,
 Quod dñis, atque in GO, quod dat gñis, in genitivo: 100
 Id tibi dulcedo faciens dulcedinis; idque
 Monstrat compago compaginis; adjice virgo,*

Grando, fides, compes, teges, *et* seges, arbor, hyems-*que* ;
 Sic chlamys, *et* sindon, Gorgōn, icon, *et* Amazon.

Gracula in AS, *vel* in IS, *finita, ut*, lampas, iaspis, 105
 Cassis, cuspis ; *item* mulier, pecus *et* pecūdis *dans* :
Fæmineis forfex, pellex, carex-*que*, supellex,
 Appendix, hystrix, coxendix, *adde*, filix-*que*.

2. NOUNS NEUTER *excepted*.

Est neutrale genus signans rem non animatam
Nomen in A, *ut* problema ; EN, *ut* omen ; AR, *ut* jubar ;
 UR-*que*, 110
Ut jecur ; US-*que*, *ut* onus ; PUT, *ut* occiput. *Attamen ex*
his

Mascula sunt, pecten, furfur. *Sunt neutra*, cadaver,
 Verber, iter, suber, *pro fungo* tuber, *et* uber,
 Gingiber, *et* laser, cicer, *et* piper, *atque* papaver,
Et siser : *his addas neutra*, æquor, marmor, ador-*que* ; 115
Atque pecus *quando* pecōris *facit in genitivo*.

3. NOUNS *of the* DOUBTFUL GENDER *excepted*.

Sunt dubii generis, cardo, margo, cinis, imbrex,
 Forceps, *et* pumex, cortex, *et* pulvis, adeps-*que* :
Adde culex, natrix, *et* onyx *cum prole*, silex-*que*,
Quamvis hæc melius vult mascula dicier usus. 120

4. NOUNS COMMON *excepted*.

Communis generis sunt ista : vigil, pugil, exul,
 Præsul, homo, *et* nemo, martyr, Ligur, augur, *et* Arcas,
 Antistes, miles, pedes, interpret, comes, hospes,
Sic ales, præses, princeps, auceps, eques, obses ;
Atque alia a verbis quæ nomina multa creantur ; 125
Ut, conjux, judex, vindex, opifex, *et* aruspex.

§ 129. — II. ADJECTIVES.

ADJECTIVA *unam duntaxat habentia vocem*,
Ut, felix, audax, *retinent genus omne sub una* :
Sub geminā si voce cadant, velut, omnis *et* omne,
Vox commune duūm prior est, vox altera neutrum : 130

*At si tres variant voces, sacer, ut, sacra, sacrum,
Mas prima, altera vox est fœmina, tertia neutra.*

Obs. 1 *At sunt quæ flexu prope substantiva vocares,
Adjectiva tamen natura usuque reperta :*
Talia sunt pauper, puber, cum degēner, uber, 135
Et dives, locūples, sospes, comes, atque superstes ;
Cum paucis aliis, quæ lectio justa docebit.

Obs. 2. *Hæc proprium quenādam sibi flexum adsciscere
gaudent ;*
Campester, volūcer, celēber, celer, atque salūber ;
Junge pedester, equester, et ācer ; junge paluster, 140
Atque alācer, sylvester. At hæc tu sic variabis,
Hic celer, hæc celeris, neutro hoc celere : Aut aliter sic,
Hic atque hæc celeris, rursum hoc celere est tibi neutrum.

§ 130. — NOUNS HETEROCLITE (ἑτερόκλητα), OR IRREGULAR.

*QUÆ genus aut flexum variant, quæcunque novato
Ritu deficiunt, superantve, HETEROCLITA sunt.* 145

NOUNS changing their GENDER and DECLINING.

Hæc genus, ac flexum, partim variantia cernis :
Pergāmus in numero plurali Pergama gignit.
Dat prior his numerus neutrum genus, alter utrumque :
Bastrum cum fræno, et clathrum, porrumque siserque ;
Fræna sed et fræni, quo pacto et cætera formant,
Sibilus, atque jocus, locus. — His quoque plurima jungas. 150

NOUNS DEFECTIVE.

QUÆ sequitur, manca est casu numeroque, propago.

I. APTOTA (ἄπτωτα), or NOUNS undeclined.

Quæ nullum variant casum : ut, fas, nil, nihil, instar.
 Multa et in U, simul I : veluti, cornuque, genuque ;
 Sic gummi, frugi ; sic Tempe, tot, quot, et omnes 155
 A tribus ad centum numeros, aptota vocabis.

II. MONOPTOTA, or NOUNS declined with one Case.

Estque MONOPTOTON nomen, cui vox cadit una :
 Ceu, noctu, natu, jussu, injussu, simul astu,
 Promptu, permissu : plurali legimus astus,
 Legimus inficias, sed vox ea sola reperta est. 160

III. DIPTOTA, or NOUNS declined with two Cases.

Sunt DIPTOTA, quibus duplex flexura remansit :
 Ut, fors forte dabit sexto, spontis-que sponte ;
 Jugeris et sexto dat jugere ; verberis autem
 Verbere ; suppetiæ quarto quoque suppetias dant,
 Tantundem dat tantidem, impetis impete format. 165
 Sic repetundarum repetundis. Verberis autem
 Plurali casus cum jugere quatuor optat.

IV. TRIPTOTA, or NOUNS declined with three Cases.

Tres quibus inflectis casus, TRIPTOTA vocantur :
 Sic opis est nostræ, fer opem legis, atque ope dignus :
 Flecte preci, atque precem, petit et prece blandus amicum ; 170
 At tantum recto frugis caret, et ditionis ;
 Integra vox vis est, nisi desit forte dativus ;
 His vicis atque vicem junge et vice ; plus quoque pluris,
 Plus habet et quarto : His numerus datur omnibus alter.

V. NOUNS wanting the Plural Number.

Propria cuncta notes, quibus est natura coercens, 175
 Plurima ne fiant : alia et tibi multa legenti
 Occurrent, numerum raro excedentia primum.

VI. NOUNS *wanting the Singular Number.*

Mascula sunt tantum numero contenta secundo,
 Manes, majores, cancelli, liberi, *et* antes,
Et lemures, proceres, fasti, *simul atque* minores, 180
 Posterī, *et* hī Superi, natales; *adde* penates,
Et loca plurali, quales Gabiique, Locrique,
Et quæcunque legas passim similis rationis.

Hæc sunt fœminei generis, numerique secundi:

Exuviæ, phalærae, gratesque, *et* mānūbiæ, *et* idus, 185
 Nundinæ, *itemque* indutiæ, *item* insidiæque, minæque,
 Excubiæ, nonæ, nugæ, tricæque, calendæ,
 Quisquilæ, thermæ, cunæ, diræ, exequiæque,
 Feriæ, *et* inferiæ; *sic* primitiæque, plagæque
Retia signantes, et valvæ, divitiæque. 190
 Nuptiæ *item, et* lactes; *addantur* Thebæ *et* Athenæ,
Quod genus invenias et nomina plura locorum.

Rarius hæc primo pluralia neutra leguntur:

Mœnia, *cum* tesquis, præcordia, lustra ferarum,
 Arma, mapalia; *sic* bellaria, munia, castra; 195
Funus justa petit, petit et sponsalia *virgo;*
Rostra disertus amat, puerique crepundia *gestant,*
Infantesque colunt cunabula; *consulit* exta
Augur, et absolvens superis effata recantat;
Festa deum poterunt, ceu Bacchanalia, *jungi:* 200
Quod si plura leges, licet hac quoque classe reponas.

NOUNS *declined after both the Second and Fourth Declensions.*

Hæc simul et quarti flexûs sunt atque secundi:
 Laurus enim lauri facit *et* laurûs genitivo,
 Sic quercus, pinus, *pro fructu atque arbore* ficus;
 Sic colus, *atque* penus, cornus *quando arbor habetur;* 205
 Sic lacus *atque* domus: *licet hæc nec ubique recurrant.*
His quoque plura leges, quæ priscis jure relinquas.

OF THE
PRETERPERFECT TENSE AND SUPINES OF VERBS.

—♦—
§ 131.—I. PRETERPERFECT TENSE OF SIMPLE VERBS.

—
FIRST CONJUGATION.

As makes *āvi*.

AS in præsenti perfectum format in AVI :

Ut no nas navi, vocito vocitas vocitavi.

Deme lavo lavi, jūvo jūvi, nexoque ui dans,

Et seco quod secui, sic et mico quod micui dat,

Sic plico quod plicui, sic et frico quod fricui dat.

Sic domo quod domui, tono quod tonui, sono verbum

Quod sonui, crepo quod crepui, veto quod vetui dat,

Atque cubo cubui : raro hæc formantur in avi.

Do das rite dēdi, sto stas formare stēti vult.

5

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Es makes *ūi*.

Es in præsenti perfectum format UI dans :

Ut nigreo nigres nigrui : jubeo excipe jussi ;

Sorbeo sorbui habet sorpsi quoque mulceo mulsi ;

Luceo vult luxi, sedeo sedi, videoque

Vult vidi : sed prandeo prandi, strideo stridi,

Suadeo suasi, rideo risi, habet ardeo et arsi.

10

15

Quatuor his infra geminatur syllaba prima :

Pendeo namque pependi, mordeo vultque momordi,

Spondeo habere sponsondi, tondeo vultque totondi.

L vel R ante GEO si stet, GEO vertitur in SI :

Urgeo ut ursi ; mulgeo mulsi dat quoque mulxi,

Frigeo frixi, lugeo luxi, habet augeo et auxi.

20

Dat fleo fles flevi, leo les levi, indeque natum

Deleo delevi ; pleo ples plevi, neo nevi.

A maneo mansi formatur ; torqueo torsi :

Hæreo vult hæsi. VEO fit VI : ferveo fervi :

25

Niveo, *et inde satum poscit* conniveo, nivi
Et nixi; cieo civi, vieoque vievi.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

TERTIA præteritum formabit ut hic manifestum;

Bo fit BI: lambo lambi: scribe *excipe* scripsi,
Et nubo nupsi; *antiquum* cumbo cubui *dat.* 30

Co fit CI: vinco, vici: *vult* parco peperci,
Et parsi; dico dixi, duco *quoque* duxi.

Do fit DI: mando mandi; *sed* scindo scidi *dat.*
 Findo fidi, fundo fūdi, tundo tūtūdique,
 Pendo pependi, tendo tetendi; *junge* cadoque 35
Quod cēcīdi *format*; *pro verbero* cædo cecīdi:
Cedo pro discedere, sive locum dare, cessi:
 Vado, rado, lædo, ludo, divīdo, trudo,
 Claudio, plaudo, rodo, *ex DO semper faciunt* SI.

Go fit XI: jungo junxi: *sed R ante GO vult* SI, 40
Ut spargo sparsi; lego legi, *et ago facit* egi:
Dat tango tetigi, pungo punxi pūpūgique;
Dat frango fregi, pēpīgi *vult* pago *paciscor*,
Pango etiam pegi, *sed* panxi *maluit usus.*

Ho fit XI: traho ceu traxi *docet, et* veho vexi. 45

Lo fit UI: colo ceu colui; psallo *excipe cum* p,
Et sallo *sine* p, *nam LI tibi format utrumque*;
Dat vello velli vulsi *quoque*, fallo fefelli;
Cello pro frango cēcūli, pello pēpūlique.

Mo fit UI: vomo ceu vomui: *sed ěmo facit* ěmi; 50
 Como *petit* compsi, promo prompsi: *adjice* demo
Quod format dempsi, sumo sumpsī; premo pressi

No fit VI: sino ceu sivi: temno *excipe* tempsi;
Dat sterno stravi, sperno sprevi, lino levi,
Interdum lini *et* livi, cerno *quoque* crevi: 55
Gigno, pono, cano; genui, posui, cecini, *dant.*

Po fit PSI: scalpo scalpsi; rumpo *excipe* rupi,
Et strepo quod format strepui, *quæque inde creantur.*

Quo fit QUI; linquo liqui: coquo *demito* coxi.

Ro fit VI: sero ceu pro planto et semino sevi, 60
Quod serui melius semper dabit ordine signans;
Vult verro verri, vult uro ussi, gero gessi,
Quæro quæsiui, tero trivi, curro cucurri.

So, veluti probat arcesso, incesso atque lacesso,
Formabit sivi: sed tolle capesso capessi 65
Quodque capessivi facit, atque facesso facessi,
Et viso visi; sed pinso pinsui habebit.

Sco fit VI: pasco pavi: vult posco poposci,
Vult didici disco, sic edisco edidici dat.

To fit TI: verto verti; sed sisto notetur 70
Pro facio stare activum, nam jure stiti dat;
Dat mitto misi, peto vult formare petivi;
Sterto stertui habet, meto messui. Ab EOTO fit XXI;
Ut flecto flexi; necto dat nexui habetque
Nexi; etiam pecto dat pexui, habet quoque pexi. 75

Vo fit VI: volvo volvi; vivo excipe vixi.

Xo fit UI: monstrat texo, quod texui habebit.

Fit CIO CI: facio feci, jacio quoque jeci:
Antiquum lacio lexi, specio quoque spexi,
Elicio, elicui, a lacio sed cætera lexi. 80

Fit DIO DI: fodio fodi. Gio, ceu fugio, GI.

Fit PIO PI, capio cepi; cupio excipe pivi;
Et rapio rapui, sapio sapui, atque sapivi.

Fit RIO RI: pario peperit. Tio ssi, geminans s,
Ut quatio quassi, quod vix reperitur in usu. 85

Denique UO fit UI: statuo statui; pluo pluvi
Format, sive plui; struo sed struxi, fluo fluxi.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Is makes ivi.

Quarta dat IS IVI: ut monstrat scio scis tibi sciui.

Excipias vënio dans vëni, et vëneo vëniî:
Raucio rausi, farcio farsî, sarcio sarsî, 90
Sepio sepsi, sentio sensi, fulcio fulsi,
Haurio item hausi, sancio sanxi, vincio vinxi;
Pro salto salio salui, dabit âmicio et âmicûi.

II. PRETERPERFECT TENSE OF COMPOUND VERBS.

Præteritum dat idem simplex tibi compositumque :
Ut docui edocui monstrat. Sed syllaba, semper 95
Quam simplex geminat, composito non geminatur :
Præterquam tribus his, præcurro, excurro, repungo ;
Atque a DO, DISCO, STO, POSCO, rite creatis.

A PLICO compositum cum SUB vel nomine, ut ista,
Supplico, multiplico, gaudet formare plicavi ; 100
Applico, complico, replico, et explico, ui quoque formant.
Quamvis vult OLEO simplex olui, tamen inde
Quodvis compositum melius formabit olevi ;
Simplicis at formam redolet sequitur, suboletque.

Composita, a PUNGO formabunt omnia punxi ; 105
Vult unum pupugi, interdumque, repungo repunxi.

Natum a DO, quando est inflexio tertia, ut addo,
Credo, ēdo, dedo, reddo, perdo, abdo vel obdo,
Condo, indo, trado, prodo, vendo dīdi : at unum
Abscondo abscondi. Natum a sto stas, stīti habebit. 110

COMPOUND VERBS, which change the first vowel into E.

Verba hæc simplicia præsentis præteritique,
Si componantur, vocalem primam in E mutant :
Damno ut condemno, lacto delecto, sacroque,
Consecro dans, et sic, fallo, arceo, tracto, fatiscor,
Cando vetus, capto, jacto, patior, gradiorque, 115
Partio, carpo, patro, scando, spargo ; parioque,
Cujus nata per I duo, comperit et reperit, dant ;
Cætera sed per UI, velut hæc, aperire, operire.

A pasco pavi tantum composta notentur
Hæc duo compesco, dispesco, pescui, habere ; 120
Cætera, ut epasco, servabunt simplicis usum.

COMPOUND VERBS, which change the first Vowel into I.

Hæc habeo, lateo, salio, statuo, cado, lædo,
Et tango, atque cano, sic quæro, cædo cecīdi,
Sic egeo, teneo, taceo, sapio, rapioque,
Si componantur, vocalem primam in I mutant, 125
Ut rapio rapui, eripio eripui : a cano natum
Præteritum per UI, ceu concino concinui, dat.

*A placeo sic displiceo ; sed simplicis usum
Hæc duo, complaceo cum perplaceo, bene servant.*

Composita a verbis calco, salto, A per U mutant ; 130
Id tibi demonstrant conculco, inculco, resulto.

Composita a claudio, quatio, lavo, rejiciunt A :
Id docet a claudio, occludo, excludo ; a quatioque,
Percutio, excutio ; a lavo, proluo, diluo, nata.

COMPOUND VERBS, which change the first Vowel of the
Present Tense into I, but not the Preterperfect Tense.

Hæc si componas, ago, emo, sedeo, rego, frango, 135
Et capio, jacio, lacio, specio, premo, pango,
Vocalem primam præsentis in I sibi mutant,
Præteriti nunquam : ceu frango, refringo refregi ;
A capio, incipio incēpi ; sed pauca notentur :
Namque suum simplex perāgo sequitur, satāgoque ; 140
Atque ab ago, dego dat degi, cogo coēgi ;
A rego, sic pergo perrexi ; vult quoque surgo
Surrexi : mediā præsentis syllabā ademptā.

Composita a pango retinent A quatuor ista :
Depango, oppango, circumpango, atque repango. 145

Nil variat facio, nisi præposito præeunte,
Id docet olfacio, cum calfacio, inficioque.

A LEGO nata, re, per, præ, sub, trans, ad præeunte,
Præsentis servant vocalem ; in I cætera mutant ;
De quibus hæc, intel-ligo, diligo, negligo, tantum 150
Præteritum lexi faciunt ; reliqua omnia legi.



§ 132.—III. SUPINES OF SIMPLE VERBS.

Nunc ex præterito discas formare Supinum.
BI sibi TUM sumit ; sic namque bibi bibitum fit.

CI fit CTUM : vici victum testatur, et ici
Dans ictum, feci factum, jeci quoque jactum. 155

DI fit SUM : vidi visum : quædam geminant s ;
Ut pandi passum, sedi sessum ; adde scidi quod
Dat scissum, atque fidi fissum, fodi quoque fossum.

*Sic etiam advertas, quod syllaba prima supinis,
 Quam vult præteritum geminari, non geminatur : 160
 Idque totondi dans tonsum docet, atque cecidi
 Quod cæsum et cecidi quod dat casum, atque tetendi
 Quod tensum et tentum, tütüdi tunsum, atque dedi quod
 Jure datum poscit, morsum vult atque momordi.*

*GI fit CTUM : legi lectum ; pegi pepigique 165
 Dant pactum, fregi fractum, tetigi quoque tactum,
 Egi actum, pupugi punctum ; fugi fugitum dat.*

*LI fit SUM : salli, stans pro sale condio, salsum ;
 Dat pepuli pulsum, cēcüli culsum, atque fefelli
 Falsum ; dat velli vulsum ; tuli habet quoque latum. 170*

*MI, NI, PI, QUI, TUM formant, velut hic manifestum :
 Emi emptum, veni ventum, cēcīni a cano cantum ;
 A capio cepi captum : coepi quoque coeptum :
 A rumpo rupi ruptum ; liqui quoque lictum.*

RI fit SUM : ut, verri versum ; peperi excipe partum. 175

*SI fit SUM : visi visum ; tamen s geminato
 Misi formabit missum ; fulsi excipe fultum,
 Hausi haustum, sarsi sartum, farsi quoque fartum.
 Ussi ustum, gessi gestum : torsi duo tortum
 Et torsum : indulsi indultum indulsumque requirit. 180*

PSI fit PTUM : scripsi scriptum ; sculpsi quoque sculptum.

*TI fit TUM : a sto namque steti, a sistoque stiti, dant
 Ambo rite statum : verti tamen excipe versum.*

*VI fit TUM : flavi flatum ; pavi excipe pastum :
 Dat lavi lotum, interdum lautum atque lavatum ; 185
 Potavi potum, interdum facit et potatum,
 Sed favi fautum, cavi cautum ; a sero sevi
 Formes rite satum, livi linique litum dant,
 Solvi a solvo solutum, volvi a volvo volutum ;
 Vult singultivi singultum, veneo venis 190
 Venivi venum, sepelivi rite sepultum.*

*Quod dat UI dat ITUM : domui domitum ; excipe quodvis
 Verbum in uo, quia semper ui formabit in utum,
 Exui ut exutum : a ruo deme rui ruitum dans :
 Vult secui sectum enecui enectum, fricuique 195*

Frictum, miscui *item* mistum, *dat et* amīcui amictum :
 Torruī *habet* tostum, docui doctum, tenuique
 Tentum, consului consultum, alui altum alitumque ;
 Sic salui saltum, colui ocului *quoque* cultum ;
 Pinsui *habet* pistum, rapui raptum, seruique
 A sero *vult* sertum ; sic texui *habet quoque* textum.

200

Hæc sed UI *mutant in* SUM : nam censeo censum,
 Cellui *habet* celsum, meto messui *habet quoque* messum ;
 Nexui *item* nexum, sic pexui *habet quoque* pexum.

XI *fit* CTUM : vinxi vinctum ; *quinque abjiciunt* n,
 Ut finxi fictum, minxi mictum, *adjice* pinxi
 Dans pictum, strinxi strictum, rinxi *quoque* rictum.

205

XUM flexi, plexi, fixi *dant*, et fluo fluxum.

IV. SUPINES OF COMPOUND VERBS.

Compositum ut simplex formatur quodque supinum,
Quamvis non eadem stet syllaba semper utrique.
Composita a tunsum, *demptâ* N, tusum ; *a* ruitum *fit*,
I mediâ demptâ, rûtum ; et a saltum *quoque* sultum ;
A sero, quando satum format, composta situm dant.

210

Hæc captum, factum, jactum, raptum, *A per* E *mutant ;*
Et cantum, partum, sparsum, carptum, *quoque* fartum.

215

Verbum edo *compositum non* estum *sed* facit esum ;
Unum duntaxat comedo *formabit utrumque.*

A nosco *tantum* duo cognitum et agnitum *habentur ;*
Cætera dant nôtum : *nullo est jam* noscitum *in usu.*

§ 133.—V. PRETERPERFECT TENSE OF VERBS IN OR.

Verba in OR *admittunt ex posteriore supino*
Præteritum, verso U *per* US, *et* SUM *consociato*
Vel fui ; *ut a* lectu, lectus sum *vel* fui. *At horum*
Nunc est deponens, nunc est commune notandum.
Nam labor lapsus ; patior *dat* passus *et ejus*
Nata ; ut compator compassus, perpetiorque
Formans perpe~~ssus~~us ; fateor *dat* fassus, *et inde*
Nata ; ut, confiteor confessus, diffiteorque

220

225

*Formans diffessus ; gradior dat gressus, et inde
Vata ; ut digredior digressus : junge fatiscor
Fessus sum, mensus sum metior, utor et usus.* 230

*Pro texo orditus, pro incepto dat ordior orsus,
Fitor nisus vel nixus sum, ulciscor et ultus ;
Fascor simul iratus, reor atque ratus sum ;
Obliviscor vult oblitus sum, fruor optat
Fructus, tum demùm misereri junge misertus.* 235

*Vult tuor et tueor non tutus sed tuitus sum :
Filo loquor adde locutus, et a sequor adde secutus.*

*Experior facit expertus ; formare paciscor
Faudet pactus sum, nanciscor nactus ; apiscor,
Quod vetus est verbum, aptus sum, unde adipiscor adeptus.*

*Junge queror questus, proficiscor junge profectus, 241
Expergiscor sum experrectus ; et hæc quoque commi-
Fiscor commentus, nascor natus, moriorque
Mortuus, atque orior quod præteritum facit ortus.*

VI. VERBS WHICH MAKE THE PRÆTERPERFECT TENSE BOTH IN THE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICES

*Præteritum activæ et passivæ vocis habent hæc : 245
Cœno cœnavi et cœnatus sum tibi format,
Furo juravi et juratus, potoque potavi
Et potus, titubo titubavi vel titubatus.*

*Prandeo prandi et pransus sum, placeo placui dat
Et placitus, suesco dat suevi vult quoque suetus.* 250

*Nubo nupsi nuptaque sum, mereor meritus sum
Vel merui ; adde libet libuit libitum, et licet adde
Quod licuit licitum, tædet quod tæduit et dat
Pertæsum ; adde pudet faciens pudit puditumque,
Atque piget, tibi quod format piguit pigitumque.* 255

VII. OF THE PRÆTERPERFECT TENSE OF NEUTER PASSIVE VERBS.

Neutro-passivum sic præteritum tibi format :

*Gaudeo gavisus sum, fido fisus, et audeo
Ausus sum, fio factus, soleo solitus sum.*

VERBS *which want the Preterperfect Tense.*

Præteritum fugiunt vergo, ambigo, glisco, fatisco,
 Polleo, nideo ; *tum* ferio, furo ; *tum* puerasco ; 260
Omniaque inceptiva et quæ caruere supinis ;
Ut metuo, timeor : *meditativa omnia, præter*
Partūrio, esurio, quæ præteritum duo servant.

VERBS *which seldom admit a Supine.*

Hæc raro aut nunquam retinebunt verba supinum :
 Lambo, mico micui, rudo ; *tum* scabo, parco peperci, 265
 Dispesco, posco, disco, compesco, quinisco,
 Dego, ango, sugo, lingo, ningo ; satagoque,
 Psallo, volo, nolo, malo, tremo, strideo, strido,
 Flaveo, liveo, avet, paveo, conniveo, fervet.

A nuo compositum, ut renuo : a cado, ut accido, præter
Occido, quod facit occasum, recidoque recasum : 271
 Respuo, linquo, luo, metuo, cluo, frigeo, calveo,
Et sterto, timeo : sic luceo, et arceo, cujus
Composita ercītum habent : sic a gruo, ut ingruo, nata ;
Et quæcunque in UI formantur neutra secundæ ; 275
Excipias oleo, doleo, placeo, taceoque,
Pāreo, item careo, noceo, jaceo, lateoque,
Et valeo, caleo ; gaudent hæc namque supino.

SYNTAXIS:

OR THE

CONSTRUCTION OF WORDS.

§ 134. — CONCORDANTIA PRIMA.

NOMINATIVUS ET VERBUM.

1. VERBUM personale concordat cum nominativo numero et personâ: ut,

Sera nimis vita est crastina, vive hodie. — Mart.

Nunquam periculum sine periculo vincitur. — P. Syr.

(Vide suprâ, § 125.)

2. Nominativus Pronominum raro *exprimitur*, nisi distinctionis aut emphasis gratiâ: ut,

Vos damnâtis: quasi dicat, præterea nemo.

Tu nidum servas, ego laudo ruris amani

Rivos. — Hor.

3. Cum Persônæ sunt diversæ, Verbum digniorem sequitur: ut,

Si tu et Tullia valetis, bene est; ego et Cicero bene valemus. — Cic.

Egregiam vero laudem et spolia ampla refertis

Tuque puerque tuus. — Virg.

Ipse meique

Ante larem proprium vescor. — Hor.

4. Hi nominativi, *homines, nos*, sæpe subaudiuntur : ut,
Illic, ut perhibent, aut intempesta silet nox. — Virg.
Credimus alios
Defecisse amnes, epotaque flumina, Medo
Prudente. — Juv.

5. Nomen, in appositione positum cum pronomine primæ vel secundæ personæ, Verbum primæ vel secundæ personæ exigit : ut,
Hannibal peto pacem : sc. ego Hannibal.
Trecenti juravimus : sc. nos.
Hoc tibi juventus Romana indicimus bellum. — Liv.
Quæ gloria vestra est,
Si puerum juvenes, si multi fallitis unum ? — Ovid.
Maxima pars vatium decipimur specie recti. — Hor.

6. VERBA Substantiva, ut, *sum, fio, existo* ; Verba Vocandi passiva, ut, *nominor, appellor, dicor, vocor, nuncupor* ; et iis similia, ut, *videor, appareo, audio, habeor, existimor*, utrinque eosdem casus habent : ut,

Deus est summum bonum.

Extremus anni mensis olim Februarius erat, nunc December. — Cic.

Eventus stultorum magister est. — Liv.

Fis anus et tamen

Vis formosa videri. — Hor.

Brevis esse laboro,

Obscurus fio. — Id.

Liber de Amicitia qui inscribitur Lælius. — Cic.

Lælius qui sapiens usurpatur. — Id.

Perpusilli vocantur nani.

Malus est vocandus qui sua causâ est bonus. — P. Syr.

Cato esse quàm videri bonus malebat. — Sall.

Subtilis veterum iudex et callidus audis. — Hor.

Fides Religionis nostræ fundamentum habetur.)

Creditur olim

Velificatus Athos. — Juv.

Universus hic mundus una civitas recte existimatur. — Cic.

Nemo nascitur dives. — Sen.

Senatus venit frequens. — Cic.

*Natura beatis**Omnibus esse dedit.**Si quæret Pater Urbium**Subscribi stutuis. — Hor.**Infirmo non vacat esse mihi. — Ovid.**Nobis non licet esse tam disertis. — Mart.*

(Gr. Gr. § 129.)

7. ITEM omnia fere Verba post se adjectivum admittunt, quod cum substantivo verbi, casu, genere, et numero concordat: ut,

*Omnem crede diem tibi diluxisse supremum. — Hor.**Nec minus Æneas se matutinus agebat. — Virg.*

8. In his dativus aliquando in accusativum vertitur: ut,

*Vobis expedit esse bonas. — Ter.**Civi Romano licet esse Gaditanum. — Cic.*

9. VERBA affirmandi et sciendi interdum utrinque nominativum habent, quum, quod quis affirmat, id non de alio quoquam sed de se ipso affirmat: ut,

*Vir bonus et sapiens dignis ait esse paratus. — Hor.**Retulit Ajax**Esse Jovis pronepos. — Ovid.**Uxor invicti Jovis esse nescis? — Hor.**Phælus ille, quem videtis, hospites,**Ait fuisse navium celerrimus. — Catull.*

(Gr. Gr. § 162.)

10. VERBA videor, dicor, audior, et similia, personaliter multo sæpius quàm impersonaliter usurpari solent: ut,

*Lycurgi temporibus Homerus fuisse traditur. — Cic.**P. Terentii fabulæ propter elegantiam sermonis putabantur a**C. Lælio scribi. — Cic.**Dicitur Afranius toga convenisse Menandro,**Plautus ad exemplar Siculi properare Epicharmi. — Hor.**Videmur in Formiano hiematuri. — Cic.*

11. Ne dicas igitur — *Traditur Homerum fuisse; Putabatur fabulas scribi; Dicitur togam convenisse; Videtur nos hiematuos.*

12. Aliquando Oratio est verbo nominativus: ut,

*Ingenuas didicisse fideliter artes
Emollit mores, nec sinit esse feros.* — Ovid.

Pars sanitatis velle sanari fuit. — Sen.

Non est jocus, esse malignum. — Id.

Caput artis est, decere quod facias. — Quintil.

Est virtus licitis abstinuisse bonis. — Ovid.

Pio mori est nasci.

(Vide infra, § 136, 157.)

13. Aliquando adverbium cum genitivo: ut.

Partim virorum ceciderunt in bello.

§ 135.

14. QUUM alterum Verbum præcedit, (et præcipuè si sit verbum *sentiendi*,) Verbum ponitur in infinitivo, et nomen in accusativo: ut,

Te rediisse incolumem gaudeo.

(Vide supra, § 127, Obs. 2.)

15. Aliquando prius verbum omittitur: ut,

Mene incepto desistere victam! — Virg.

Huncine solem

Tam nigrum surrexe mihi! — Hor.

16. VERBUM inter duos nominativos diversorum numerorum positum, cum alterutro concordare potest: ut,

Amantium iræ amoris integratio est. — Ter.

Pectus quoque robora fiunt. — Ovid.

17. Nomen multitudinis *singulare* aliquando verbo *plurali* jungitur: ut,

Pars abiere.

Quærit pars semina flammæ:

Pars in frusta secant. — Virg.

Quo ruitis, generosa domus? — Ovid.

§ 136.—CONCORDANTIA SECUNDA.

SUBSTANTIVUM ET ADJECTIVUM.

18. ADJECTIVA, participia, et pronomina, cum substantivo genere, numero, et casu, concordant : ut,

Rara avis in terris, nigroque simillima cygno. — Juv.

19. Cum substantiva sunt diversi generis, adjectivum dignioris genus, aliquando et numerum, sequitur : ut,

Cerere nati sunt Liber et Libera. — Cic.

Vir mulierque boni. Rex et Regina beati.

Sociis et rege recepto. — Virg.

(Vide suprâ, § 126, Obs. 1.)

20. Nisi cum significant rem non animatam, ubi adjectivum in neutro genere ponitur : ut,

Arcus et calami bona sunt.

(Vide suprâ, § 126.)

21. Aliquando Oratio supplet locum substantivi, adjectivo vel participio in neutro genere posito : ut,

Audito, regem Doroberniam proficisci.

Excepto, quod non simul esses, cetera latus. — Hor.

Dulce et decorum est pro patriâ mori. — Hor.

22. Aliquando infinitivus ponitur pro substantivo : ut,

Scire tuum nihil est. Nostrum illud vivere triste.

Velle suum cuique est, nec voto vivitur uno. — Pers.

23. Adjectivum sæpe in neutro genere ponitur sine substantivo : ut,

Stultum est perituræ parcere chartæ. — Juv.

Atque verecundâ laxamus seria mensâ. — Pers.

Multa petentibus desunt multa. — Hor.

24. Elliptica sunt :

Triste lupus stabulis. — Virg.

Centauro invehitur magnâ : scilicet, navi. — Virg.

Excisa ferro Pergamum : sc. *urbs*. — Sen.

Sic Gelidâ Præneste. — Juv

Eunūchus bis die acta est : sc. *Terentii Fabula*. — Suet.

25. Quædam explicanda sunt per *Synthesim* (the sense) : ut,

Quid agis, dulcissime rerum? — Hor.

nam non de re sed de homine dicitur. (Gr. Gr. § 123.)

26. SUBSTANTIVA interdum adjectivè usurpantur : ut,

Ecce modò heroas sensus afferre videmur. — Pers.

(Gr. Gr. § 121.)

27. Interdum adjectivè declinantur : ut,

Urbs Romula; flumen Rhenum.

28. His accedant substantiva, adjectivè variata pro genere substantivi secum conjuncti : ut,

Eventus stultorum magister est,

Vitæ philosophia magistra est.

29. Sic, *victor exercitus, victrix Roma, ultor gladius, ultrices flamma, et similia*.



§ 137.—CONCORDANTIA TERTIA.



RELATIVUM ET ANTECEDENS.

30. RELATIVUM cum antecedente concordat, genere, numero, et personâ : ut,

Vir bonus est quis?

Qui consulta patrum, qui leges juraque servat. — Hor.

Arbores serit agricola, quarum ipse fructum aspiciet nunquam. — Cic.

Flumen est in Britannîâ, quod appellatur Tamesis. — Cæs.

(Vide suprâ, § 127.)

31. Eleganter Oratio ponitur pro antecedente : ut,

In tempore ad eam veni, quod rerum omnium est primum. — Ter.

32. Aliquando pronomen *id* relativo præponitur : ut,

In tempore venit, id quod est gratissimum.

33. Relativum, inter duo substantiva ejusdem rei sed diversorum generum et numerorum collocatum, ferè cum posteriore concordat: ut,

Homines tuentur illum globum quæ terra dicitur. — Cic.

Thebæ quod Bæotia caput est. — Liv.

(Gr. Gr. § 148.)

34. Aliquando relativum concordat cum *personali* pronomine, quod in *possessivo* subauditur: ut,

Omnes omnia

Bona dicere, et laudare fortunas meas,

Qui gnatum haberem tali ingenio præditum. — Ter.

ubi personale *ego* in *possessivo* *meas* subauditur.

35. Obs. Per *Synësim* est (h. e. the sense),

Daret ut catenis

Fatale monstrum; quæ generosius

Perire quærens. — Hor.

ubi *quæ* post *monstrum* admittitur, nam ibi de *fæminâ* (*Cleopatrá*) sermo est.

36. Relativum *QUI*, primæ vel secundæ personæ appositum, verbum primæ vel secundæ personæ exigit: ut,

Ego, quæ Divûm incedo Regina. — Virg.

Adsum, qui feci. — Id.

Quæ præmia Niso

Digna dabis, primam merui qui laude coronam? — Id.

Tu Maximus ille es,

Unus qui nobis cunctando restituis rem. — Id.

Exoriure aliquis nostris ex ossibus ultor,

Qui face Dardanio ferroque sequare colonos. — Id.

Nos ii sumus, qui Ciceronem admiramur.

37. Aliquando antecedens mutuatur casum relativi: ut,

Populo ut placerent quas fecisset fabulas. — Ter.

Urbem quam statuo vestra est. — Virg.

Quis non malarum, quas amor curas habet,

Hæc inter obliviscitur? — Hor.

Eupolis atque Cratinus Aristophanesque poëtæ

Atque alii quorum comædia prisca virorum est. — Id.

(Gr. Gr. § 122.)

38. Interdum relativum per attractionem ponitur in casu antecedentis: ut,

Judice, quo nōsti, populo. — Hor. (Gr. Gr. § 149.)

39. Aliquando substantivum relativo additum mutuatur casum relativi: ut,

Cui nomen Iulo. — Virg.

Cui nomen amello

Fecere agricolæ. — Id.

40. Persæpe antecedens postponitur relativo: ut,

Quam quisque nōrit artem, in hāc se exerceat.

Quā positus fueris in statione mane. — Ovid.

41. Relativum interdum adjectivum antecedentis post se habet, et præsertim numeralia, comparativa, et superlativa: ut,

Archilochus, Parios fudit qui primus iambos:

42. NOLI DICERE — Archilochus, primus qui fudit iambos.

Tarquinius Superbus, qui ultimus Romæ regnavit.

Consiliis pare, quæ nunc pulcherrimæ Nautes

Dat senior. — Virg.

Ego te, quæ plurima fando

Commemorare vales, nunquam, Regina, negabo

Promeritam: nec me meminisse pigebit Eliæ. — Id.

43. Ellipticum est,

Velis tantummodo, quæ tua virtus,

Expugnabis. — Hor.

i. e. pro virtute, quæ tua est.

44. Si Nominativus relativo et verbo interponatur, relativum regitur a verbo, aut ab aliâ dictione, quæ cum verbo in oratione locatur: ut,

Gratia ab officio, quod mora tardat, abest. — Ovid.

Cujus numen adoro.

§ 138. — PECULIARIS USUS NUMERORUM.

45. SINGULARIS eleganter ponitur pro plurali, præsertim a Poëtis: ut,

Plurima mortis imago. — Virg.

Multâ cane. — Hor.

Hornd fruge. — Id.

Thynū merce beatum. — Hor.

Pæno milite. — Juv.

46. Item PLURALIS pro *singulari*. ut,
Supplex tua numina posco. — Virg.

Sibila colla tūmet coluber. — Id.

Capitolia ad alta

Victor aget currum. — Id.

47. Sic *purissima mella* pro *mel*; et *ora, pectora*, pro *os, pectus*, et similia.

§ 139. — PECULIARIS USUS CASUUM.

48. Aliquando *Nominativus* ponitur pro *Vocativo*: ut,

Vos, o Patricius sanguis. — Pers.

Projice tela manu, sanguis meus. — Virg.

(Gr. Gr. § 127.)

49. Aliquando *Vocativus* pro *Nominativo*: ut,

Macte esto.

Stemmata quod Tusco ramum millesime ducis,

Prætoresve tuum vel quod, trabeate, salutas. — Pers.

§ 140. — NOMINUM CONSTRUCTIO.

50. Substantiva rei ejusdem (sive in *appositione collocata*)
in eodem casu ponuntur: ut,

Effodiuntur opes, irritamenta malorum. — Ovid.

Nymphæ, noster amor, Libethrides. — Virg.

Et certamen erat, Corydon cum Thyrside, magnum. — Id.

Effugimus scopulos Ithacæ, Laertia regna. — Id.

Video duo fulmina belli

Scipiadas.

Philippus Aristotelem Alexandro filio doctorem accivit. — Cic.

Junius ædem Salutis quam Consul voverat, Censor locaverat,

Dictator dedicavit, — Liv.

Vel imperatore vel milite me utimini. — Sall.

§ 141. — GENITIVUS.

51. GENITIVUS indicat *Subjectum* ad quod res pertinet:
ut, *Oratio Ciceronis; Personam, unde venit: ut, Vulnus*

Ulyssi; *Causam* ob quam fit: ut, *ereptæ virginis irâ*; *Qualitatem*: ut, *homo summi ingenii*; *Objectum* quod tendit: ut, *amor nummi*; *Quantitatem*: ut, *fossa decem pedum*.

(Gr. Gr. § 130, 131.)

GENITIVUS POST NOMEN.

52. QUUM duo substantiva diversæ significationis concurrunt, posterius in genitivo ponitur: ut,

Crescit amor nummi, quantum ipsa pecunia crescit. — Juv.

Calamitas virtutis occasio est. — Sen.

53. Sic post *causâ*, *gratiâ*, *ergo*, *nihil*, et similia, genitivus ponitur.

54. Hic genitivus aliquando in dativum vertitur: ut,

Urbi pater est, urbique maritus. — Luc.

55. Aliquando in adjectivum: ut,

Herculeus labor; pro *labor Herculis*.

56. Adjectivum et pronomen, in neutro genere sine substantivo positum, aliquando genitivum postulat: ut,

Paululum pecuniæ.

Per aperta viarum.

Amara curarum. — Hor.

Villa rerum. — Id.

Hoc ad te litterarum dedi. — Cic.

Rectum animi servas. — Hor.

Quid causæ est? — Id.

Sed non videmus mantica quod in tergo est, — Catull.

57. Sed hæc Adjectiva, *primus*, *medius*, *ultimus*, *extremus*, *imus*, *summus*, *supremus*, *reliquus*, *cæterus*, cum Substantivis juncta, pro *Parte primâ*, *mediâ*, *ultimâ*, etc. poni solent: ut,

Primâ nocte domum claude. — Hor.

Hæc Janus summus ab imo

Prodocet. — Id.

58. *Prima fabula*, i. e. *prima Pars* vel *Initium fabulæ*; *media nox*, i. e. *media Pars noctis*; et simili modo, *summa ars*, *ima cæra*, *cætera turba*.

59. Ponitur interdum genitivus tantum, priore substantivo per ellipsin subaudito: ut,

Ubi ad Dianæ veneris: sc. *templum*. — Ter.

Hectoris Andromache: sc. *uxor*. — Virg.

Hasdrubal Gisconis: sc. *filius*. — Liv.

Deiphobe Glauci: sc. *filia*. — Virg.

Hujus Byrrhia: sc. *servus*. — Ter.

60. ADJECTIVA quæ desiderium, notitiam, memoriam, timorem significant, atque iis contraria, genitivum exigunt: ut,
Est natura hominum novitatis avida. — Plin.

Conscia mens recti famæ mendacia ridet.

Memor esto brevis ævi. Immemor benefict.

Imperitus rerum. Rudis belli.

Timidus deorum. — Ovid,

Impavidus sui. — Claud.

[*mentiretur*. — Nep.

Epaminondas adeo erat veritatis diligens, ut ne joco quidem

61. Cum plurimis aliis quæ Qualitatem denotant: ut, *ager animi; latus laboris; maturus ævi; seri studiorum; truncus pedum; steriles veri; notus in fratres animi paterni*: — vel *Relationem*: ut, *potens sui; voti reus; terræ fastidiosus; integer vitæ; divinus futuri; docilis modorum; studiosus operum*. (Gr. Gr. § 132.)

62. Huc pertinent etiam Substantiva significationis cognatæ cum illis Adjectivis: ut,

Segetis certa fides meæ. — Hor.

Generis fiducia vestri. — Virg.

63. ADJECTIVA, quæ ad copiam, egestatemve pertinent, interdum genitivum, interdum ablativum exigunt: ut,

Dives equum, dives pictæ vestis, et auri. — Virg.

Expers fraudis.

Pauper aquæ. — Hor.

Vis consili expers mole ruit sud. — Id.

Dives agris, dives positus in fœnore nummis. — Id.

Amor et melle, et felle, est fecundissimus. — Plaut.

Gratiâ beatus.

Mancipiis locuples eget æris Cappadocum rex. — Hor.

64. Obs. In his Genitivus fere qualitatem inhærentem, Ablativus vero vel inhærentem vel accidentem denotat.

65. Genitivus *qualitatis* a *substantivo* pendens semper adjectivum, et fere trium terminationum, secum conjunctum habet: ut,

Multi formica laboris. — Hor.

66. ADJECTIVA verbalia in *az* genitivum exigunt: ut,

Audax ingēti. — *Tempus edax rerum.* — *Justitia tenax.*

67. NOMINA partitiva, numeralia, comparativa, et superlativa; et quædam adjectiva partitivè posita, genitivum, a quo et genus mutuatur, exigunt: ut,

Utrum horum mavis accipe.

Primus regum Romanorum fuit Romulus.

Manuum fortior est dextera.

Indus omnium fluminum maximum.

Sapientum octavus.

Sequimur te, sancte deorum. — Virg.

68. Interdum adjectivum subauditur: ut,

Fies nobilium tu quoque fontium: sc. unus. — Hor.

Scribe tui gregis hunc. — Hor.

Operum hoc, mihi crede, tuorum est. — Hor.

69. Usurpantur autem et cum his præpositionibus, *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, *in*, *inter*, *ante*: ut,

Ajax heros ab Achille secundus. — Hor.

Alter enim e vobis est Deus, alter erit. — Ovid.

Thales sapientissimus in septem fuit. — Cic.

Primus inter omnes.

Primus ante omnes.

70. SECUNDUS aliquando dativum exigit: ut,

Haud ulli veterum virtute secundus. — Virg.

71. INTERROGATIVUM, et ejus redditivum, ejusdem casûs, numeri, et temporis erunt: ut,

Quarum rerum nulla est satietas? *Divitiarum.*

Quid nunc rei geritur in Angliâ? *Consultitur de religione.*

72. Nisi syntaxis aliter poscat: ut,

Cujus hic liber est? *Meus.*

Quanti emisti? *Magno.*

§ 142. — GENITIVUS POST VERBUM.

73. SUM genitivum postulat, quoties significat possessionem, officium, signum, partem, aut id quod ad rem quampiam pertinet: ut,

Pecus est Melibœi. — Virg.

Adolescentis est, majores natu revereri. — Cic.

*Cujusvis est errare, nullius nisi insipientis in errore perpe-
rare.* — Cic.

Totum muneris hoc tui est. — Hor.

Virtutis est domare, quæ cuncti pavent. — Sen.

74. Sed usurpantur eodem sensu hi neutri NOMINATIVI, *meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum, humanum, belluinum*, et similia: ut,

Non est meum contra auctoritatem senatûs dicere. — Cic.

Humanum est errare. — Cic.

Quod placeo, tuum est. — Hor.

75. Obs. Sed non Nominativi adjectivorum *unius* tantum terminationis; neque enim dicere poteris *insipiens est hoc facere*; dixeris autem *insipientis est, hoc facere*.

76. VERBA accusandi, damnandi, absolvendi, et similia, genitivum postulant: ut,

*Qui alterum accusat probri (sc. crimine) eum ipsum se
intueri oportet.* — Plaut.

Sceleris condemnat generum suum. — Cïc.

Furti absolutus est.

Cæsar repetundarum Dolabellam postulavit. — Suet.

Accusat me capitis; absolvit voti; damnat voti.

Damnatusque longi

Sisyphus Æolides laboris. — Hor.

77. Item verba monendi genitivum exigunt rei: ut,

Adversæ res admonuerunt religionum. — Liv.

78. Vertitur hic genitivus aliquando in ablativum, vel cum præpositione, vel sine præpositione: ut,

Putavi eâ de re te esse admonendum. — Cic.

Si in me iniquus es iudex, condemnabo eodem ego te crimine.
— Id.

79. UTERQUE, *nullus, alter, neuter, alius, ambo*, et superlativus gradus, non nisi in ablativo id genus verbis junguntur: ut,

Accusas furti, an stupri? utroque, vel de utroque — ambobus vel de ambobus — neutro, vel de neutro.

De plurimis simul accusaris.

80. SATAGO, *misereor*, et *miseresco*, genitivum postulant; sed *miseror* et *commiseror* accusativum: ut,

Is rerum suarum satagit. — Ter.

Oro, miserere laborum

Tantorum, miserere animi non digna ferentis. — Virg.

Et generis miseresce tui. — Stat.

Aut doluit miserans inopem, aut invidit habenti. — Virg.

81. REMINISCOR, *obliscor, memini, recordor*, genitivum, aut accusativum, admittunt: ut,

Datae fidei reminiscitur.

Hæc olim meminisse juvabit. — Virg.

Proprium est stultitiæ, aliorum vitia cernere, oblivisci suorum

— Cic.

Quisquis es, amissos hinc jam obliviscere Gratos. — Virg.

Hujus meriti in me recordor. — Cic.

Si rite audita recordor. — Virg.

Sole oriente, tui reditûs a morte memento:

Sis memor occasûs, sole cadente, tui.

82. REGNO interdum genitivo jungitur: ut,

Daunus agrestium

Regnavit populorum. — Hor.

83. POTIOR, vel ablativo, vel genitivo, jungitur: ut,

Egressi optatâ potiuntur Troes arendâ. — Virg.

Romani signorum et armorum potiti sunt. — Sall.



§ 143. — DATIVUS.

84. DATIVUS indicat *objectum*, ad quod vel *nomen* vel *verbum directè refertur*, vel *id cui aliquid fit*, vel *acquiritur* vel *adimitur*. (Gr. Gr. § 124.)

DATIVUS POST NOMEN.

85. ADJECTIVA quibus commodum, incommodum, similitudo, dissimilitudo, propinquitas, distantia, voluptas, submissio, aut relatio ad aliquid significatur, dativum postulant : ut,

Si facis, ut patriæ sit idoneus utilis agris. — Juv.

Turba gravis paci, placidæque inimica quieti. — Mart.

Patri similis. — Cic.

Qui color albus erat, nunc est contrarius albo. — Ovid.

Jucundus amicis. — Mart.

Omnibus supplex.

Proximus huic, magno sed proximus intervallo. — Virg.

86. Huc referuntur nomina ex *con* præpositione composita : ut, *contubernalis, commilito, conservus, cognatus, &c.*

87. Quædam ex his, si *ingenii* similitudinem significant, genitivo, sin autem *corporis*, dativo, junguntur : ut,

Ille tui similis moribus, ore mihi.

88. COMMUNIS, *alienus, immunis, affinis*, et similia, genitivo, dativo, et ablativo cum præpositione, junguntur : ut,

Commune animantium omnium est. — Cic.

Mors omnibus est communis. — Id.

Hoc mihi tecum commune est.

Non aliena consilii. — Sall.

A alienus ambitioni. — Sen. Præf.

Non alienus a Scævola studiis. — Cic.

Vobis immunibus hujus

Esse mali dabitur. — Ovid.

Caprificus omnibus immunis est. — Plin.

Immunes ab illis malis sumus.

Ager publicus est factus populi Romani. — Cic.

Affinis hujus culpæ. — Id.

Studium eloquentiæ non erat commune Græciæ, sed proprium

Athenarum. — Id.

89. COMMODUS, *incommodus, utilis, inutilis, aptus*, cum

multis aliis, interdum dativo, et interdum accusativo cum præpositione, junguntur : ut,

Non est aptus equis Ithacæ locus. — Hor.

Natus ad gloriam. — Cic.

Utilis ad eam rem.

90. VERBALIA in *bilis* accepta passivè, et participalia in *dus*, dativum postulant : ut,

Nulli penetrabilis astro

Lucus iners. — Stat.

O mihi post nullos Juli memorande sodales ! — Mart.

§ 144. — DATIVUS POST VERBUM.

91. OMNIA verba regunt dativum ejus rei, vel personæ, cui aliquid acquiritur, aut adimitur : ut,

Mihi istic nec seritur, nec metitur. — Plaut.

Quis te mihi casus ademit ? — Ovid.

Multi sunt, qui eripiunt aliis, quod aliis largiantur ; hique fulsè arbitrantur se beneficos visum iri. — Cic.

Videndum est, ut eâ liberalitate utamur, quæ proxit amicis, noceat nemini. — Cic.

Liberalis est, qui, quod alteri donat, sibi detrahit. — Sen.

Qui virtutem suam publicari vult, non virtuti laborat, sed gloriæ. — Sen.

Vive precor, sed vive Deo ; nam vivere mundo

Mortis opus ; Viva est vivere Vita Deo. — Paulin.

92. VERBA significantia commodum, aut incommodum, regunt dativum : ut,

Non potes mihi commodare, nec incommodare.

93. Excipe *juvo*, *lædo*, *delecto*, et alia quædam, quæ accusativum exigunt : ut,

Non omnes arbusta juvant, humilesque myricæ. — Virg.

Quæ lædunt oculum festinas demere. — Hor.

Lectorem delectando, pariterque monendo. — Id.

94. VERBA certandi et comparandi regunt dativum : ut,
Solus tibi certet Amyntas. — Virg.

Cæpto pugnemus amori. — Ovid.

Tabescat ? neque se majori pauperiorum

Turbæ compāret ? — Hor.

95. Interdum vero ablativum regunt cum præpositione
cum ; interdum regunt accusativum cum præpositionibus *ad*
et inter : ut,

Comparo Virgilium cum Homero.

Si ad eum comparatur, nihil est.

Hæc non sunt inter se conferenda.

96. QUÆDAM distandi, et auferendi verba, aliquando dativo
 junguntur : ut,

Paulum sepultæ distat inertiae

Celata virtus. — Hor.

Eripe te moræ. — Id.

Orationi Vita ne dissentiat. — P. Syr.

97. VERBA dandi et reddendi regunt dativum : ut,
Fortuna multis dat nimis, satis nulli. — Mart.

Ingratus est, qui gratiam bene merenti non reponit.

98. Aliquando accusativum *personæ* cum ablativo *rei* : ut,
Hoc juvenem egregium præstanti munere donat. — Virg.

99. VERBA promittendi ac solvendi regunt dativum : ut,
*Quæ tibi promitto, ac recipio sanctissimè esse observa-
 turum.* — Cic.

Æs alienum mihi numeravit. — Id.

100. VERBA imperandi et nuntiandi regunt dativum : ut,
Imperat, aut servit, collecta pecunia cuique — Hor.

Quid, de quoque viro, et cui dicas, sæpe videto. — Id.

101. Excipe jubeo, rego, guberno, quæ accusativum ha-
 bent : ut,

Pauper eris. Fortem hoc animum tolerare jubebo. — Hor.

**Luna regit menses — orbem Deus Ipse gubernat.*

102. Excipe tempero et moderor, quæ posita pro *modum im-
 pono* vel *parco*, dativum, pro *guberno*, accusativum habent : ut
Temperat ipse sibi — Sol temperat omnia luce.

Hic moderatur equos, qui non moderabitur iræ.

103. VERBA fidendi et diffidendi regunt dativum : ut,
Utrumque vitium est, nulli credere, et omnibus. — Sen.

Vacuis committere venis

Nil nisi lene decet. — Hor.

104. VERBA obsequendi et repugnandi dativum regunt : ut,
Deo qui obēdit optimam offert victimam.

Parenti oportet potius quā amorī obsequi. — Ter.

Semper obtemperat pius filius patri.

Ignavis precibus fortuna repugnat. — Ovid.

105. HÆC verba,

NUBO, VACO, STUDEO, FAVEOQUE, INDULGEO, PARCO,

GRATULOR, IGNOSCO, MEDEORQUE, IRASCOR, ADŪLOR,

regunt dativum : ut,

Uxorem ducit vir ; nubit sponsa marito.

Si qua voles aptè nubere, nube pari.

Carminibus vacat ; et Musas amat, huic studet uni. —

Altera frumentis quoniam favet, altera Baccho. — Virg.

Indulge ordinibus. — Id.

Parce pio generi. — Virg.

Ignoscet verrūcis illius. — Hor.

Medetur animis Philosophia. — Cic.

Irascor tibi : sic meos amores ! — Catull.

Epaminondas irasci patriæ nefas esse ducebat.

Nunquam Atticus potenti adulatus est Antonio. — Nep.

106. Obs. ADULOR autem etiam accusativum admittit.

107. HÆC verba,

EXCUSO, IGNOSCO, PERSUADEO, DEFENDOQUE,

CONDONO, CAVEO, MINOR, INVIDEOQUE, PROBOQUE,

et quædam alia, regunt dativum *personæ* et accusativum *rei* : ut,

Ille Philippo

Excusare laborem, et mercenaria vincla. — Hor.

Ignoscis aliis multa, sed nihil tibi.

Hoc tibi persuades : hoc probat ille mihi.

Solstitium pecori defendite. — Virg.

Utrique mortem est minitatus. — Cic.

Ascanione pater Romanas invidet arces ? — Virg.

Ætūm arcebis gravido pecori. — Id.

Te suis matres metuunt juvenis. — Hor.

108. DATIVUM sæpiùs regunt verba composita cum his adverbiiis, *benè, satis, malè*; et cum his præpositionibus, *præ, ab, ad, con, sub, ante, post, ob, in, inter*: ut,

Dî tibi benefaciant! — Ter.

Vobis faciam satis. — Cic.

Conducit hoc tuæ laudi. Convixit nobis.

Iniquissimam pacem justissimo bello antefêro. — Cin.

Postpono famæ pecuniam.

Venienti occurrere morbo. — Pers.

Murus fenestris officit.

Impendet omnibus periculum.

Non solum interfuit his rebus, sed etiam præfuit. — Cic.

109. Non pauca ex his mutant dativum in alium casum: ut,
Præstat ingenio alius alium. — Quinct.

110. SUM, cum compositis, præter *possum*, regit dativum: ut,
Mihi nec obest, nec prodest.

111. SUM, cum multis aliis, geminum admittit dativum, unum *personæ*, alterum vero *rei*: ut,
Exitio est avidis mare nautis. — Hor.

Speras tibi id laudi fore, quod mihi vitio vertis?

Est tibi cordi; est tibi curæ.

112. Dativus *rei* eleganter etiam aliis verbis additur: ut,
Virtus neque datur dono, neque accipitur. — Sall.

Pecuniam fœnori dat. Rem habet religioni.

Vitaque mancipio nulli datur, omnibus usu. — Lucret.

Habere quæstui Rempubliam, est turpissimum. — Cic.

Receptui canit. — Cæs.

Habet illum despiciatui, ludibrio, et derisui.

113. Est ubi hic dativus *tibi* aut *sibi*, aut etiam *mihi*, elegantiae causâ additur: ut,
Suo sibi gladio hunc jugulo. — Ter.

Quid mihi Cæus agit? — Hor.

Quid tibi vis, mulier? — Id.

§ 145.—*ACCUSATIVUS.*

114. *ACCUSATIVUS* indicat *objectum*, quod directè ab actione patitur.

ACCUSATIVUS POST NOMEN.

115. *ACCUSATIVUS partem* indicans subicitur verbis, adjectivis, et participiis: ut,

Os humerosque Deo similis. Vultum demissa tacebat.

Micat auribus et tremit artus. — Virg.

Nuda genu nodoque sinus collecta fluentes. — Virg.

Inficitur teneras tota rubore genas. — Tibull.

Cætera Graius. — Virg.

Ingenium placidè mollimur ab arte. — Ovid.

(Gr. Gr. § 143.)

116. Et Græco more participiis passivis reflexivum sensum habentibus: ut,

Flores inscripti nomina Regum. — Virg.

Lavo suspensi loculos tabulamque lacerto. — Hor.

Terque quaterque manu pectus percussa decorum.

(Gr. Gr. § 140.)

§ 146.—*ACCUSATIVUS POST VERBUM.*

117. *VERBA* transitiva, cujuscunque generis sint, sive activi sive deponentis, exigunt accusativum: ut,

Percontatorem fugito, num garrulus idem est. — Hor

Pacem cum hominibus bellum cum vitiis habe. — P. Syr.

Sol spectatorem, nisi cum deficit, non habet. — Sen. ¶

Imprimis venerare Deum.

118. *VERBA* neutra accusativum habent cognatæ significationis: ut,

Longam incommittata videtur

Ire viam. — Virg.

Mirum somniavi somnium.

Duram servit servitutem. — Plaut.

Ludum insolentem ludere pertinax. — Hor.

Alium silere quod voles, primus sile. — Sen.

Evigilare libros. — Ovid.

Xerxes maria ambulavit, terramque navigavit. — Cæ.

119. SUNT et alia verba cùm neutra tum passiva quæ accusativum post se habent: ut,

Nec vox hominem sonat: O Dea certè. — Virg.

Hortus olet violas.

Hyblæum sapiunt dulcia mella thymum.

Et duræ quercus sudabunt roscida mella. — Virg.

Emptum cœnat olus. — Hor.

Qui Curios simulant, et Bacchanalia vivunt. — Juv.

Carnem pluere. — Liv. *Stadium currit.*

Stadio qui saepe peracto

Vicit Olympia. — Enn.

Maria aspera juro. — Virg.

Agrestem saltaret uti Cyclopa, rogabat.

Magna coronari contemnat Olympia. — Hor.

Magnum agri modum censeri. — Cic.

Pascuntur et arbuta passim,

Et glaucas salices. — Virg.

Nunc Satyrum nunc agrestem Cyclopa movetur. — Hor.

120. NEUTRA interdum passivam formam accipiunt cum nominativo cognatæ significationis: ut,

Libenter hoc et omne militabitur

Bellum. — Hor.

Tertia vivitur ætas.

121. VERBA rogandi, docendi, cogendi, induendi, celandi, fere duplicem regunt accusativum, alterum *personæ*, alterum verò *rei*: ut,

Pacem te poscimus omnes. — Virg.

Qui prior es, cur me in decursu lampada poscis? — Pers.

Insuevit pater optimus hoc me. — Hor.

Ridiculum est te istuc me admonere. — Ter.

Dedocebo te istos mores.

Quid non mortalia pectora cogis,

Auri sacra fames? — Virg.

Induit se calceos, quos prius exuerat.

Ea ne me celet, consuefeci filium. — Ter.

(Gr. Gr. § 139.)

122. Hujusmodi verba etiam in *passivâ voce accusativum* rei post se habent : ut,

Posceris exta bovis.

Porcius Cato rogatus est sententiam. — Sall.

Doctus iter melius — Hor.

Puerum est ausus Romam portare, docendam Artes. — Id.

Quod Paris, ut salvus regnet vivatque beatus, Cogi posse negat. — Id. *Id celabar;*

Tuque potens veri, Pæan, nullumque futuri A Superis celate diem ! — Lucan.

Acta agimus, quod vetamur vetere proverbio. — Cic.

Multa in extis monemur. — Id.

Inutile ferrum cingitur. — Virg.

Protenus induitur faciem cultumque Dianæ. — Ovid.

(Gr. Gr. § 140.)

123. INFINITIVUS aliquando supplet locum accusativi.

Reddes dulce loqui : reddes ridere decorum. — Hor.

Summum crede nefas animam præferre pudori,

Et propter vitam vivendi perdere causas. — Juv.

NATURÆ liber est unus ; SCRIPTURA, secundus ;

Altera posse docens, altera velle DEI.

124. VERBUM aliquando omittitur.

Quò mihi fortunam, si non conceditur uti ? — Hor.

Cantando tu illum ! — Virg.

125. ACCUSATIVUS aliquando omittitur : ut,

Hannibal movit, sc. castra :—solvit, sc. navim.

126. Præsertim si sit pronomen : ut,

Quadrigæ,

Addunt in spatia, sc. se. — Virg.

Tantum abhorret, ac mutat. — Catull.

Solidam in glaciem vertère lacunæ. — Virg.

Miscetque viris, neque cernitur ulli. — Id.

127. Aliquando ponitur absolutè : ut,

Magnam partem iambis nostra constat oratio — Cic.

128. VERBALIA nomina interdum regunt casus suorum verborum : ut,

Quid tibi hoc curatio est ? — Plaut.

Hanno vitabundus castra, — Liv.

§ 147.—*ABLATIVUS.*

129. *ABLATIVUS* indicat *conditionem* vel *qualitatem* rei : *i. e.* numerum, pretium, quantitatem, modum, instrumentum, causam, locum, tempus, et similia.

ABLATIVUS POST NOMEN.

130. *ADJECTIVA* et substantiva regunt ablativum significantem causam, formam et qualitatem, instrumentum vel modum rei : ut,

Pallidus irā.

Nomine grammaticus, re barbarus. —

Trojanus origine Cæsar. — Virg.

Ennius ingenio maximus, arte rudis. — Ovid.

Pericles et Thucydides grandes verbis, crebri sententiis, compressione rerum breves. — Cic.

Crine ruber, niger ore, brevis pede, lumine luscus.

131. *DIGNUS, indignus, præditus, captus, contentus, extorris, fretus, liber*, et aliquando *par, impar*, cum adjectivis *pretium* significantibus, ablativum post se habent : ut,

Curantem quicquid dignum sapiente bonoque est. — Hor.

Aude, hospes, contemnere opes, et te quoque dignum

Finge Deo. — Virg.

Qui gnatum haberem tali ingento præditum. — Ter

Oculis capti fodere cubilia talpæ. — Virg.

Agasilas fuit claudus altero pede. — Nep.

Sorte tuâ contentus abi.

Terrore liber animus. — Liv.

Neque purpurâ venale, neque auro. — Hor.

132. *Obs.* His accedat — *Macte* (magis aucte) *esto virtute.* — Liv.
Macti estote virtute. — Curt.

133. Horum nonnulla interdum poeticè genitivum admittunt : ut,

Magnorum indignus avorum. — Virg.

Carmina digna Deæ.

Extorris regni. — Stat.

134. *OPUS* et *usus* ablativum exigunt, præsertim participii passivi : ut,

Nunc animis opus, Ænea. Nunc viribus usus. — Virg.

Priusquam incipias, consulto, et, ubi consulueris, maturè facto opus est. — Sall.

135. OPUS autem adjectivè pro *necessarius* aliquando poni videtur: ut,

Dux nobis et auctor opus est. — Cic.

Dicis nummos mille opus esse. — Id.

§ 148. — COMPARATIVA ET SUPERLATIVA.

136. COMPARATIVA, nisi exponantur per *quàm*, ablativum exigunt: ut,

Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum: i. e. quàm aurum, quàm virtutes sunt. — Hor.

Quid magis est durum saxo? quid mollius undâ?

Dura tamen molli saxa cavantur aquâ. — Ovid.

Titulis et fascibus olim

Major habebatur donandi gloria. — Juv.

Meliorem, quàm ego sum, suppono tibi. — Plaut.

137. Nomina cum comparantur per *quàm* in eodem utrinque casu ponuntur: ut,

Ennius major fuit natu quàm Plautus et Nævius.

Minus firmum nil est quàm ventus et unda. — Ovid.

Multis ille bonis flebilis occidit:

Nulli flebilior quàm tibi, Virgili. — Hor.

Ego hominem callidiorem vidi neminem

Quàm Phormionem. — Ter.

138. QUAM sæpe intelligitur, non exprimitur, post *amplius*, *plus*, et *minus*: ut,

Noctem non amplius unam. — Virg.

Neque enim plus septima ducitur aetas. — Id.

Nunquam nix minus quatuor pedes alta jacuit. — Liv.

139. ABLATIVUS post comparativa aliquando eleganter omittitur: ut,

Adolescentia fervidior est: i. e. justo.

Rusticiùs tonso toga defluit. — Hor.

Parciùs hic vivit; frugi dicatur. — Id.

140. COMPARATIVA interdum exponuntur per *magis*: ut,

Velleius, qui adulatur Tiberio, disertus est magis quàm sapiens;

i. e. Disertus quidem est; sapiens non item.

141. DUO COMPARATIVA eleganter concurrunt: ut,
*Velleius disertior est quàm sapientior: i. e. sapiens quidem est, sed
 non tam sapientiâ clarus, quàm eloquentiâ.*

142. COMPARATIVUM sæpe in Verbo continetur: ut,
Accipere quàm facere præstat injuriam. — Cic.
Ridenda poemata malo,
Quàm te conspicuæ divina Philippica famæ,
Volveris a primâ quæ proxima. — Juv.

143. COMPARATIONES sæpe exprimuntur per præpositiones *ante*, *inter*,
præ, *præter*, *supra*: ut,
Felix ante alias Virgo!
Inter paucos doctus.
Præ nobis beatus.

144. COMPARATIVIS quàm præter spem aliquid accidit, voculæ quàm
pro eleganter adjici solent: ut,

Prælium atrocius erat, quàm pro numero pugnatorum. — Liv.

145. Comparativis item adjiciuntur, *quam ut*, *quam qui*, sequente sub-
 junctivo: ut,

Majus erat imperium Romanum quam ut opprimi posset. —
Flor.

Campani majora deliquerant quam quibus ignosci posset. — Liv.
Major sum, quam cui possit fortuna nocere. — Ovid.

146. TANTO, quanto hoc, eo et quo, cum quibusdam aliis,
 quæ mensuram excessûs significant; item, *ætate* et *natu*,
 comparativis et superlativis sæpe junguntur: ut,

Tanto pessimus omnium poeta,

Quanto tu optimus omnium patronus. — Catull.

Aleator quanto in arte est melior, tanto est nequior. — P. Syr.

Quo plus sunt potæ plus sitiuntur aquæ. — Ovid.

Major et maximus ætate.

Major et maximus natu.

147. SUPERLATIVIS in singulari numero jungitur pronomen *quisque*,
 singulos ejusdem generis eximios significans; in plurali verò, eximios
 diversorum generum: ut,

Optima quæque dies miseris mortalibus ævi

Prima fugit. — Virg.

Si scriptorum sunt antiquissima quæque

Scripta vel optima. — Hor.

Pro jucundis aptissima quæque dabunt Di. — Juv.

148. SUPERLATIVIS adjiciuntur particulae *ut, ita*, cum pronomine *quisque*: *ut*,

Ut quisque optimè dicit, ita maxime dicendi difficultatem pertimescit. — Cic.

149. SUPERLATIVA eleganter exprimuntur per *tam, quam; tantum, quantum*; *ut, qui; is, qui*; adjecto pronomine *qui*: *ut*,

Tam sum mitis, quam qui lentissimus.

Tantum huic tribuo, quantum cui plurimum.

Grata res est, ut quæ maximè.

Eo jure fecit, quo quis optimè.

150. SUPERLATIVIS adjicitur particula *quàm*, verbo *possum* interdum addito: *ut*,

Dicam quàm brevissimè.

Dicam quàm potero brevissimè.

§ 149. — ABLATIVUS POST VERBUM.

151. QUODVIS verbum admittit ablativum sine præpositione, significantem *instrumentum*, aut *causam*, aut *modum* actionis: *ut*,

Hi jaculis, illi certant defendere saxis. — Virg.

Dente lupus, cornu taurus petit.

Et corde et genibus tremit. — Hor.

Vehementer irâ excanduit.

Virum bonum nec prece nec pretio nec gratiâ nec periculo a viâ rectâ deduci oportet. — Cic.

Stulti homines peccasse non anguntur, objurgari verò molestè ferunt; quos contrà oportebat delicto dolere, correctione gaudere.

— Id.

Oderunt peccare boni virtutis amore. — Hor.

Nam deteriores omnes finis licentiâ. — Ter.

Non opibus virtus, sed opes virtute parantur.

Mirâ celeritate rem peregit.

152. ABLATIVO autem *agentis* præfigitur *a* vel *ab* præpositio: *ut*,

Aque lupo teneræ dente petuntur oves.

153. ABLATIVO *modi* interdum additur præpositio, plerumque cum adjectivo: *ut*,

Magnâ cum diligentîâ scripsit. — Cic.

Inde pedem sospes multâ cum laude reflexit. — Catull.

154. QUIBUSDAM verbis subjicitur nomen *pretii* in ablativo casu: ut,

Spem pretio non emo. — Ter.

Teruncio seu ritiosâ nuce non emerim.

Multorum sanguine ea Pœnis victoria stetit. — Liv.

Vendidit hic auro patriam. — Virg.

155. VALOR rei in *genitivo*, PRETIUM verò, quod vel penditur vel poscitur, in *ablativo* ponitur: ut,

Quanti emptæ? Parvo. Quanti ergo? Octussibus. — Hor.

Emere denario, quod est mille denariûm. — Cic.

Quod non opus est, asse carum est. — Sen.

156. VILI, paulo, minimo, magno, nimio, plurimo, dimidio, duplo, per se sæpe ponuntur, subauditâ voce *pretio* vel *spatio*: ut,

Vili venit triticum.

Hibernia minor est dimidio quam Britannia. — Cæs.

157. FLOCCI, nauci, nihili, pili, assis, hujus, teruncii, verbis æstimandi adduntur: ut,

Ego illum flocci non pendo, nèque hujus facio, qui te pili æstimat.

158. Excipiuntur hi genitivi sine substantivis positi: *tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris, tantidem, quantivis, quantilibet, quanticunque*, &c.: ut,

Tanti eris aliis, quanti tibi fueris. — Cic.

Pluris est oculatus testis unus quàm auriti decem. — Plaut.

Multo majoris dîlapæ mecum vèneunt. — Phæd.

159. VERBA abundandi, implendi, onerandi, instruendi, abstinendi, et his diversa, ablativo junguntur: ut,

Amore abundas, Antîpho. — Ter.

Villa abundat porco, hædo, agno, gallinâ, lacte, caseo, melle.
— Cic.

Miserrima est fortuna, quæ inimico caret.

Vacare culpâ maximum est solatium.

Sylla omnes suos divitiis explevit. — Sall.

Te quibus mendaciis homines levissimi onerârunt ! — Cic.

Hæ sunt artes quibus ætas puerilis informari, instrui, et erudiri solet.

Te hoc crimine expèdi. — Ter.

160. Ex quibus quædam nonnunquam genitivum regunt: ut,
Desine mollium tandem querelarum. — Hor.

Abstineto,

Dixit, irarum, calidæque rixæ. — Hor.

Implentur veteris Bacchi, pinguisque ferinæ. — Virg.

Nec medici credis nec curatoris egere. — Hor.

(Gr. Gr. § 132 (g).)

161. Fungor, fruor, utor, vescor, dignor, muto, comunico, supersedeo, ablativo junguntur: ut,

Officiis vitæ bene fungitor: hoc erit, uti

Præsenti vitâ, præteritâque frui.

Quicunque terræ munere vescimur. — Hor.

Haud equidem tali me dignor honore. — Virg.

Diruit, ædificat, mutat quadrata rotundis. — Hor.

Communicabo te mensâ meâ. — Plaut.

Verborum multitudine supersedendum est. — Cic.

162. VERBA sacrificandi ablativo junguntur: ut,
Cum faciam vitulâ pro frugibus, ipse venito. — Virg.
Hæc cædō ut admoveam templis, et farre litabo. — Pers.

163. MEREOR et MEREEO, cum adverbiiis *bene, male, melius, pejus, optime, pessime*, ablativo junguntur cum præpositione *de*: ut,

De me semper benè meritus est.

Si benè quid de te merui. — Virg.

Erasmus de Lingua Latinâ optime meritus est.

164. QUIBUSLIBET verbis et participiis additur ABLATIVUS ABSOLUTE sumptus: ut,

Imperante Augusto, natus est Christus; imperante Tiberio, crucifixus.

Natus est Augustus, M. T. Cicerone et Antonio Coss. — Suet.

Aut ego, lecto

Aut scripto, quod me tacitum juvet, ungor olivo. — Hor.

Pericle Athenis principatum obtinente, Sophocles, Euripides, Aristophanes, Poetae; Phidias, Ictinus, et Calliocrates, Sculptores et Architecti, clari habebantur.

165. ABLATIVUS ABSOLUTUS, pro *si, quum, quamdiu, simulac, quoniam, quamvis*, interdum ponitur: ut,
Me duce, tutus eris. — Ovid.

Neque tu pessima munusculum

Ferres, divite me scilicet artium. — Hor.

Placato possum non miser esse Deo. — Ovid.

Virtutem videant, intabescantque relictâ. — Pers.

Nil juvat amisso claudere septa grege. — Ovid.

Pietate erga Deum sublatâ, fides et societas humani generis tollitur. — Cic.

Nube solet pulsâ candidus ire dies. — Ovid.

Nec patet egressus, pelagi cingentibus undis. — Catull.

Nil desperandum, Teucro duce, et auspice Teucro. — Hor.

Rege incolumi, mens omnibus una est,

Amisso, rupere fidem. — Virg.

Lacrymae cadunt, nolentibus nobis. — Sen.

DE MENSURA, TEMPORE, ET LOCO.

§ 150. — MENSURA.

166. MENSURA, PONDUS, vel QUANTITAS rei postadjectiva et adverbialia in accusativo ponitur, post substantiva in genitivo: ut,

Perpetuae fossae quinos pedes altæ. — Cæs.

Orbis crassus digitos sex. — Cato.

Fossa quindecim pedum. — Cæs.

Corona parvi ponderis. — Liv.

167. ORDINALIA etiam sæpissimè temporis et spatii mensuram exprimunt: ut,

Mithridates ab illo tempore annum jam tertium et vicissimum regnat. — Cic.

Albani ab urbe duodecimo milliaris absunt.

§ 151. TEMPUS.

168. Quæ significant *partem temporis* in ablativo frequentius ponuntur : ut,

Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit. — Plin.

169. Quæ autem *durationem temporis* significant in accusativo ferè ponuntur : ut,

Pericles quadraginta annos præfuit Athenis. — Cic.

Hic jam ter centum totos regnabitur annos. — Virg.

Noctes vigilabat ad ipsum

Mane, diem totum stertebat. — Hor.

Septem horas dormisse, sat est.

§ 152.—SPATIUM LOCI.

170. SPATIUM, *extensio*, et *progressio*, post verba in accusativo, *distantia* vel in accusativo vel ablativo ponitur : ut,

Millia tum pransi tria repimus. — Hor.

Campus Marathon ab urbe Atheniensium abest millia passuum decem. — Nep.

Toto cælo distat.

Medius Titan venientis et actæ

Noctis erat, spatioque pari distabat utrinque. — Ov.

171. Obs. IN HIS, ubi Anglicè dicimus *of*, genitivus adhibetur ; ubi Anglicè abest præpositio, accusativus ; ubi dicimus *by*, ablativus.

Item, *abest bidui* : ubi intelligitur *spatium* vel *spatio*, *iter* vel *itinere*;

§ 153.—NOMINA LOCORUM.

172. OMNE verbum admittit genitivum OPPIDI nominis, in quo fit actio ; modo primæ vel secundæ declinationis, et singularis numeri sit : ut,

Quid Romæ faciam ? mentiri nescio. — Juv.

Archias natus est Antiochiæ, celebri quondam urbe. — Cic.

173. Hi genitivi, *humi*, *domi*, *militiæ*, *belli*, oppidorum sequuntur formam : ut,

Parvi sunt foris arma, nisi est consilium domi. — Cic.

Undè semper militiæ et domi fuimus. — Ter.

174. Verum si OFFIDI nomen pluralis duntaxat numeri, aut tertiæ declinationis fuerit, in ablativo ponitur: ut,

Colchus, an Assyrius; Thebis nutritus, an Argis.—Hor.

Romæ Tibur amem, ventosus, Tibure Romam.—Id.

Talis Fabricius Romæ qualis Aristides Athenis.—Cic.

Vixit Romæ et Venetiis.

175. Obs. Ad loco præpositum valet Anglicè *near*: ut,

Hannibal in Italia erat victor ad Cannas.—Liv.

176. VERBIS significantibus *motum ad locum* ferè additur nomen loci in accusativo sine præpositione: ut,

Concessi Cantabrigiam ad capiendum ingenii cultum.

Quo tendis? non mihi Cumas

Est iter, aut Baias.—Hor.

Paulus Apostolus misit Epistolas Romam, Corinthum, ad Galatas, Ephesum, Philippos, Colossas, Thessalonicam, et ad Timotheum, Titum, et Philemonem.

Eo Londinum ad merces emendas.

177. Ad hunc modum utimur *domus* et *rus*: ut,

Ite domum saturæ, venit Hesperus, ite, capellæ.—Virg.

Ego rus ibo.

178. Obs. *Ruri* et *rure* fuit, dices; sed *rure* venire.

179. Nominibus REGIONUM, MONTIUM, VILLARUM præfiguntur ferè præpositiones: ut,

Ilum in Italiam portans.—Virg.

Ad Amanum iter feci.—Cic.

In Formiano videntur hiematuri.—Id.

Meruit Imperator sub Rege in Galliâ.

180. Obs. Præpositio a Poetis interdum supprimitur: ut,

Italiam, fato præfugus, Lavinaque venit litora.—Virg.

181. INSULÆ autem oppidorum ferè regimen sequuntur: ut

Cretæ jussit considerare Apollo.—Virg.

Æschines Athenis cessit et se Rhodum contulit.—Cic.

Cænon plurimum Cypri vixit, Timotheus Lesbi.—Nep.

182. VERBIS significantibus *motum a loco* ferè additur nomen loci in ablativo sine præpositione: ut,

Nisi antè Româ profectus esses, nunc eam relinqueres.

Dionysius Platonem Athenis arcessit. — Cic.

Demarctus fugit Tarquinius Corintho. — Id.

Eboraco sum facturus iter.

§ 154.—PRONOMINUM CONSTRUCTIO.

183. GENITIVI *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, ponuntur, cùm *persona* significatur: ut,

Languet desiderio tui.

184. MEUS, *tuus, suus, noster, vester*, ponuntur, cùm *actio vel possessio rei* significatur: ut,

Favet desiderio tuo.

185. GENITIVI *nostri, vestri*, ponuntur, cùm OBJECTUM, quo quid *tendit*; *nostrum* vero et *vestrum*, cùm SUBJECTUM, quo quid *constat*, significatur: ut,

Uterque vestrum sit memor nostri, precor.

Grata mihi est memoria nostri tua. — Cic.

Lucill ritu, nostrum melioris utroque. — Hor.

Amor nostri; frequentia vestrum.

186. HÆC POSSESSIVA, *meus, tuus, suus, noster*, et *vester*, hos genitivos post se recipiunt, *ipsius, solius, unius, duorum, trium, omnium, plurium, paucorum, cujusque*, et genitivos participiorum et adjectivorum, qui ad primitivum subauditum referuntur: ut,

Dixi meâ unius operâ rempublicam esse salvam. — Cic.

Cum mea nemo

Scripta legat vulgo recitare timentis. — Hor.

Mea defuncti molliter ossa cubent!

Nostros vidistis flentis ocellos. — Ovid.

Tuum hominis simplicis pectus vidimus. — Cic.

Nostrâ omnium memoriâ.

(Gr. Gr. § 145, Obs.)

187. *Sui et suus reciproca sunt, et semper reflectuntur ad id quod in sententiâ præcipuum est: ut,*

Petrus nimium admiratur se, parcat erroribus suis.

Magnopere Petrus rogat, ne se deserat.

Bis vincit, qui se vincit in victoriâ. — P. Syr.

Minimè sibi quisque notus est. — Cic.

Non sibi sed toti natum se credere mundo. — Lucan.

Etiam capillus unus habet umbram suam. — P. Syr.

Suis et ipsa Roma viribus ruit. — Hor.

Suum cuique tribuito.

Hannibalem sui ex urbe eiecerunt. — Cic.

Trahit sua quemque voluptas. — Virg.

(Vide suprâ, § 35.)

188. Hæc demonstrativa, *hic, is, iste, ille*, sic distinguuntur: *hic*, mihi proximum demonstrat; *is*, de quo mentionem fecimus; *iste*, eum qui apud te est; *ille*, eum qui ab utroque remotus est.

189. *Hic et ille*, cum ad duo anteposita referuntur, *hic* plerumque ad posterius, *ille* ad prius refertur: ut,

Quocunque aspicias, nihil est, nisi pontus et aer,

Nubibus hic tumidus, fluctibus ille minax. — Ovid.

190. *Hic* aliquando ponitur pro *ego*: ut,

Hunc hominem si velles tradere: i. e. me. — Hor.

191. *Ille* emphasim auget: ut,

Aut ille sinit regnator Olympi. — Virg.

Magno illi Alexandro. Medea illa.

Non ille pro caris propinquis

Et patriâ timidus perire. — Hor.

Tunc ille Æneas? — Virg.

Hunc illum fatis externâ sede profectum

Portendi generum. — Id.

Obs. Uti Græcè, ὁὗτος ἐκεῖνος.

192. *Ille*, adjectâ conjunctione *quidem*, opinionem denotat cui aliquid sit detrahendum: ut,

Est tarda illa quidem medicina, sed tamen magna. — Cic.

Est valida illa quidem medicina, sed tamen periculosa.

193. **ILLÆ** et **IS** eleganter in principio sententiæ ponuntur, distinctionis, affectionis, et emphasis exprimendæ gratiâ: ut,

*Ipsæ Pater, mediâ nimborum in nocte, coruscæ
Fulmina molitur dextrâ, quo maxima motu
Terra tremit: fugere feræ, et mortalia corda
Per gentes humilis stravit pavor. ILLÆ flagranti
Aut Atho, aut Rhodopen, aut alta Ceraunia, telo
Dejecit.* — Virg.

*Quo fletu manes, quâ numina voce moveret?
ILLA quidem Stygiâ nabat jam frigida cymbâ.* — Id.
*Cum Proteus, consueta petens e fluctibus antra,
Ibat; EUM vasti circum gens humida ponti
Exultans rorem late dispergit amarum.* — Id.

Sic

Lepores duos qui sequitur, IS neutrum capit. — P. Syr.

194. **IPSE** numeralibus exactè definiendis adhibetur: ut,
*Cato mortuus est annis octoginta tribus ipsis ante me
Consulem.* — Cic.

195. **IPSE** (αὐτός) sæpe *ultro* vel *sponste* significat: ut,
Ipsæ veniunt ad mulctra capellæ. — Hor.
Huc ipsi potum veniunt per prata juvenci. — Virg.

196. **IPSE** *personali pronomini* subicitur, et, si in *actionem* emphasis cadit, ponitur *ipse* in casu recto; si in *passionem*, in obliquo: ut,

Non egeo medicinâ; me ipse consolor. — Cic.

Te ipse vicisti: i. e. nemo alius te vicit.

Te ipsum vicisti: i. e. vicisti eum, quem nemo alius vincere poterat.

197. Pronominibus **IDEM** et **ALIUS** adjiciuntur *qui, ac, et;* et Græcè dativus: ut,

Vesta eadem est quæ terra. — Ovid.

Vita est eadem et animus erga te idem ac fuit. — Liv.

Dissimulatio est cum alia dicis, ac sentias. — Cic.

Eadem nobis jurabis in arma. — Ovid.

Invitum qui servat, idem facit occidenti. — Hor.

Idem rex ille, poema

Qui tam ridiculum tam carè prodigus emittit,

Edicto vetuit, ne quis se præter Apellem

*Pingeret, aut alius Lysippo duceret æra
Fortis Alexandri vultum simulantia. — Id.*

198. **ALIUS** aliquando ablativo jungitur sine præpositione: ut,
Neve putes alium sapiente bonoque beatum. — Hor.

199. *Obs.* Ad diversitatem experimendam **ALIUS** sæpe geminatur: ut,
Nunquam aliud Natura, aliud Sapientia dicit. — Juv.

200. **IS** et **IDEM** cum conjunctionibus ob *emphasim* sæpe ponuntur: ut,
Homo habet memoriam et eam infinitam. — Cic.
Erant in Torquato multæ literæ neque eæ vulgares. — Id.
Operam in res obscuras conferunt, easdemque non necessarias.
— *Id.*

201. **IDEM** usurpatur pro *item*, et *ipse* pro *etiam*: ut,
Nil liberale est, quod non idem fustum. — Cic.
Nil prodest quod non lædere possit idem. — Ovid.
Vespasiano Titus successit, qui et ipse Vespasianus est dictus
— *Eut.*

202. **NEMO** aliquando adhibetur pro *nullus*: ut,
*Nemo pictor est inventus qui Coæ Veneris eam partem, quam
Apelles inchoatam reliquerat, absolveret. — Cic.*

203. **QUI** interrogativum adjectivè. **Quis** substantivè ad-
hibetur: ut,

Qui rex tum Romæ fuit? Quis tum Romæ fuit Rex?

204. **HIS** vocibus, *si, nisi, num, ne, ubi, unde, quo, quanto*,
subjicitur pronomen **quis**: ut,

*Si mala condiderit in quem quis carmina, jus est
Judiciumque. — Hor.*

Nisi quid te detinet, audi. — Hor.

Num quis irascitur tibi?

Ne quis cui noceat. — Cic.

Quid volui? dicēs, ubi quid te læserit. — Hor.

Quo quis callidior, est, hoc suspectior. — Cic.

205. **QUOD SCIAM** pro *quantum sciam* eleganter ponitur: ut,
Nemo, quod sciam, domi est.

206. **QUISQVIS** interdum relationem habet ad verbum *plurale* ut,
Tum procul absitis, quisquis colit arte capillos. — Tib.

207. OMNES voces indirectè positæ, quales sunt, *qui, quis, quantus, quotus, qualis, ut, ubi, cur, &c.*, subjunctivum postulant: ut,

Novit namque omnia vates,

Quæ sint, quæ fuerint, quæ mox ventura trahantur.—Virg.

Vidit quantâ sub nocte jaceret

Nostra dies.—Lucan.

Virtus quo tendat, non quid passura sit, cogitat.—Sen.

Ne tu, quam multis sed quibus placeas, vide.—P. Syr.

Qualem commendes, etiam atque etiam aspice.—Hor.

Experto credite, quantus

In clypeum assurgat, quo turbine torqueat hastam.—Virg.

Tu quotus esse velis, rescribe.—Hor.

Est ubi plus tepeant hymenes?—Id.

Multa quidem dixi, cur excusatus abirem.—Id.

208. Obs. Qui indicativo præfixum rem simpliciter existentem denotat; subjunctivo, rem cum intentione quâdam et deliberatione perfectam: ut,

Virgilius, post hunc Varius, dixere quid essem.—Hor.

Sed, quod eram, narro.—Id.

Disce docendus adhuc quæ censet amicus.—Id.

Senatui quæ sint facienda præscribo.—Cic.

209. QUI post *is sum*, vel cùm in *talis ut* resolvi potest, subjunctivum exigit: ut,

Non tu is es, qui, quid sis, nescias.—Cic.

Ea sunt paranda viatica, quæ cum naufrâgo enitent.

Non civis erat, qui libera posset

Verba animi proferre, et vitam impendere vero.—Juv.

Sunt, qui non habeant.—Hor.

Est, qui vinci possit.—Id.

Condo et compono quæ mox depromere possim.—Id.

Fontesque lymphis obstrêpunt manantibus,

Somnos quod invollet leves.—Id.

210. QUI, cum jungitur verbis *sum, habeo, reperio*, vel adjectivis *dignus, aptus, idoneus*, ferè subjunctivum exigit: ut,

Est mihi purgatam crebrò qui personet aurem.—Hor.

Habes qui

Assideat, fomenta paret.—Id.

Qui modestè pûret, qui aliquando imperet, dignus est.—Cic.

Dignus Aricinos qui mendicaret ad axes.—Juv.

Idonea mihi visa est Lælii persona quæ de Amicitia dissereret.—Cic

211. QUI, *causam* significans, subjunctivum exigit: ut,
Stultus es, qui huic credas.

Nihil habeo quod incusem senectutem. — Cic.

212. QUI, cùm in *ut ego, quamvis ego, quoniam ego, ut tu, quamvis tu, quoniam tu, ut ille, quamvis ille, quoniam ille,* et similia, resolvi potest, subjunctivum exigit: ut,

Major sum, quàm cui possit fortuna nocere: i. e. ut mihi.

Sapiens posteritatem, cujus sensum habiturus non sit, putat ad se pertinere. — Cic. Ubi *cujus* adhibetur pro *quamvis ejus*.

Attamen in vestras potuisti ducere sedes

Quæ tibi jucundo famularer serva labore. — Catull.

§ 155.—VERBA PASSIVA.

213. PASSIVIS additur ablativus agentis, sed antecedente *a* vel *ab* præpositione; et interdum dativus: ut,

Laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis. — Hor.

Honesta bonis viris, non occulta, quærentur. — Cic.

Barbarus hic ego sum, quia non intelligor ulli. — Ovid.

214. Cæteri casus manent in passivis, qui fuerunt activorum: ut,

Accusaris a me furti. Habeberis ludibrio.

Dedoceberis a me istos mores. Privaberis magistratu.

215. VAPULO, veneo, liceo, exulo, fio, passivam significationem habent: ut,

A præceptore vapulabis.

Non ego sed tenuis vapulat umbra mei.

Malo a cive spoliari quàm ab hoste venire.

Virtus parvo pretio licet ab omnibus.

Cur a convivantibus exulet philosophia?

Quid flet ab illo?

216. Verba Passiva interdum reflexivè usurpantur: ut,

Cum in mentem venit, ponor (pono me) ad scribendum. — Cic.

Illuc prævertamur. — Hor.

Clypeumque auroque trilicem
Loricam induitur, fidoque accingitur ense. — Virg.
Atque in se sua per vestigia volvitur annus. — Id.
Qui purgor bilem verni sub temporis horam. — Hor.
Rumperis, et latras, magnorum maxime Regum. — Id.
Traditur e sicco radix oleagina Igno. — Virg.
Parce meam, quisquis tangis cava marmora, somnum
Rumpere; sive bibas, sive lavere, tace. — Epig. Vet.
 (Vide suprâ, § 46.)

§ 156.—VERBA IMPERSONALIA.

217. Hæc impersonalia, *interest* et *rēfert*, quibuslibet genitivis junguntur, præter ablativos *meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ*, et *cujâ* : ut,

Interest magistratûs tueri bonos.

Rēfert omnium animadverti in malos.

Non tam meâ quam reipublicæ interest.

Tuâ refert teipsum nôsse.

Tua quod nil refert percontari desinas. — Ter.

Refert multum Christianæ Reipublicæ Episcopos doctos et pios esse.

Obs. In his *mea, tua, &c.*, ablativos vocamus, auctore Prisciano, xii. 629; xvii. 15. 93.

218. Adduntur et hi genitivi, *tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, quanticunque, tantidem* : ut,

Tanti refert honesta agere.

Magni meâ interest esse privatum.

219. DATIVUM postulant impersonalia acquisitivè posita, ut *placet, libet, licet, liquet* : ut,

A Deo nobis beneficit.

220. Hæc autem impersonalia, *juvat, decet, delectat, oportet, fallit, fugit, præterit*, regunt accusativum : ut,

Me juvat ire per altum.

Teque tuasque decet sorores. — Hor.

Non omnibus, quod libet, licet; nec omnes, quod decet, delectat.

Candida Pax homines, trux decet ira feras. — Ovid.

Viam qui nescit quâ deveniat ad mare,

Eum oportet amnem quærere comitem sibi. — Plaut.

(Vide suprâ, § 76.)

221. His *attinet, pertinet, spectat*, propriè additur præpositio *ad*: ut,

Me vis dicere quod ad te attinet. — Ter.

Spectat ad omnes bene vivere.

222. His impersonalibus *pœnitet, tædet, miseret, miserescit, pudet, piget*, subjicitur accusativus personæ, cum genitivo rei: ut,

Si ad centesimum vixisset annum, senectutis eum suæ non pœniteret. — Cic.

Tædet me harum nugarum.

Miseret me tui.

Geminat delictum, quem peccati non pudet. — P. Syr.

Fratri me quidem piget pudetque. — Ter.

Me puditum est pigitumque tui.

223. Verba, quæ in activâ voce *dativum* exigunt, ferè in passivâ fiunt IMPERSONALIA: ut,

Non bene ripæ

Creditur. — Virg.

Huic ætati favetur, magis quam invidetur. — Cic.

224. VERBUM impersonale passivæ vocis pro singulis personis utriusque numeri eleganter accipi potest: ut,

Non potest jucundè vivi, nisi cum virtute vivatur. — Cic.

Siletur in noctem. — Virg.

Vivitur parvo bene. — Hor.

Totum ex ordine mensem

Pascitur. — Virg.

Usque aded turbatur agris. — Id.

Ventum erat ad limen. — Id.

§ 157.—VERBA INFINITA.

225. VERBIS quamplurimis, præsertim *sensum et affectum* exprimentibus, ut *audio, dico, sentio, credo, promitto, simulo, spero*, (quibus Anglicè adjicitur *that*,) adduntur Verba Infinita: ut,

Audiet cives acuisse ferrum. — Hor.

Esse apibus partem divinæ mentis, et haustus

Ætherios dixere. — Virg.

Illum periisse duco, cui perit pudor. — Plau:

Inclinare meridiem

Sentis? — Hor.

Credimus aliquando corpora humana suscitatum iri.

Vis fieri dives? — Nil cupuisse velis.

Brutus promittit se facturum; simulat se furere; sperat se victurum.

226. Obs. Inter *gaudeo te bene valere et gaudeo quod tu bene vales* hoc interest, quod in illo emphasis cadit in gaudium meum, in hoc in valeditudinem tuam.

(Vide suprâ, § 127. Obs. 2.)

227. Item verbis *potentiam, desiderium, officium, consuetudinem* exprimentibus: ut,

Possum multa tibi veterum præcepta referre. — Virg.

Peccare nemini licet. — Cic.

Quæque dari voluit, voluit sibi posse negari. — Luc.

Debes hoc etiam rescribere. — Hor.

228. Item participiis et adjectivis *qualitatem* denotantibus, et substantivis adduntur Verba Infinita: ut,

Erat tum dignus amari. — Virg.

Immeritus mori. — Hor.

Bruma rigens et nescia vere remitti. — Lucan.

Metuens solvi. — *Levior tolli.* — Hor.

Quidlibet impotens sperare.

Primus vere rosam atque autumnæ carpere poma. — Virg.

Niveus videri. — *Spernere fortior.* — Hor.

Audax omnia perpèti. — Id.

Blandus ducere, — *eludere efficax,* — *fortis tractare.* — Id.

Qualibet in quemvis opprobria fingere sævus. — Id.

*Facinus est vinciri civem Romanum, scelus verberari, prope par-
risidium necari.* — Cic.

Tempus abire tibi.

229. SED VERBIS *intentionem* significantibus; item verbis *rogandi, imperandi, monendi, hortandi, tentandi*, postponitur *subjunctivus* cum *ut* conjunctione (et interdum *quo*) in *affirmando*, et cum *ne* in *negando* et *prohibendo*: ut,

Ut vivas, vigila. — Hor.

Pompeium monere non desistimus ut infamiam fugiat. — Cíc.

Peto a te, vel, si pateris, oro, ut homines miseros conserves. — Id.

Themistocles persuasit populo ut classis ædificaretur. — Nep.

Insuevit pater optimus hoc me,

Ut fugerem exemplis vitiorum quæque notando;

Cùm me hortaretur, parcè, frugaliter, atque

Viverem uti contentus eo quod mi ipse parasset. — Hor.

Fraus mea quid petiit, nisi quò tibi jungerer uni? — Ovid.

Edicto vetuit ne quis se, præter Apellem,

Pingeret. — Hor.

230. Excipe *jubeo* et *veto*, quæ accusativum cum infinitivo exigunt: ut,

Græcus Aristippus, servos qui projicere aurum

In mediâ jussit Libyâ. — Hor.

Qui non vetat peccare, quùm possit, jubet. — Sen.

231. PARTICIPIUM interdum fungitur vice infinitivi: ut,
Sensit medios delapsus in hostes. — Virg.

(Gr. Gr. § 164.)

232. His PRÆTERITIS *memini, vidi, audiui*, et quibusdam aliis eleganter subjicitur infinitivus temporis *præsentis*: ut,

De cælo tactas memini prædicere quercus. — Virg.

Tecum etenim longos memini consumere soles. — Pers.

Postquam te talos, Aule, nucesque

Ferre sinu laxo, donare et ludere vidi;

Te, Tibèri, numerare, cavis abscondere tristem;

Estimui, ne vos ageret vesania discors. — Hor.

233. Ponuntur interdum sola, per ellipsin, verba Infinita: ut,

Hinc spargere voces

In vulgum ambiguas, et quærere conscius arma. — Virg.

(ubi subauditur *incipiebat*).

Hinc exaudiri gemitus, iræque leonum. — Virg.

234. INFINITIVI sæpe ponuntur pro substantivis; ut,
Scribendi rectè sapere est et principium et fons. — Hor
Eximia est virtus præstare silentiæ rebus,
At contra gravis est culpa tacenda loqui. — Ovid.
Imperare sibi maximum est imperium. — Sen.
Turpe est aliud loqui aliud sentire. — Id.
 (Vide suprâ, § 134.)

235. INFINITIVI ponuntur a Poetis loco Gerundivorum: ut,
Quem virum sumis celebrare, Clio? — Hor.
Dederatque comas diffundere ventis. — Virg.
Argenti magnum dat ferre talentum. — Id.

§ 158.—GERUNDIA ET SUPINA.

236. GERUNDIA et SUPINA regunt casus suorum verborum: ut,
Efferor studio patres vestros videndi. — Cic.
Multa novis verbis præsertim cùm sit agendum. — Lucr.
Æternas quoniam pœnas in morte timendum. — Id.
Utendum est aetate, cito pede præterit ætas. — Ovid.
Audiendi non sunt qui irascendum inimicis putant. — Cic.
Scitatum oraculum Phœbi
Mittimus. — Virg.

§ 159.—I. GERUNDIA.

237. GERUNDIA in di eandem quam genitivi constructionem habent, et pendent a quibusdam tum substantivis, tum adjectivis: ut,
Cecropias innatus apes amor urget habendi. — Virg.
Æneas celsâ in puppi jam certus eundi. — Id.
Magister orandi optimus necessitas. — P. Syr.
Quis ignorat maximam illecebram esse peccandi, impunitatis spem?
 — Cic.
Has patitur pœnas peccandi sola Voluntas. — Juv.
Ars amandi; cura colendi.

238. GERUNDIA in *do* eandem quam dativi et ablativi, constructionem obtinent: ut,

Hic aqua potando benè commoda, panis edendo.

Si non est solvendo, præs pro eo solvere debet.

Scribendi ratio conjuncta cum loquendo est. — Quinct.

Nihil agendo malè agere homines discunt. — Colum.

Injurias ferendo quam ulciscendo majorem laudem mereberis.

— Cic.

Alitur vitium, vivitque tegendo. — Virg.

Fando pervenit ad aures. — Id.

239. CUM significatur necessitas, ponuntur Gerundia in *dum* et eandem quam nominativi constructionem obtinent: ut,

Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano. — Juv.

Faciendum id nobis, quod parentes imperant. — Plaut.

Imprimis videndum erit ei qui Rempublicam administrabit, ut suum quisque teneat. — Cic.

Vigilandum est ei, qui cupit vincere.

240. GERUNDIA in *dum*, eandem etiam quam accusativi constructionem obtinent: ut,

Locus ad agendum amplissimus. — Cic.

Ante domandum

Ingentes tollunt animos. — Virg.

241. PARTICIPIA in *dus* i. e. verborum quæ accusativum regunt, sæpe gerundiorum loco adhibentur et appellantur GERUNDIVA: ut,

Ad accusandos homines duci præmio, proximum latro cinio est. — Cic.

Qui cultus habendo

Sit pecori. — Virg.

Omnis loquendi elegantia augetur legendis oratoribus et poetis.

— Cic.

Demosthenes erat studiosus Platonis audiendi. — Id.

242. SUM, causam significans, jungitur participiis in *dus* casus genitivi et dativi: ut,

Regium imperium libertatis conservandæ fuit. — Sall.

Est etiam ille labor curandis vitibus alter. — Virg.

243. GERUNDIVA usurpantur loco substantivorum : ut,
Ante conditam condendamve urbem. — Liv.

Regulus captus a Pœnis de commutandis captivis Romam missus est.

Timotheus peritus erat civitatis regendæ. — C. Nep.

Palpebræ ad claudendas et ad aperiendas pupillas sunt aptissima. — Cic.

Semper in augendâ festinat et obruitur re. — Hor.

II. SUPINA.

244. SUPINUM in *um* activè significat, et sequitur verbum, aut participium, significans motum ad locum : ut,

Spectatum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsæ. — Ovid.

Cur te is perditum ? — Ter.

Lusum it Mæcenæ, dormitum ego Virgiliusque. — Hor.

Milites sunt missi speculatum arcem.

245. SUPINUM in *u* passivè significat, et sequitur nomina adjectiva : ut,

Mala tactu vipera. — Virg.

Quod factu fœdum est, idem est et dictu turpe.

Sapiens vitatu quidque petitu

Sit melius, causas reddet tibi. — Hor.

246. Sequitur etiam *opus, fas, nefas* : ut,

Opus dictu ; fas conspectu ; nefas scriptu.

§ 160. — PARTICIPIORUM CONSTRUCTIO.

247. — PARTICIPIA regunt casus verborum a quibus derivantur : ut,

Duplices tendens ad sidera palmas,

Talia voce refert. — Virg.

248. PARTICIPIIS passivæ vocis additur interdum dativus, præsertim si exeunt in *dus* : ut,

Magnus civis obît, et formidatus Othoni. — Juv.

Restat jam Chremes, qui mihi exorandus est. — Ter.

§ 160, 161.] PARTICIPIORUM CONSTRUCTIO.

249. PARTICIPIA, cum fiunt nomina, sæpè g
mittunt: ut,

Alieni appetens, sui profusus. — Sall.

250. PARTICIPIA interdum supplent locum substantivi: ut.

Ante conditam condendamve urbem. — Liv.

Amissæ virginis irâ. — Virg.

Saguntum urbs deleta causa secundi belli Punici fuit.

251. EXOSUS et perosus activè significant, et accusativum exigunt: ut,

Exosus ad unum

Trojanos. — Virg.

Genus omne perosus

Fæmineum. — Id.

252. NATUS, prognatus, satus, cretus, creatus, ortus, editus, ablativum exigunt, et sæpè cum præpositione: ut,

Bona bonis prognata parentibus. — Ter.

Sate sanguine divum! — Virg.

Quo sanguine cretus. — Id.

Venus orta mari mare præstat eunti. — Ovid.

Terrâ editus.

Edita de magno flumine nympa fui.

253. PARTICIPIA Poeticè usurpantur loco substantivorum; ut, *Volantes pro aves; Natantes pro pisces; Balantes pro oves; Silentes pro umbræ; Medentes pro medici; Colentes pro agricolæ.*

§ 161. — PECULIARIS USUS TEMPORUM.

254. PRÆSENTIS vice, in litteris dandis, adhibentur IMPERFECTUM et PRÆTERITUM: ut,

Hæc tibi dictabam post funum putre Vacunæ. — Hor.

Pridie idus hæc scripsi ante lucem. — Cic.

Obs. In his omnibus non ad scribentem sed ad lecturum est relatio.

255. Pro PRÆTERITO ponitur PRÆSENS, quod historicum appellatur: ut,

Roma crescit Albæ ruinis, duplicatur civium numerus, Cælius urbi additur mons, eam sedem Tullus regiæ capit. — Liv.

256. PERFECTUM eleganter usurpatur de rebus uno in petu confectis : ut,

Terra tremit ; fugère feræ. — Virg.

Brutus si conservatus sit, vicinus ! — Cic.

Si hunc animum habueritis, vicinus, milites ! — Liv.

257. PERFECTUM etiam eleganter exprimit id quod fieri solet : ut,

Qui studet optatam cursu contingere metam

Multa tulit fecitque puer. — Hor.

Rege incolumi, mens omnibus una ;

Amisso, rupère fidem, constructaque mella

Diripère ipsæ, et crates solvère favorum. — Virg.

Hinc radios trivèrè rotte, hinc tympana plaustris

Agricolæ. — Virg.

258. IMPERFECTUM et PLUSQUAM-PERFECTUM INDICATIVI interdum plusquam-perfecti *subjunctivi* locum supplent : ut,

Me truncus illapsus cerebro

Sustulerat, nisi Faunus ictum

Dextrâ levâsset. — Hor.

Si non alium latè jactaret odorem,

Laurus erat. — Virg.

Antoni gladios poterat contemnere, si sic

Omnia dixisset. — Juv.

259. FUTURUM PRIMUM urbanitatis gratiâ pro *imperativo* adhibetur : ut,

Nec verbum verbo curabis reddere, fidus

Interpres. — Hor.

260. DUE res FUTURÆ tribus modis enunciantur : — Si UTRAQUE eventura est *simul*, utraque in FUTURO PRIMO ponitur : ut,

Beati erimus, cùm, corporibus relictis, cupiditatum erimus expertes. — Cic.

Loqui ignorabit, qui tacere nesciet.

Quare, si sapiet, viam vorabit. — Catull.

Dicam, si potero.

Obs. CAVE dicas, dicam, faciam, &c., si possum.

261. Si *illâ* confectâ, hæc eventura est, hæc in FUTURO PRIMO ponitur, illa in FUTURO SECUNDO : ut,

Non, si te ruperis, inquit,

Par eris. — Hor.

In amicitia, cum judicaveris, diliges; non cum dilexeris, judicabis.

— Cic.

De Carthagine vereri non ante desinam, quam illam esse excisam cognovero. — Id.

Carmina tum melius, cum venerit ipse, canemus. — Virg.

Tempora si fuerint nubila, solus eris. — Ovid.

Solas, quas dederis, semper habebis, opes. — Mart.

262. Si *utraq*ue conficietur *simul*, *utraq*ue in FUTURO SECUNDO ponitur: ut,

Qui Antonium oppresserit, bellum confecerit. — Cic.

Qui utramvis recte noverit, ambas noverit. — Ter.

Frustra vitium vitaveris illud,

Si te aliud pravam detorseris. — Hor.

263. FUTURUM SECUNDUM comiter et modestè adhibetur vice *futuri primi*, præsertim post conjunctionem: ut,

Non possidentem multa vocaveris

Rectè beatum. — Hor.

Haud paravero,

Quod aut, avarus ut Chremes, terræ premam,

Discinctus aut perdam nepos. — Id.

Ah, si pergis, abiero. — Ter.

264. Sic Præsens Subjunctivum vice Futuri Indicativi: ut,

Ubi te socordia dederis, nequidquam Deos implores. — Sall.

265. PERFECTUM *potentiale* sententiam modestè exprimit; interdum vice *imperativi*: ut,

Nil ego contulerim jucundo sanus amico. — Hor.

Non alios primæ nascentis origine mundi

Iluxisse dies, aliumve habuisse tenorem

Crediderim. — Virg.

Quod dubitas, ne feceris. — Cic.

Nullum, Vare, sacræ vite prius severis arborem. — Hor.

Tecum habita, et nôris quàm sit tibi curta supellex. — Pers.

266. Inter FUTURUM PRIMUM et FUTURUM IN RUS hoc distat: *illud* rem *haud dubiè futuram*, *hoc intentionem* tantum præsentem, indicat: ut,

Hi qui non vivunt, sed semper victuri sunt, nunquam vivent.

267. TEMPORA INFINITIVI a Poetis inter se permutantur: ut
Fertur Prometheus addere principi
Limo coactus particulam undique*
Desectam.—Hor.

Dictus et Amphion, Thebanæ conditor arcis.

Saxa movere sono testudinis.—Id.

Magnum si pectore possit

Excussisse Deum.—Virg.

§ 162.—CONSECUTIO TEMPORUM.

268. ABSOLUTIS temporibus absoluta tempora, RELATIVIS relativa subjiuntur.

(Obs. Vide suprâ, § 49.)

269. PRÆSENTI, PERFECTO (*indefinito*, vide suprâ, § 48.), FUTURO, et IMPERATIVO, subjiuntur *Præsens* Subjunctivi, ubi res adhuc duret; *Perfectum*, ubi res confecta sit; *Futurum in rus*, ubi postea eventura sit: ut,

Gens nulla est, quæ non laudet tua carmina, Publî;

Nulla, tuos versus quæ non laudaverit, ætas;

Nulla, tuas quæ non sit laudatura Camænas.

Vidit enim, quæ sint, fuerint quæ, sintque futura.

Jam scribam, quid dem, dederim quid, sinque daturus.

Dic mihi tu, quid agat, quod venerit, et sit iturus.

270. IMPERFECTO PERFECTO (*definito*), et PLUSQUAM-PERFECTO, subjiuntur *Imperfectum* Subjunctivi, ubi de re *contemporaneâ* agitur; *Plusquam-Perfectum*, ubi de *præteritâ*; *Futurum in rus*, ubi de *futurâ*: ut,

Dubitabam, ubi essem, quid fecissem, et quid facturus essem.

* Legendum videtur *coactis*,—ita ut ordo verborum sit, *Fertur Prometheus addere principi limo particulam desectam* (ab animalibus) *coactis undique*

Quævisit, ubi esset, unde venisset, quo iturus esset?

Scripseram, cur neque darem, neque dedissem, neque essem daturus.

§ 163.—PECULIARIS USUS MODORUM.

271. INDICATIVUS ferè ponitur post pronomina composita, *quisquis, quicunque*, et post conjunctiones illativas, *ut — ut, unde — unde*, et similia; item post *sive — sive, seu — seu*, quàm de re vel præsentis vel futuræ agitur: ut,

*Seu me tranquilla senectus
Expectat, seu mors atris circumvolat alis,
Quisquis erit vitæ, scribam, color. — Hor.*

272. SUBJUNCTIVUS autem, ubi res supponitur, quæ fortasse accidat: ut,
Mæcenas vir, ubi res vigiliam exigeret, exsomnia. — Vell.

273. INDICATIVUS rem exprimit quæ fieri debebat, neque tamen facta est: ut,

Æquum erut; poterat; satius fuit.

274. Notanda etiam sunt; *longum est; infinitum est, pro esset.*

275. PARTICIPIA eleganter ponuntur pro indicativo et infinitivo: ut,
Est apud Platonem Socrates dicens Critoni, sibi post tertium diem moriendum esse. — Cic.

Illud te monitum volo. — Ter.

Curâ te levatum volo. — Cic.

Totam rem Lucullo integram servatam oportuit — opus fuit Hirtio convento. — Cic.

§ 164.—CIRCUMSCRIPTIO IMPERATIVI.

276. IMPERATIVUS hortandi et prohibendi sæpe verborum circumscriptione exprimitur: ut,

Fac intelligam, fac valeas, nolo dicas, contendere noli, cave credas; et poeticè, fuge suspicari, mitte sectari, parce timere, omitte mirari, absiste precari, desine sperare, et similia.

§ 165.—ORATIO OBLIQUA.

277. ORATIO *obliqua* dicitur, ubi narrat quis, quæ ipse vel quæ alius dixerit.

278. IN ORATIONE OBLIQUA, res *principales* in infinitivo, res *parentheticæ* in subjunctivo ponuntur: ut,

*Non, ut magna dolo factum negat esse suo pars,
Quòd non ingenuos habeat clarosque parentes,
Sic me defendam.* — Hor.

*Certè hinc Romanos olim, volventibus annis,
Hinc fore ductores, revocato a sanguine Teucri,
Qui mare qui terras omnes ditione tenerent,
Pollicitus.* — Virg.

*Sese interea, quando optima Dido
Nesciat, et tantos rumpi non speret amores,
Tentaturum aditus, et quæ mollissima fandi
Tempora.* — Id.

*Post paulò scribit, sibi millia quinque
Esse domi chlamydatum: partem vel tolleret omnes.* — Hor.
*Præclare Socrates hanc viam ad gloriam proximam et quasi com-
pendiariam dicebat esse, si quis id ageret, ut, qualis haberi vellet,
talis esset.* — Cic.

*Socrates dicere solebat omnes, in eo quod scirent, satis esse elo-
quentes.* — Cic.

*Fore enim tutum iter et patens
Converso in pretium Deo.* — Hor.

§ 166. — ADVERBIORUM CONSTRUCTIO.

279. EN et ecce, demonstrandi adverbia, nominativo frequentiùs junguntur, accusativo rariùs: ut,

En Priamus. — Virg.

*En quatuor aras;
Ecce duas tibi, Daphni, duoque altaria Phæbo.* — Virg.

280. EN et ecce, exprobrandi, soli accusativo junguntur: ut,
En animum et mentem. — Juv.

281. QUÆDAM adverbia loci, temporis, et quantitatis, genitivum admittunt —

Locī; ut, *ubi, ubinam, nusquam, eo, longè, quo, ubivis, hucine,* &c.: ut,

Ubi gentium? — Hor.

Ubicumque locorum

Vivitis. — Hor.

Quo terrarum abiit?

Nusquam loci invenitur.

Eo impudentiæ ventum est.

Minimè gentium.

TEMPORIS; ut, *nunc, tunc, tum, interea, pridie, postridie, &c.*: ut,

Nihil tunc temporis amplius, quàm flere, poteram.

Pridie ejus diei pugnam inierunt.

Pridie calendarum, vel calendas.

QUANTITATIS; ut, *parum, sat, abundè, &c.*: ut,

Sat habet favitorum semper, qui recte facit. — Plaut.

Satis eloquentiæ, sapientiæ parùm. — Sall.

Abundè fabularum audivimus.

282. **QUÆDAM** casus admittunt nominum unde deducta sunt: ut,

Summum bonum dicitur a Stoicis, convenienter naturæ vivere.

— Cic.

Proxime Hispaniam Mauri sunt. — Sall.

Melius, vel optime, omnium. — Cic.

Amplius opinione morabatur. — Sall.

Sibi inutiliter vivit.

283. **ADJECTIVA**, in neutro genere, ponuntur adverbialiter: ut,

Torva tuens. Dulce ridens. Sole recens orto.

Gratius ex ipso fonte bibuntur aquæ. — Ov.

(Gr. Gr. § 125.)

284. Pro *Adverbiis* usurpantur *Adjectivi*, præsertim apud Poetas: ut,

Aeneas se matutinus agebat: i. e. mane. — Virg.

285. **ADVERBIA** diversitatis, *aliter, secus*; et illa duo, *ante, post*, ablativo non raro junguntur: ut,

Multo aliter. Paulo secus.

Multo ante. Paulo post.

Longo post tempore venit. — Virg.

286. **INSTAR** (like) et *ergo* (on account of) genitivum post se habent: ut,

Instar montis equum divinâ Palladis arte

Ædificant. — Virg.

Donari virtutis ergo. — Cic.

287. **ADVERBII** diversitatis et similitudinis: ut, *æque, juxta, pariter, perinde, aliter, contra, secus*, adduntur particulae *ac, atque*: ut,

In medias res

Non secus ac notas auditorem rapit. — Hor.

§ 167.—CONJUNCTIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

288. **CONJUNCTIONES** copulativæ et disjunctivæ, similes casus, modos, et tempora conjungunt: ut,

Socrates docuit Xenophontem et Platonem.

Recto stat corpore, despicitque terras.

Nec scribit, nec legit.

289. **NISI** variæ constructionis ratio aliter poscat: ut,

Emi librum centussi et pluris.

Nisi me lactâsses amantem et falsâ spe produceres,

Vixit Romæ et Venetiis.

§ 168.—QUIBUS VERBORUM MODIS QUÆDAM CONGRUANT ADVERBIA ET CONJUNCTIONES.

290. **AN, NE NUM**, dubitativè et indefinitè posita, subjunctivo junguntur: ut,

Nihil refert fecerisne an persuaseris.

Vise, num redierit.

291. **CUM** (*when*) *temporalis* conjunctio, indicativo et subjunctivo; *causalis* (*since*) et *concessiva* (*although*) subjunctivo, jungitur: ut,

Facile omnes, cum valemus, recta consilia ægrotis damus. — Ter.

Teucer Salamina patremque

Cum fugeret. — Hor.

Cum tot sustineas et tanta negotia solus. — Id.

Cum feriant unum, non unum fulmina terrent. — Ov.

292. **DUM** pro *dummodo* (*provided that*), *dum, quoad* et *donec* pro *quousque* (*until*) de futurâ re, subjunctivum postulant: ut,

Dum prosim tibi. — Ter.

Tertia dum regnantem viderit ætas — Virg.

Carus eris Romæ, donec te deserat ætas. — Hor.

Donec templa refeceris. — Id.

293. Sed, de præteritâ, admittunt indicativum : ut,
Cervus equum pugnâ melior communibus herbis
Pellebat, donec, minor in certamine longo,
Imploravit opes hominis, frænumque recepit. — Hor.

294. *Dum (while)* de re præsentî, indicativo jungitur : ut,
Pæne, macros, arsit, dum turdos versat in igne. — Hor

295. *Ne*, prohibendi sensu, jungitur subjunctivo : ut,
Ne facias hoc.
Immortalia ne speres, monet annus. — Hor.

296. *ANTEQUAM*, *priusquam*, et *postquam*, cum rem certam denotant, indicativo junguntur : ut,

Membris utimur priusquam didicimus cujus ea utilitatis causa habeamus. — Cic.

Tyrus septimo post mense quam oppugnari cœpta est, capta erat.

297. Sed in incertis, subjunctivo : ut,
Annus octogesimus admonet ut sarcinas colligam, antequam proficiscar e vita. — Varro, R. R.

298. *CONJUNCTIONES quin, quominus*, subjunctivum, post negationem vel prohibitionem vel impedimentum, exigunt : ut,

Nihil est, quin malè narrando possit depravarier — Ter.

Nec requies ; quin, aut pomis exuberet annus,

Aut fætu pecorum, aut cerealis mergite culmi. — Virg.

Quis est, quin audiverit ?

Senectus nihil obstat, quominus litterarum studia teneamus. —

Cic.

Nihil obstat quin trabe vastâ

Ægæum rapias. — Pers.

299. *Quin* autem interrogativè sumptum, vel pro *præterea*, indicativo jungitur : ut,

Quin potius præm æternam pactosque hymenæos

Exercemus ? — Virg.

Quin corpus onustum

Hesternis vitiis animum quoque prægravat una. — Hor.

300. CONDITIONI exprimendæ inserviunt *si, si forte, modo, nisi, et similia* : —

301. *Nisi et si* subjunctivo junguntur cum *causam ætalem*, indicativo cum *conditionem coexistentem*, significant : ut,

Non potest jucundè vivi, nisi cum virtute vivatur. — Cic.

Parvi sunt foris arma, nisi est consilium domi. — Id.

Si incolæ bene sunt morati, pulcre munitum oppidum ! — Plaut.

302. CONDITIO, si nudè dicitur, ponitur in *indicativo* ; si opineris eam vel veram esse vel verisimilem, in *præsente subjunctivi* ; si minus veram aut minus verisimilem, in *imperfecto* vel (de re præteritâ, in) *plusquamperfecto subjunctivi* : ut,

Ut moneam, si quid monitoris eges tu. — Hor.

Tamen hæc quoque, si quis

Inserat, aut scrobibus mandet mutata subactis,

Exuerint silvestrem animum. — Virg.

Si valeant homines, ars tua, Phæbe, jacet. — Ovid.

Si, quantum cuperem, possem quoque. — Hor.

Non, si plura velim, tu dare denêges. — Id.

Non dare, Mæcenas, vellem si plura, negares,

Non, si, Mæcenas, voluissem plura, negâsses.

Si foret in terris, rideret Democritus. — Hor.

Et, si non aliquâ nocuisses, mortuus esses. — Virg.

303. Si interdum, de re factâ, jungitur *indicativo* : ut,
Credebant hoc grande nefas, et morte piandum,
Si juvenis vetulo non assurrexerat. — Juv.

304. Si *ut, ne, ac, licet* interdum subaudiuntur : ut,
Merses profundo, pulchrior evenit. — Hor.
Verterit hunc dominus, momento turbintis exit
Marcus Dama ! — Pers.
Græcûlus esuriens in cælum, jussaris, ibit. — Juv.
Rex velit honesta, nemo non eadem volet. — Sen.
Velim Cæcilio, papyre, dicas
Veronam veniat. — Catull.
Valeat possessor oportet,
Si comportatis rebus bene cogitat uti. — Hor.
Dile
Ad cœnam veniat. — Id.

Cavē, faxis,

Te quidquam indignum. — Hor.

Taygētē simul os terris ostendit honestum. — Virg.

Naturam expellas furcā, tamen usque recurret. — Hor.

305. *Etsi, tametsi, licet*, et similia, cum rem revera existentem denotant, indicativo: cum rem suppositam tantum, subjunctivo, junguntur: ut,

Quamvis est igitur meritis indebita nostris,

Magna tamen spes est in bonitate Dei.

306. *Obs.* *Quamvis sit*, dubitantis esset, num non esset debita.

307. *Ut pro quā (how !), postquam, sicut, et quomodo*, indicativo jungitur: cum autem *quanquam, utpote, vel finalem causam* denotat, subjunctivo: ut,

Ut sæpe summa ingenia in occulto latent

Ut sumus in Ponto, ter frigore constitit Ister. — Ovid.

Ut tute es, ita omnes censes esse. — Plaut.

Ut valet ? ut meminit nostri ? — Hor.

Ut desint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas.

Non est tibi fidendum, ut qui toties sefellere.

Te oro, Dave, ut redeat jam in viam. — Ter.

Edit ut vivat, non vivit ut edat.

308. *Post verba timendi, ut negat, ne affirmat: ut,*

O Puer, ut sis

Vitalis, metuo, et majorum ne quis amicus

Frigore te feriat. — Hor.

Ne quid

Summā deperdat, metuens, aut ampliet ut rem. — Id.

309. *Ut, post adeo; ita, sic, tam*, et similia, subjunctivum exigit: ut,

Nemo adeo ferus est, ut non mitescere possit,

Si modo cultura patientem commodet aurem. — Hor.

310. *Ut, post impersonalia, est, accidit, placet, restat, sequitur, expedit, usu venit, tantum abest*, et similia, subjunctivum exigit: ut,

Est ut viro vir latius ordinet

Arbusta sulcis. — Hor.

Restat, ut his ego me ipse regam solerque elementis. — Id.

311. *Obs.* Elliptica sunt

Te ut ulla res frangat ! Tu ut unquam te corrigas ! — Cic.

h. e. Minime credam fore ut.

§ 169.—PRÆPOSITIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

312. PRÆPOSITIO in compositione eundem ferè casum regit, quem et extra compositionem regebat : ut,

Detrudunt naves scopulo.—Virg.

Prætereo te insalutatum.

313. VERBA composita cum *a, ab, ad, con, de, e, ex, in*, nonnunquam repetunt easdem præpositiones cum suo casu extra compositionem, idque eleganter : ut,

Abstinerunt a vino.

314. IN, pro *erga, contra, ad et supra*, accusativum exigit : ut,
Accipit in Teucros animum, mentemque benignam.—Virg.

In commoda publica peccem.—Hor.

In regnum quaritur hæres.

Reges in ipsos imperium est Jovis.

315. PER *adjurandi* ferè interpositâ voce a suo nomine separatur : ut,
Per te Deos oro.

*Per ego has lacrymas, dextramque tuam, te
Oro.*—Virg.

316. SUB, cum *ad tempus* refertur, accusativo ferè jungitur : ut,
Sub idem tempus : i. e. circa, vel per idem tempus.—Liv.
Sub galli cantum.—*Sub Trojæ funera.*—Hor.

317. SUPER, pro *ultra*, accusativo ; pro *de*, ablativo apponitur : ut,
*Super et Garamantas et Indos
Proferet imperium.*—Virg.

Multa super Priamo rogilians, super Hectore multa.—Id.

318. TENUS ablativo et singulari et plurali jungitur : ut,
Pube tenus.—*Pectoribus tenus.*—Ovid.

Et semper casum suum sequitur : ut,
Crurum tenus.—Virg.

319. PRÆPOSITIO interdum ponitur suum *inter* substantivum et adjectivum : ut,

*Te propter eundem
Extinctus pudor.*—Virg.

Fronde super viridi.—Id.

320. Interdum *post* suum substantivum : ut,
Vitiis nemo sine nascitur.—Hor.

Transtra per et remos et pictas abiete puppes.—Virg.

321. CUM *postponitur* pronominibus *me, te, se, nobis, vobis* ; et aliquando *quī, quibus* : ut. *mecum, tecum, quicum, quibuscum.*

§ 170.—INTERJECTIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

322. NOMINA interdum fiunt interjectiones : ut,

Pecudesque locuta,
Infandum ! Sistunt amnes.—Virg.

323. O, exclamantis, nominativo, accusativo, et vocativo, jungitur : ut,

O festus dies hominis !—Ter.

O fortunatos nimium, sua si bona norint,
Agrícolas.—Virg.

O formose puer ! nimium ne crede colori.—Id.

324. HEU et *proh*, nunc nominativo, nunc accusativo, junguntur : ut,

Heu pietas, heu prisca fides !—Virg.

Heu stirpem invisam !—Id.

Proh Jupiter, tu, homo, adigis me ad insaniam !—Ter.

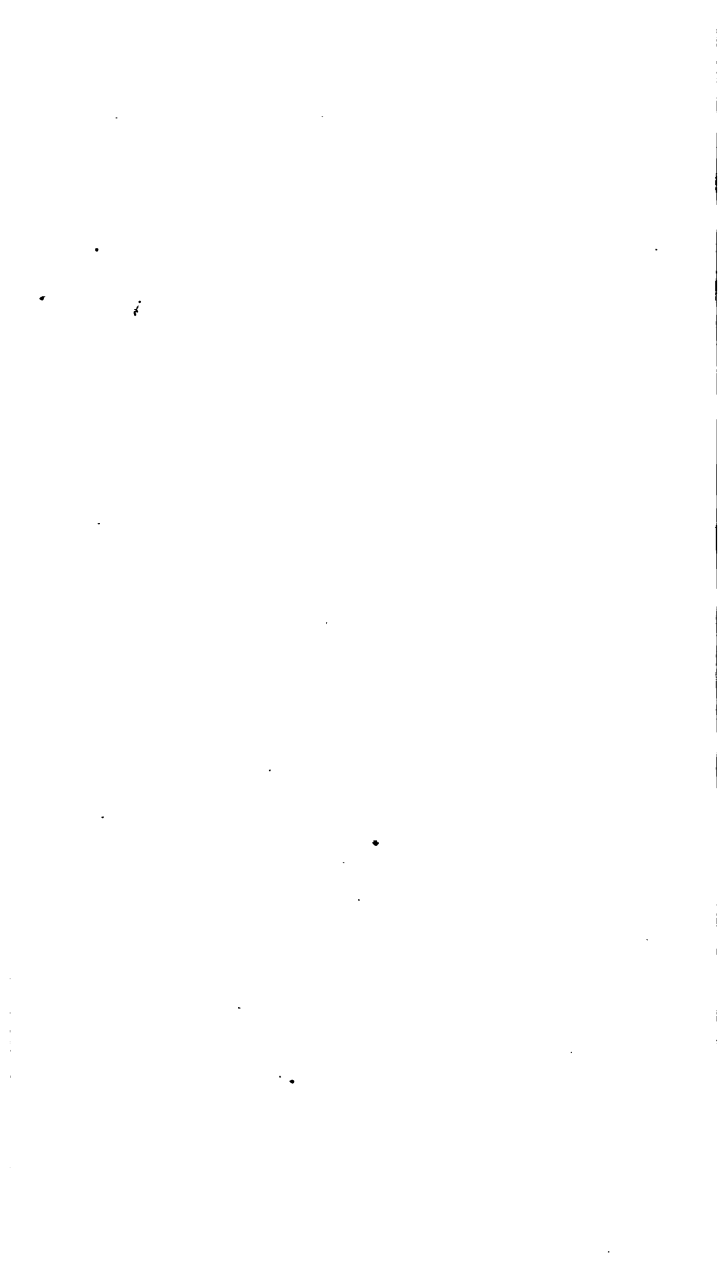
Proh deū atque hominum fidem !

item vocativo. *Proh sancte Jupiter !*—Cic.

325. HEI et *væ* dativo junguntur : ut,

Hei mihi, quod nullis amor est medicabilis herbis !—
Ovid.

Væ misero mihi, quantā de spe decidi !—Ter.



PROSODIA.

§ 171.—DEFINITIONES.

1. PROSODIA est pars Grammaticæ, quæ quantitatem syllabarum docet.

2. TEMPUS est syllabæ proferendæ mensura.

Tempus breve sic notatur: ut, *Dōmīnūs*. Longum autem sic: ut, *cōntrā*; commune sic √.

3. PES duarum syllabarum plurimum constitutio est, ex certâ Temporum observatione.

SPONDEUS duabus longis fit: ut, *vīrtūs*.

DACTYLUS unâ longâ et brevibus duabus: ut, *scrībĕrĕ*.

4. SCANSIO est legitima versûs in pedes distributio.

Scansioni accidunt figuræ, *Synalæpha*, *Ecthlipsis*, *Synæresis*, *Dierësis* (συναλοιφή, ἐκθλιψις, συναίρεσις, διαίρεσις).

5. SYNALÆPHA est elisio vocalis vel diphthongi in *fine* dictionis, ante alteram vocalem vel diphthongum in initio sequentis: ut,

Sera nimis vit' est crastīna, — viv' hodie. — Mart.
pro *vita, vive*. Sic

Dardanid' infensi pœnas cum sanguine poscunt. — Virg.
pro *Dardanidæ*.

Heu et o nunquam intercipiuntur.

Obs. 1. Diphthongus ante eandem diphthongum vel brevem vocalem non elidenda est.

Obs. 2. Aliquando *Synalæpha* fit etiam in *fine versûs* : ut,
Omnia Mercurio similis vo|cemque co|lorem|que
Et crines flavos, et membra decora juvenatæ. — Virg.
Inseritur verò factu nucus | arbütus | horrid|a,
Et steriles platani malos gessere valentes. — Id.

Aliquando vocalis ante vocalem non eliditur : ut,
Ter sunt cona|ti im|ponere | Telio | Ossam.
 (Vide infra, § 173. p. 190.)

6. **ECTHLIPSIS** est quoties litera **M** cum suâ vocali perimitur, proximâ dictione a vocali exorsâ : ut,
Monstr' horrend' informe ingens, cui lumen ademptum.
 — Virg.

pro *monstrum, horrendum.*

Et aliquando litera **S** : ut, *hõrridũ' miles* pro *horridus miles*, et similia, apud Ennium ; et *Tum laterali' dolor certissimu' nunciu' mortis*, apud Lucretium.

7. **CRASIS** sive **SYNÆRESIS** est duarum syllabarum in unam contractio : ut,
Seu lento fuerint alvearia vimine texta. — Virg.
 quasi scriptum esset *alvāria*.

Sic passim, vocalis brevis ante alteram vocalem in unam longam coalescit, ut, *prõinde, prõinde* ; sic, *dēin, dēinde, dēest, dēeram, rēice, dēeraveram, quoad, a dēin, dēinde, &c.* ; cum quibusdam aliis ; ut, *pītũta, pītũta* : *gēõmetres, gēõmetres*.

Sic *ābĩete, pāriete, gēnũa, flũvĩõrũm, tēnũla*, quasi scripta essent *ābjēte, pārjēte, gēnva, flũvjõrum, tēnvia*.

Sic *Nasĩdĩēnus*, quasi scriptum esset *Nasĩdjēnus*, apud Horatium. (*Bentl.*)

8. **DIÆRESIS** est, ubi ex unâ syllabâ fiunt duæ : ut,
Debuerant fusos evolũisse suos. — Ov. Ep.
evolũisse pro *evolvisse*. Sic *silũæ* aliquando pro *silvæ*.

9. **ARSIS** (ἀρσις) sive **ICTUS** est *elatio*, **THESIS** (θέσις) est *depressio* vocis.

Ar̄sis in Heroicis versibus in *primam* syllabam pedis cadit : cæteræ syllabæ pedis dicuntur esse in *thesi*.

Obs. *Crasi*, ligas resoluta ; *Diæresi*, juncta resolvit ;
 Vox *arsi* surgit ; deprimiturque *thesi*.

Post pedem absolutum syllaba *brevis* in fine dictionis aliquando vi ictûs *producitur* : ut,

Pectori|bûs inhi|ans spirantia consulit exta.—Virg.
ubi *bus*, naturâ *brevis*, ictu *producitur*.

10. VERSUS HEROICUS, qui *Hexameter* etiam dicitur, constat sex pedibus seu metris; quintus locus dactylum, sextus spondeum sibi vindicat; reliqui hunc vel illum, prout volumus: ut,

Titÿrĕ, | tû pătŭ|lĕ rĕcŭ|bāns sŭb |tĕgmĭnĕ |fāgĭ.—Virg.
Hic syllabæ *ti, tu, læ, bans, teg, fā*, sunt in arsi cæteræ in *thesi*.

Reperitur aliquando, post dactylum, spondeus etiam in quinto loco: ut,
Cārĕ Dĕ|ŭm sŏbŏ|lĕs mĕg|nŭm Jŏvis | ĩncrĕ|mĕntŭm. | — Virg.
et rarius post spondeum: ut,

Saxa per et scopulos et depressas convalles. — Virg.

11. VERSUS ELEGIACUS, qui et *Pentameter* vocatur, duabus constat partibus: quarum prior duos pedes, vel dactylicos vel spondiacos, habet, cum syllabâ longâ; altera etiam duos pedes, sed dactylicos tantum, cum syllabâ: ut,

Rĕs ĕst sŏlĭcĭ|tĭ || plĕnă tĭ|mŏrĭs ă|mŏr.||—Ov. Ep.

12. ULTIMA VERSUS SYLLABA habetur *communis*, hoc est, vel longa vel brevis esse potest.

Obs. Sed in Hexametro et Pentametro rarior est in brevem vocalem conclusio.

§ 172.—PRIORUM ET PENULTIMARUM SYLLABARUM QUANTITAS.

13. VOCALIS ANTE DUAS CONSONANTES, vel duplicem consonantem, in eâdem dictione, *positione* longa est: ut, *vĕntus, āxis, cŭjus*.

14. Excipe composita *bĭjugus, quadrĭjugus*, et similia.

15. Si consonans priorem dictionem claudat, sequente item

consonante incipiente, vocalis præcedens *positione* longa est: ut:

Majör sūm, quām cui possit fortuna nocere:
ubi syllabæ *jor, sum, quam, et sit,* positione longæ sunt.

16. Vocalis brevis ante mutam, sequente liquida *l*, et præcipue *r*, communis redditur: ut, *pātris, volūcris*. Sed non in compositis, ut *āb-luo, ōb-ruo*: et longa *naturā* nunquam corripitur, ut *mātris, a māter; ācris, ab ācer; salūbris, a salūber*.

17. VOCALIS ANTE VOCalem, et ante literam *h*, in eādē dictione, brevis est: ut *Dēus, mēus, tūus, pīus, nihil*.

18. Excipias genitivos in *ius*: ut *unīus, illīus, &c.*, ubi *i* communis reperitur, licet in *alterīus* et *utrīus* semper sit brevis, in *alius*, (i. e. *aliūus*) et fortasse *soliūs*, semper longa.

19. Excipiendi sunt etiam genitivi antiqui in *ai*, ut *aulāi*, genitivi et dativi quintæ declinationis, ubi *e* inter geminum *i* longa fit: ut, *faciēi*; alioqui non: ut, *rēi, spēi, fidēi*; aliquando et vocativi *Cāi, Pompēi*.

Sed apud Ennium,

Vir bonus, haud magnā cum re, sed pēnu' fidēi.

20. *Fi* in *fio* longa est, nisi sequuntur *e* et *r* simul: ut *fīerem, fīeri*.

Omnia jam fiunt, fīeri quæ posse negabam.

21. *Dīus, āer, ēheu* primam syllabam habent longam; *Dīana* communem.

Ohe interjectio priorem syllabam communem habet.

22. VOCALIS ANTE VOCalem in Græcis dictionibus subinde longa est: ut,

Dicite Pierides; Respice Lāerten; Vertitur āēr.

23. Et in possessivis Græcis; ut, *Ænēia nutrix; Rhodopēius Orpheus; ignis Achāicus*.

DIPHTHONGUS OMNIS apud Latinos *longa* est: ut, *āūrum,*

nēuter, musæ: nisi sequente *vocali*; ut *præire, præustus, præamplus*: aliquando et in fine dictionis: ut, *Insulæ Ionio*.

24. Ab ETYMOLOGIÆ observatione ad PROSODIÆ notitiam in plurimis potest perveniri; cujus rei exempla sint —

Valētudo a *valeo, valēre*; *salūber* a *salus, salutis*; *audācia* ab *audax, audācis*; *munimentum* a *munio, munitum*; *monimentum* a *moneo, monitum*; *inscītia* a *scio, scītus*, et alia quæ jam memorabuntur.

Sic Latina, a Græcis derivata, Græcorum ferè sequuntur quantitatem: ut, *mūsa*, a *μουσα*; *dōminus, dōmus*, a *δῶμος*; *māgister, māgis*, a *μέγας*; *lēgo* a *λέγω*; et similia.

25. COMPOSITA, simplicium suorum quantitatem ferè sequuntur: ut, a *lēgo, lēgis, perlēgo*; *lēgo, lēgas, allēgo*; ab *æquus, iniquus*; a *pōtens, impōtens*; a *sōlor, consōlor*. (Vide § 122.)

26. Excipe *intereā, posteā, antea*.

27. Excipiuntur item hæc brevia a longis enata: *dejēro, pejēro, a jūro: innūba, pronūba, a nūbo*.

28. DERIVATIVA ferè primitivorum suorum quantitatem habent: ut, *āmator, āmicus, āmabilis*, primā brevi, ab *āmo*.

29. Excipiuntur tamen pauca, quæ a *brevibus* deducta primam syllabam *producunt*: ut,

fōmes, fōmentum, a *fōveo*,
hūmanus, ab *hōmo*,
imbēcillus, a *bāculus*,
jūcundus, a *jūvo*,
jūmentum, a *jūvo*,
jūnior, a *jūvenis*,
lāterna, a *lāteo*,
lēx, lēgis, a *lēgo*,
mācero, a *mācer*,
Mōbilis, a *mōveo*,
nōnus, a *nōvem*,

persōna, unde *persōnatus*, a *persōno*,
rēgula, a *rēgo*,
rēx, rēgis, rēgina, a *rēgo*,
sēcus, a *sēcus*,
sēdes, a *sēdeo*,
sēmen, a *sēro*,
suspicio, a *suspīcor*,
tēgula, a *tēgo*,
trāgula, a *trāho*,
vōx, vōcis, a *vōco*.

30. Sed multa ex his ex contractione explicanda sunt: ut, *fōmentum*, a *fōvimentum*; *jūniōr*, a *jūvēnior*; *mōbilis*, a *mōvībilis*; ubi duæ breves in unam longam coeunt: ut, a *cōāgo, cōgo*; a *cōāgito, cōgito*; a *bōs, bōvis, bōvīcula, būcula*.

31. Sunt etiam, quæ a *longis* deducta primam *corripiunt*: ut,

ārena, *ārista*, *āruno*, ab *āreo*,
āruspex, ab *āra*,
ālenx, *maledīcus*, *veridīcus*, &c.,
 a *dīco*,
dītio, a *dītis*,
dīsertus, a *dīssero*,
dux dūcis, *edūco -as*, a *dūco*
fīdes, a *fīdo*,
frāgor, *frāgilis*, a *frāngo*,

lūcerna, a *lūceo*,
mōlestus, a *mōles*,
nāto nātas, a *nātu*,
nōto nōtas, a *nōtu*,
pōsui, a *pōno*,
quāter, a *quātuor*,
sōpor, a *sōpio*,
vādum, a *vādo*.

Et alia nonnulla ex utroque genere, quæ relinquuntur studiosis inter legendum observanda.

32. In Verbis hujusmodi plerisque præsertim est notandum, si *significatio* vel *conjugatio* verbi mutetur, mutari etiam *quantitatem*: ut, *sēdo -as* activum, sed *sēdeo -es* neutrum; sic *plāco* sed *plāceo*; sic *jacēre* et *pendēre* neutra, *jacēre* autem et *pendēre* activa; *fugēre* neutrum, *fugāre* activum; *cādo* neutrum, *cādo*, *occīdo* activa. *Lēgo* ē *longā*, est *primæ* conjugationis, sed *lēgo* ē *brevi*, *tertiæ*. In *lābo -as*, prima est brevis, in *lābor -ēris*, prima est longa.

33. PRÆTERITUM DISSYLLABUM priorem habet longam: ut, *lēgi*, *ēmi*, *mōvi*, *ōdi*.

34. Excipe, *Bībi*, *dēdi*, *fīdi*,
Stēti, *stīti*, *tūli*, *scīdi*.

35. Tri præterita corripiunt primam longam præsentis, *gēnui*, *pōtui*, *pōsui*, a *gīgno*, *pōssum*, *pōno*.

36. Quæ primam præteriti *geminant*, primam brevem habent: ut, *cēcīdi*, a *cādo*; *cēcīdi*, a *cādo*; *dīdīci*, *fēfelli*, *mōmordi*, *pēpendi*, *pēpuli*, *pūpugi*, *tētendi*, *tētigi*, *tōtondi*, *tūtūdi*.

37. SUPINUM DISSYLLABUM priorem habet longam: ut, *visum*, *lātum*, *lōtum*, *mōtum*.

38. Excipe, *Dātum*, *ītum*, *lītum*, *quītum*,
Rātum, *rūtum*, *sātum*, *sītum*,
stātum, a *sisto*; et *cītum*, a *cio*, *cies*: nam *statum*, a *sto*, et *citum*, a *cio*, *cis*, quartæ, priorem habent longam.

39. Brevia sunt composita a BIS, DIS, TRIS : ut, *biceps, dibāphum, trivium* : excipe *bigæ, trigæ*.

40. Notanda sunt *prīdie, merīdies, biduum, quofīdie*, in quibus omnibus prior ī producitur.

41. DE, et DI, ante consonantes in compositis, producuntur : ut, *dēgener, dēleo, diversus, diluo*.

42. Excipe *dīrimo, dīsertus*.

43. IDEM in *masculino* primam producit, in *neutro* corripit : ut,

Per quod quis peccat, per idem quoque plectitur idem.

44. NE, privativa particula, in compositione brevis est : ut, *nēfas, nēqueo* : cum vero *contrahitur*, ut, a *nē hōmo, nēmo*, vel cum *conjunctio* fit, producitur : ut, *nēquam, nēquidquam, nēquaquam*.

45. PRO in compositione longa est ; excipe *prōcella, prōfanus, prōfecto, prōfestus, prōficiscor, prōfiteor, prōfugus, prōfundus, prōnepos, prōtervus*, et quædam alia.

46. RE in compositione ferè brevis est, nisi *longa* fiat positione : sed in *rēliquiæ, rēligio*, et in præteritis, *rēperit, rēpulit, rētudit, rētulit* (ut a *rēpēperit, rēpēpulit, &c.*), et interdum in *recedo* et *recido*, producitur.

47. SE in compositione longa est : ut *sēcessus, separo*, nisi ante vocalem, ut *sēorsum*.

48. SO in *sōcors, sōcordia*, brevis est.

49. NOMINA desinentia in x, et genitivum in *gis* facientia, penultimam corripiunt : ut, *remex, remīgis*.

50. Excipe *lex, rex, lēgis, rēgis, et frūgis*.

51. Corripitur item penultima genitivorum in *icis*, a nominativo *ex* : ut, *vertex, vertīcis*.

52. Cætera in x penultimam genitivi producant ; ut, *pax*

pācis ; *vervex*, *vervēcis* ; *radix*, *radīcis* ; *velox*, *velōcis* ; *lux*, *lūcis*.

53. Excipe *nex*, *nēcis*, et nominativo carentia *vīcis*, *prēcis*, *nix*, *nīvis* ; *cruX*, *crūcis* ; *pīx*, *pīcis* ; *nux*, *nūcis* ; *trux*, *trūcis*.

54. ADVERBIA in *tim* penultimam habent longam : ut, *virītim*, *catervātīm*. Excipe *affātīm*, *stātīm*, *perpētīm*.

§ 173.—ULTIMARUM SYLLABARUM QUANTITAS.

55. VOCALIS BREVIS finalis ante *sc*, *sp*, *sq*, *st*, *x*, *z*, interdum vi ictus producitur : ut,

Occultā spolia, et plures de pace triumphos.

Nullā fugæ ratio, nullā spes, omnia muta.

56. Et rarissimè *brevis* manet : ut,

Ponitē—Spes sibi quisque, sed hæc quàm angusta, videtis.

57. LONGA VOCALIS finalis ante initialem vocalem aliquando in *thesi* corripitur : ut,

Et longum, formose, valē, valē, inquit, Iōla.

Clamassent, ut litus Hylā, Hylā omne sonaret.

Tē, amice, nequivi

Aspicere.

Aut Athō, aut Rhodopen aut alta Ceraunia telo. — Virg.

58. Item diphthongi : ut,

Insulæ Ionio in magno quas dira Celæno. — Virg.

59. *Obs.* Sic interdum apud Lucretium, et apud Comicos et levioris argumenti Scriptores monosyllaba corripuntur : ut,

Sed dūm abest quod avemus, id exsuperare videtur. — Lucr.

Cocto nūm adest honor idem ? — Hor.

*Si mē amas, inquit, paulum huc ades. — Id.**

* Hinc fortasse legendum apud Horatium, A. P. 65 —

Regis opus sterilisque palus diū, aptaque remis.

60. *A* FINITA producantur : ut, *amā, contrā, ergā.*

61. Excipias *putā, itā, quā, ejā* : item omnes casus in *a*, cujuscunque fuerint generis, numeri, aut declinationis ; præter vocativos a Græcis in *as* : ut, *o Æneā, o Pallā* ; et ablativum primæ declinationis : ut, *musā.*

62. Leguntur item vocativi Latini ultimâ brevi, *Atridd, Alcidd.*

63. Excipe et nomina litterarum : ut, *alphā, betā.*

64. In *B, D, T*, desinentia brevia sunt : ut, *āb, ād, cāpūt.*

65. In *C* desinentia producantur : ut *āc, sic*, et *hic* ad verbum.

66. Sed tria in *c* corripuntur, *fāc, nēc, et donēc.*

67. Interdum, *hic* et *hoc*, sed non nisi in *thesi*, corripuntur. *Hoc* ablativum semper producitur.

68. *E* finita brevia sunt : ut *marē, penē, legē, scribē.*

69. Excipiendæ sunt omnes voces quintæ inflexionis in *e* : ut, *fidē et diē* ; una cum particulis inde enatis : ut, *hodiē, quotidiē, pridīē, postridiē* ; item *quarē, quaderē, earē, rēfert*, impersonale, et si qua sunt similia.

70. Et secundæ item personæ singulares imperativæ secundæ conjugationis : ut, *docē, movē.*

71. Producantur etiam monosyllaba in *e* : ut, *mē, tē, sē* ; præter *quē, nē, vē*, conjunctiones encliticas, et *cē, tē, psē, ptē*, pronomibus addita ; ut, *hiccē, suāptē.*

72. Quin et adverbia in *e*, ab adjectivis secundæ declinationis deducta, *e* longam habent : ut, *pulchrē, doctē, valdē* pro *validē.*

73. Quibus accedunt *fermē, ferē* ; *benē* tamen et *malī* corripuntur omnino.

74. Postremo, quæ a Græcis per *η* scribuntur, naturâ producantur, cujuscunque fuerint casûs, generis, aut numeri : ut, *Lethē, Anchisē, cetē, Tempē.* (Λήθη, Ἀγχίση, κήτη, Τέμπη.)

75. *I* finita longa sunt : ut, *dominī, magistrī, amarī.*

76. Præter, *mihi, tibi, sibi, ubi, ibi*, quæ sunt communia. Sed in *necubi, sicubi, ubinam, ubivis, utinam, utique*, i semper corripitur.

77. *Nisi* quoque et *quasi* corripiuntur.

78. Corripiuntur etiam dativi et vocativi Græcorum, quorum genitivus singularis in *δος* breve exit: ut, Dativ. *Minoidi, Palladi, Phyllidi*; Vocat. *Alexi, Amarylli, Daphni*.

79. Dativus ictu producitur,

Tum Thetidi Puter ipse jugandum Pelea sensit. — Catull.

80. Pro more autem corripitur,

Luce autem canæ Tethyi restitutor. — Catull.

81. *L* finita corripiuntur: ut, *animäl, Hannibäl, mël, pugil, consül*.

82. Præter *nîl* contractum a *nihil, sâl (sälis)*, et *söl (sölis)*.

83. *M* in *circum* ante vocalem brevem in compositione corripitur: ut, *circümägo, circümëo*.

84. *N* finita producuntur: ut *Pæän, Hymën, quîn, Xenophôn, nôn*.

85. Excipe *forsän, forsitän, än, tamën, attamën, veruntamën*, et *în*.

86. Accedunt his et voces illæ, quæ apocopen patiuntur: ut, *vidën' ? audën' ?* etiam *exîn, subîn, deîn, proîn*.

87. In *än* quoque a nominativis in *ä*: ut, Nominativo, *Iphigeniä, Äginä*; Accus. *Iphigeniän, Äginän*. Nam in *an*, a nominativis in *äs* producuntur: ut, Nom. *Æneäs, Marsyäs*; Accus, *Æneän, Marsyän*.

88. Nomina item in *en*, quorum genitivus *inis* correptum habet: ut, *carmën, crimën, pectën, tibicën -inis*.

89. Quædam etiam in *in* per *i*: ut, *Alexîn*; et in *yn* per *y*: ut, *Itÿn*.

90. Græca etiam in *on* per *o parvum*, cujuscunque fuerint casus: ut, Nom. *Ilïön, Pelïön*; Accus. *Caucasön, Pylön, Troilön, barbitön*. (Ἰλίον, Πήλιον, κ. τ. λ.)

91. *O* finita longa sunt : ut, *dicō, virgō, templō, legendō.*

92. Excipe quædam : ut, *sciō, nesciō, volō, putō*, quæ passim apud bonos auctores correpta leguntur ; et non pauca alia, quæ in levioris argumenti vel sequioris ævi carminibus corripuntur.

93. Cæterum *citō, egō, modō, quomodō, et cēdō* pro *dic* vel *da*, semper corripuntur.

94. *Duo* et *homo* vix leguntur producta.

95. *R* finita corripuntur : ut, *Cæsār, jubār, pēr, vīr, uxōr, turtūr.*

96. Producentur autem *fār, Lār, Nār, vēr, fūr, cūr*, et *pār* cum compositis : ut, *compār, impār, dispār.*

97. Græca etiam in *er*, quæ illis in *ηρ* desinunt : ut, *aēr, cratēr, athēr*, præter *patēr* et *matēr*, quæ apud Latinos ultimam brevem habent.

98. *AS* finite producentur : ut, *amās, musās, majestās, bonitās.*

99. Excipe *anās anātis, vās vādis* ; et Græca, quorum genitivus singularis in *ādos* et non in *antos* exit : ut, *Arcās, Pallās* ; Genitivo, *Arcādos, Pallādos.*

100. Et præter accusativos plurales nominum crescentium : ut, *heros, herōos ; Phyllis, Phyllīdos* ; Accus. plural, *heroās, Phyllidās.*

101. *ES* finita longa sunt : ut, *Anchisēs, sedēs, docēs, patrēs,*

102. Excipiuntur nomina in *es* tertiæ inflexionis, quæ penultimam genitivi crescentis corripunt : ut *milēs, militis ; segēs, segētis ; divēs, divītis.*

103. Sed *ariēs, abiēs, pariēs, Cerēs*, et *pēs*, unā cum compositis, ut, *bipēs, tripēs, &c.*, longa sunt.

104. *Es* quoque a *sum*, unā cum compositis, corripitur : ut, *potēs, adēs, prodēs, obēs* ; quibus *penēs* adjungi potest.

105. Item neutra, et nominativi plurales Græcorum : ut, *cacoethēs, heroēs, lampadēs, Cyclopēs, Naiadēs.*

106. *IS* finita brevia sunt : ut, *Parīs, panīs, tristīs, hilarīs.*

107. Excipe obliquos casus plurales in *is*, qui producentur : ut, *musīs, mensīs a mensa, dominīs, templīs*, et *quīs* pro

quibus : his accedant nonnulli ablativi adverbialiter sumpti : ut, *foris, gratis*.

108. Item producentia penultimam genitivi crescentis : ut, *Samia*. *Salamis* ; Genitivo, *Samnitis, Salaminis*.

109. Adde huc quæ in *is* contracta ex *eis* desinunt, sive Græca, sive Latina, cujuscunque fuerint numeri aut casûs : ut, *Simois, Pyrois, partis, omnis*, a *Simoeis, Pyroeis*, et antiquis *parteis, omneis*.

110. Et monosyllaba item omnia : ut, *vis, lis* ; præter *is* et *quis* nominativos, et *bis*.

111. Istis accedunt secundæ personæ singulares verborum in *is*, quorum secundæ personæ plurales desinunt in *itis*, penultimâ productâ : ut, *audis, velis* ; plurali, *auditis, velitis*.

112. *Obs.* *Is* secundæ personæ singularis futuri secundi indicativi, et præteriti perfecti subjunctivi, *communis* est : ut, *amaveris* : *communis* etiam est penultima secundæ personæ pluralis : ut, *amaveritis*.

113. *OS* finita producuntur : ut, *arbōs, honōs, nepōs, dominōs, servōs*.

114. Præter *compōs, impōs*, et *ōs ossis*.

115. Et Græca per *o* parvum : ut *Dedōs, Iliōs, chaos, melōs, epōs, Pal-ladōs, Phyllidōs* (a *Δῆλος, Ἰλιος, κ.τ.λ.*).

116. *US* finita corripuntur : ut, *famulūs, regiūs, tempūs, amamus*.

117. Excipiuntur producentia penultimam genitivi crescentis : ut, *salūs, tellūs, incūs, jūs* ; Genitivo, *salūtis, tellūris, incūdis, jūris*.

118. Longæ sunt etiam omnes voces quartæ inflexionis in *us*, præter nominativum et vocativum singulares : ut, Gen. sing. *manūs* ; Nom. Accus. Voc. plur. *manūs*.

119. His accedunt etiam monosyllaba : ut, *crūs, thūs, mūs, sūs*.

120. Et Græca item per *ovs* diphthongum, cujuscunque fuerint casûs : ut, Nom. *Punthūs, Melampūs* ; Gen. *Sapphūs, Cliūs*.

121. Atque piis cunctis venerandum nomen *Iesus*.

122. *YS* finita, nisi in *thesi*, longa sunt : ut, *Tethys, Erinnys*.

123. *U* finita producuntur : ut, *manū, genū, amatū, diū*.

124. Sed *indū* et *nenū* apud Lucretium, pro *in* et *non*, corripuntur.

125. *Y* finita corripuntur ; ut, *Tiphys, molys*.

§ 174.—PEDES.*

126. <i>Pyrrhichium</i> brevibus videas properare duâbus; ∪	
<i>Spondeum</i> binis contrâ consistere longis. --	
Syllaba longa brevi subjecta vocatur <i>Iambus</i> ; ∪-	
Quòd si longa brevem præcesserit, ecce <i>Trochæus</i> . -∪	
<i>Dactylus</i> efficitur longâ brevibusque duâbus; -∪∪	
Post curtas geminas <i>Anapæstus</i> simplice longâ. ∪∪-	
Tres breviat <i>Tribrachys</i> ; tot produxere <i>Molossi</i> ; ∪∪∪:---	
Longa dat <i>Amphibrachyn</i> brevibus conclusa duâbus; ∪-∪	
At brevis <i>Amphimacrum</i> binis intersita longis. -∪-	
<i>Baccheius</i> curtâ constat longisque duâbus; ∪--	
<i>Anti-que-baccheius</i> pes est contrarius illi,	
In quo subjicitur binis brevis unica longis. --∪	
Præfixus dat te, <i>Choriambe</i> , trochæus iambo. -∪∪-	
At <i>Proceleusmaticum</i> curtæ gēhuere quaternæ. ∪∪∪∪	
A majore sequatur <i>Ionicus</i> , a-que minore: --∪∪:∪∪--	
<i>Pyrrhichius</i> ducit spondeum hīc; excipit illīc.	
Curta tribus longis miscetur? <i>Epitritus</i> audit: ∪---	
Longa tribus brevibus comes addita <i>Pæōna</i> gignit. -∪∪∪	
Tu quis es, <i>Antispaste</i> ? trochæum ducat iambus: ∪--∪	
His longa accedat si syllaba, <i>Dochmius</i> exit. ∪--∪-	

* De Pedibus, Metris, et Universâ Latinorum Versuum pangendorum ratione videndi sunt præter Scriptores infra laudandos: — *Scriptores Latini Rei Metricæ MSS. ope subinde refinxit Thomas Gaisford, S. T. P. Oxon. 1837. Artis Poeticæ Latinæ, Libri IV., Auctore Christiano Davide Jani, Halæ, 1774; versione Anglicâ donati, Cambridge, 1828. Materialien zu Ausgaben Lateinischer Verse, von Heinrich Lindemann. Leipzig, 1830. Thesaurus Poeticus Linguae Latinæ, par L. Quicherat, 2eme Ed., Paris, 1840.*

§ 175.—METRA VERSUUM.

127. METRA versuum, qui pedibus hyperdisyllabis fiunt (exceptis Anapæsticis), *singulis pedibus* constant; cæterorum, *binis*: sic, *Hexamēter Dactylicus* sex pedibus constat; sex item pedibus, *Trimēter Iambicus*.

VERSUS, *sex* metris constans, HEXAMETER; *quinque*, PENTAMETER; *quatuor*, TETRAMETER; *duobus*, DIMETER; *uno*, MONOMETER appellatur.

VERSUS qui *unā* caret syllabâ, CATALECTICUS; qui *nullâ*, ACATALECTICUS; qui integro *pede*, BRACHYCATALECTICUS, vocatur: qui *unâ abundat* syllabâ, HYPERCATALECTICUS.

Duo Pedes continui DIPODIA, interdum etiam SYZYGIA nominantur.

§ 176.—CÆSURÆ IN HEXAMETRO.*

128. CÆSURA in versu est locus, ubi verbum terminatur, et vox paulum acquiescit.

In versu HEROICO, sive HEXAMETRO, CÆSURÆ præcipuæ sunt sex, quarum unam vel plures nisi versus habeat, erit vitiosus:

129. PENTHEMIMERIS (πέντε *quinque*, ἡμὶ *dimidium*, μέρος *pars*), i. e. post *quintum semipedem*, omnium usitatissima: ut,
Tityre | *tu patu*|læ || *recubans sub tegmine fagi*.

130. HEPTHEMIMERIS (ἑπτὰ *septem* κ. τ. λ.), i. e. post *septimum semipedem*: ut,

Formo|sam *reso*|nare *do*|cēs || *Amaryllida sylvas*.

131. Post TERTIUM TROCHÆUM: ut,

Orphei | *Callio*|pēā, || *Lino formosus Apollo*.

Falleret | *inde* | *prēnsūs* || *et irremeabilis error*.

* Vide *Latin Prosody*, by William Ramsay, M. A., pp. 171—176. ed 1837.

132. Post SECUNDUM DACTYLUM: ut,

*Aggeri|būs sōcēr || Alpinis, atque arce Monæci
Descen|dēns, gēnēr || adversis instructus Eois.**

133. Post TERTIUM DACTYLUM, quæ rarior est: ut,

Cui non | dictus Hy|lās pŭēr, || aut Latonia Delos.

134. Post QUARTUM DACTYLUM, quæ et CÆSURA BUCOLICA, ut a Bucolicis Poetis frequentata, appellatur: ut,

Ambo | floren|tes æ|tātībūs || Arcades ambo.

135. CÆSURA pulchrè ad sensum variatur: ut,

*Nonne vides? || cūm præcipiti || certamine campum
Corripŭere, || ruuntque || effusi carcere currus;
Cūm spes arrectæ || juvenum, exultantiaque haurit
Corda pavor pulsans; || illi instant verbere torto,
Et proni dant lora, || volat vi fervidus axis;
Jamque humiles, || jamque elati || sublimè videntur
Aëra per vacuum || ferri atque assurgere in auras;
Nec mora, nec requies: || At fulvæ nimbus arenæ
Tollitur: humescunt || spumis flatuque sequentum;
Tantus amor laudum, || tantæ est victoria curæ. — Virg.*

136. Obs. In Heroicis præsertim versibus scribendis, Cæsurarum diligentissimè ratio habenda est, quæ ita sunt temperandæ, ut varietate aures recreentur, non nimia licentiâ offendantur.

137. Quum post QUINTUM DACTYLUM interpungitur, plerumque sequuntur duo monosyllaba, vel repetitur eadem vox quæ modo præcesserit: ut,

*At Bore|æ de | parte tru|cis cum | fŭlmināt; || et cum—
Ipsæ | consi|dent medi|catis | sēdībūs, || ipsæ—*

138. Raro, nisi in propriis nominibus, voce hypertrisyllabâ versus terminatur: ut,

Dic mihi, Damæta, cujū pecus? an Melibæi?

* Ubi pulchrè per cæsuras sibi respondentes duæ acies Cæsaris et Pompeii invicem opponi videntur.

§ 177.—PENTAMETRI REGULÆ.*

139. PENTAMETRI prius hemistichium integrâ voce finientum est.

140. ALITER mendosum est : ut,

Hæc quoque nostræ sententia mentis erat.

141. DURA est post prius hemistichium elisio : ut,

Troja virum et virtutum omnium acerba cinis.

142. NEUTRUM pentametri hemistichium benè monosyllabo terminatur, nisi vel alterum monosyllabum vel elisio præcedat : ut,

Non tamen est cur sis || tu mihi causa necis.

Præmia si studio consequor ista, sat est.

Invitis oculis litera lecta tua est.

143. PENTAMETER optimè clauditur voce *disyllabâ*, raro *tetrasyllabâ*, rarius *trisyllabâ* : Ne imiteris, igitur, qui sequuntur,

Maxima de nihilo nascitur historia.

Et caput impositis pressit amor pedibus.

144. SOLET distichon absolvere sententiam vel saltem incolum desinere.

§ 178.—VERSUS ALCAICI.†

Virtūs | rēpū|scē || nēsciā | sōrdidā|

Intā|mīnā|tis || fūlgēt hō|nōribūs|

Nēc sū|mīt aut | pōnīt | sēcū|rēs

Arbītrī|ō pōpū|lārīs | āurē.

145. IN Alcaicis, duo priores strophæ versus melius a *longâ* syllabâ incipiunt quam a *brevi*; tertius vix unquam a *brevi* incipit.

* Vide Introduction to *Latin Elegiacs*, by Rev. W. Oxenham, M. A., Second Master of Harrow School, pp. 13—20, ed. 1842.

† Vide Preface to *Sacred Lyrics* by Rev. F. Hodgson, B. D., Provost of Eton College, xiii—xxvii., ed. 1842. Ramsay, *Latin Prosody*, p. 227.

146. CÆSURA post *quintum sempēdem* rarò negligitur, nisi quando elisio sequitur: ut,

Mentem | sacer|do||tum incola Pythius.

vel in verbis compositis: ut,

Hosti|le ara|trum ex||ercitus insolens.

Antehac | nefas de||promere Cæcubum.

147. TERTIUS strophæ versus vel a quadrisyllabâ voce, vel a duabus disyllabis vel a monosyllabâ et trisyllabâ *inchoare* nequit: Vitiosi sunt qui sequuntur,

Tranquillitas | segura vitæ.

Virtus piam | gentem tuetur.

Et nobiles | gignit nepotes:

148. Nisi ultima quadrisyllabæ elidatur: ut,

Rubiginem, aut | dulces alumni.

149. TERTIUS strophæ versus rarò duabus disyllabis, rarissimè voce quadrisyllabâ, nunquam trisyllabâ et encliticâ, *terminatur*: minus igitur imitandi sunt qui sequuntur,

Pronos relabi || posse | rivos.

Nodo coerces || viperino.

Sed *Pæana dicit || supplicesque* omnino repudiandus.

150. HI qui sequuntur versus omnes bonæ notæ sunt:

1. *Deprome | quadrimum | Sabina.*

2. *Declive | contempleris | arvum.*

3. *Morem | verccundumque | Bacchum.*

4. *Spargunt | olivetis | odorem.*

5. *Non | erubescendis | adurit.*

6. *Nunc | in | reluctantes | dracones.*

7. *Non | Liber | æquè | non | acuta.*

151. QUARTUS strophæ versus (in initio) non libenter Pentametri numeros finales accipit: ita ut vix imiteris sequuntur,

O Thaliarche merum || diota.

Teque tuasque decet || sorores.

152. Neque fianles *Hexametri* numeros : ut,
Me cichorea levesque || malvæ.

Arvaque jungere quærit || arvis.

153. HI, qui sequuntur, bonæ notæ sunt :

1. *Compositâ | repctuntur | hord.*

2. *Sardinia | segetes | feracis.*

3. *Concutitur. | Valet | ima summis.*

4. *Levia | personuere | saxa.*

5. *Flumina | constiterint | acuto.*

6. *Aut | digito | male | pertinaci:*



§ 179. — VERSUS SAPPHICI.

Aûrē|ām quis|quis mē|dīō|critā|tēm

Dilī|gīt tū|tūs cā|rēt ōb|sōlē|tī

Sōrdī|būs tēc|tī cā|rēt in|vidēn|dā

Sōbrīūs | qūlā.

154. SAPPHICI versûs propria est cæsura *penthemimeris* :
 ut,

Jām sã|tīs tēr|rīs || nīvīs ātquē dīræ.

155. UNAM tantum aliam cæsuram, sc. *post tertium trochæum*, hic versus admittit : ut,

Mercur|i fa|cūndē || nepos Atlantis.

Conci|nes ma|jōrē || Poeta plectro :

nam *Pertinax et || luxurians juvena*, et similia, vitiosa sunt.

156. QUARTUS strophæ versus appellatur *Adonius* : ut,

Tērrūt | ūrbēm.

§ 180. — ALIORUM VERSUUM NOMINA.

157. DANT *Asclepiadæ* notum cognomine versum
Spondeus junctoque duplex choriambus iambo:

ut, *Mæcē|nās ātāvīs | ēdūtē rē|gībūs.*

Hoc As|clepiades | fila ferit | modo.

158. Obs. Post primum choriambum vox vel terminatur, vel eliditur.

159. IDEM, si demas choriambum, erit ecce, *Glyconis*:

ut, *Sic tē | divā pōtēns | Cypri.*

His lu|sit numeris | Glycon.

<i>Glyconeus polyschematistis</i>	{	<i>Sic tē Cypri</i> <i>Cypri sic tē</i> <i>Cypriquē tē</i> <i>Tē Cypriquē</i> <i>Sic Cypri tē</i>	}	<i>Divā pōtēna.</i>
-----------------------------------	---	---	---	---------------------

160. ANNE *Pherecratico* versu vis ludere? Binos
Inter spondeos medius tibi dactylus esto:

ut, *Grātō | Pýrrhā sūb | āntrō.*

Obs. 1. In duobus his versuum generibus, Catullus in primâ sede
habet interdum *trochæum* (—), interdum *iambum* (—); recen-
tiores poetæ *spondeum* (—) tantum.

161. Obs. 2. Si Glyconeum Pherecratico præposueris, fit Catullianus
ille

O Colonia quæ cupis | ponte ludere longo.

162. QUATUOR ex pedibus pangas *Anapæstica*; versûs
In quâcunque velis regione *anapæstus* habetor,
Cujus spondeus vice nunc, nunc dactylus esto.

163. Si scribis Vates quæ lusit *Teius* olim,
Syllaba post ternos metrum tibi claudat iampos,
Spondeus variat primum aut anapæstus iambum:

ut, *Ānā|crēōn Pōē|ta.*

164. DACTYLICIS addit *Logædica* musa trochæos:
Sic primâ posuit spondeum in sede *Phalæcus*,
Dactylus insequitur; terni subiere trochæi:
Nomen si quæras, hic *Hendecasyllabus* audit:

ut, *Sūmmām | nēc mētū|ās dī|ēm nē|que ōptēs.*

165. *EXTREMO* *Seazon* pede claudicat; id nisi fiat,
 Reddat iambeum trimetro tibi carmine versum;
 Spondeum nunc sextus habet, pes quintus iambum:

ut, *Labore fessi vēnimus Larem ad nostrum*;

Qui versus fieret *Iambicus Trimeter* sive *Senarius*, scribendo

Labore fessi venimus nostrum ad Larem;

Purus vero *Iambicus* evaderet, sic refingendo,

Labore fessa vēnit ad Larem suum.

166. *Obs.* 1. *Puris* Iambis *semel* tantum scripsisse satis habuit Horatius. (Ep. xv.)

167. *Obs.* 2. De Versibus IAMBICIS hæc habet Horatius, A. P. 251

Syllaba longa brevi subjecta vocatur Iambus,

Pes citus; unde etiam trimetris accrescere jussit

Nomen Iambeis, cū senos redderet ictus,

Primus ad extremum similis sibi. Non ita pridem,

Tardior ut paulo graviorque veniret ad aures,

Spondeos stabiles in jura paterna recepit

Commodus et patiens; non ut de sede secundā

Cederet aut quartā socialiter; hic et in Acci

Nobilibus trimetris apparet rarus et Ennī.

168. *Obs.* 3. De Metro *Ionico a Minore*, vide Bentr. ad Horat. Carm. iii, xii, 1.

§ 181. — VERSUS MIXTI.

169. *MIXTI* vocantur versus ii, qui ex duobus diversi generis versibus conflati sunt: sic,

Solvitur | acris hy|ems gra|ta vice || Veris | et Fa|vonī.

qui ARCHILOCHIUS appellatur, ex Dactylico Tetrametro et Trochaico Dimetro Brachycatalectico constat.

170. *ASYNARTETI* nominantur versus ii quibus prioris membri ultima syllaba communis est, neque, si in vocalem exit, a vocali insequente eliditur: ut,

Findunt | Scaman|dri flu|mina || lubricus | et Simo|is.

ubi *mīnā* Pyrrhichius locum Iambi occupat, et,

Fervidi|ore me|ro || arca|na pro|mórat | loco.

ubi *o* in *mero* non eliditur.

Obs. Vide Bentr. Hor. Epod. xi. 1.

§ 182. — DE PLAUTI ET TERENCE VERSIBUS. .

171. DE PLAUTI ET TERENCE Versibus hoc præcipue notandum est :

Hi qui pedestres fabulas *socco* premunt,
 Ut, quæ loquuntur, sumpta de vitâ putes,
 Vitiant *Iambum* tractibus *Spondaicis* ;
 Pro côm|möda|vi com|möda|vi com|moda.
 Dant com|mēnda|vi com|mēnda|vi com|moda.

172. *Obs.* Eadem poterant dici de *tragædiis* Romanorum vetustioribus, ut Ennii, Accii, Pacuvii. Vide Bentl. ad Hor. A. P. 260.

173. Et, ut breves producant, ita corripiunt *positione* longas (sed non longas *naturâ*), et præcipue in *primo* versuum pede, ut, in Trimetro Iambico,

Pröptër hös|pītā|i hujus|ce con|suetu|dinem.

 § 183. — ACCENTUS LATINI.

174. ACCENTUS, nisi in monosyllabis, nunquam est in *ultimâ*.

In hyperdisyllabis. accentus est in penultimâ, si penultima sit *longa* naturâ : ut, *amâre, curârûm* : si penultima sit *brevis*, acuitur antepenultima : ut, *Tüllia, Gállia*.

175. *Obs.* Sed in quadrisyllabis, ubi tres breves una longa excipit, acuitur prima : ut, *múltērēs*.

176. In *secundâ* Trimetri dipodiâ, sedulo caverunt Comici, ne ictus in *ultimas* syllabas, accentu carentes, caderet, nisi ob peculiarem quandam emphasis gratiam : ut,

Scelēsta ovem || lupó commi|si ; dispudet !

177. Præter Iambicos Trochaicosque, etiam Creticis, Bacchiacis, Choriambicisque versibus, sed semel tantum singulis, et nusquam in diverbio, utitur TERENCE.*

* Vide R. Bentley de Metris Terentianis Schediasma.

§ 184.—PEDES FINALES IN SOLUTA ORATIONE.

178. IN *Solutâ Oratione*, Pedes, qui numerosissimè claudunt sententiam, sunt

Creticus cum Ditrochæo : ut — glōriām cōmpārāvīt.

Trochæus cum Antibaccheio : ut — mēmbră firmāntŭr.

Dochmius : ut — iră victōriæ.

Tibrachys cum Trochæo : ut — essē vīdĕātŭr.

Duo Cretici : ut — tŭrpĭtĕr sĕntiŭnt.

ACCIDENCE CONSTRUED.

§ 2. VÆ tibi ridenti *wo to you laughing*, quia mox *because soon* post gaudia *after joys* flebis *you will weep*.

§ 10. Adulter *an adulterer* dat *gives* adulteri, in genitivo singulari *in the genitive singular*. Sic thus, puer *boy*, vesper *evening*, gener *son-in-law*, socer *father-in-law*, asper *rough*, miser *miserable*, tener *tender*, lacer *lacerated*; sic so, prosper *prosperous*, liber *wine and free*; sic so, presbyter *priest*; compositaque *and (words)* compounded duobus verbis *with the two verbs* gero and fero, ut as, armiger *knight*, dant *give* ĕri (and) ĕro (*in the genitive and dative cases singular*).

§ 11. Scilicet *truly* mortalem *a mortal* egregii altique silenti *of wonderful and deep silence*.

§ 12. Gen. Letum *the death* Andrögĕō of Androgeos in foribus *on the doors*.

Gen. Mutaverat *he had changed* artus *the limbs* Terei of Tereus. Tectaque *and the roof* Penthĕi of Pentheus.

Dat. Calliopĕa Calliopea Orphei to Orpheus. Theseo promiserat *he had promised to Theseus*. Qualis adest concordia *such a concord as is present* Thetidi to Thetis, qualis *such as* Peleo to Peleus.

Acc. Ælinōn in sylvis Ælinon in the woods. Troilōn Troilus. Pittācōn Pittacus. Typhoea Typhoeus. Orphea Orpheus.

Voc Quo loco in what state (is) summa res the highest affair (i. e. our country's cause), Panthū o Panthous?

Abl. Blandius more bland Threĭcio Orphĕō than Threician Orpheus.

§ 16. (The following words) habent *have* im in accusativo in the accusative case. Vis *force*, ravis *hoarseness*, pelvis *basin*, sitis *thirst*, tussis *cough*, sinapis *mustard*, cucumis *cucumber*, amussis (*carpenter's*) rule, præsepis *manger*, cannabis *hemp*, securis *axe*, Charybdis *Charybdis*, tigris *tiger*, atque and buris *plough-tail*, et omnes fluvii in is and all rivers (ending) in is: ut as, Albis the Elbe, Tibris the Tiber, Thamesis the Thames.

Sed *but* restis *rope*, puppis *poop*, turris *tower*, navis *ship*, strigilis *strigil*, sementis *sowing*, clavis *key*, adjunge *add (to these)* febris *fever* et aqualis *and ewer*, hæc *these* dant *give* em vel im, *either em or im (in the accusative)*, utrum malis *whichever you may prefer*.

Obs. 3. In ablativo singulari *in the ablative singular (the following)* malunt *choose* formari *to be formed* in i quam e in i *rather than e*: appellativa *appellatives (as)* Atheniensis *Athenian*; et adjectiva *and adjectives*, quisque mensis in is *and every month (which ends) in is, (as)* Aprilis *April*; (and in) ober *(and) ember*, ut hi *as these*, October *October*, et November *and November*; et quæ dant im *accusativo and those which give im in the accusative* hæc dabunt i in ablativo *these will give i in the ablative case*.

Obs. 4. Avis *the bird* divina *prophetic* imbrium *imminentum of the impending showers*. Quot *as many as* dabant i ablativo *did give i in the ablative* dant ium plurali *genitivo give ium in the genitive plural*; et finita s et x *and words ended by s and x*, tantum *only* consonante *with a consonant* eunte ante *going before*: plerumque *and generally* monosyllaba dant ium *monosyllables give ium*, parisyllaba *words of equal number of syllables (in all their cases)* ferè ium *commonly (give) ium*. Sed quædam sunt excipienda *but some are to be excepted*, committendaque *memoriæ and to be committed to memory*.

Um *(these give) um*, vates *poet*, senex *old man*, pater *father*, panis *bread*, accipiter *hawk*, canis *dog*, frater *brother*, mater *mother*, juvenis *youth*, apis *bee*, volucris *bird*, crux *cross*, dux *leader*, nux *nut*, Thrax *Thracian*, fax *torch*, grex *herd*, gryps *griffin*, Phryx *Phrygian*, vox *voice*, lynx *lynx*, rex *king*, lex *law*, fur *thief*, ren *kidney*, splen, *spleen*, fraus *fraud*, laus *praise*, mos *manner*, crus *leg*, grus *crane*, sus *swine*, præ *surety*, pes *foot*, flos *flower*.

§ 18. Obs. 2. Ostendere *to shew* sese *themselves* mortali cœtu *to mortal crowd*. Prætenta *stretched before* Sicani sinu *the Sicilian bay*.

Parce metu *spare your fear*, Cytherea o Venus. Quæ gratia *what delight* currum *of chariots (there was)*.

Obs. 3. (*The following make the dative plural*) in ubus non ibus *in ubus not in ibus*: quercus *oak*, ficus *fig*, acus *needle*, arcus *bow*, verus *spit*, lacus *lake*, specus *cave*, tribus *tribe*, artus *limb*, portus *haven*, atque *and*, partus *bringing forth*.

Obs. 4. Sperne *spurn (the endings)* me, mu, mi, mis, si *if* vis *you wish* declinare *to decline* domus *house*.

§ 19. Obs. 2. Ubi *when* Libra fecerit *Libra shall have made* horas *the hours* die *of the day* somnique *and of sleep* pares *equal*. Juvenem *a youth* constantis fide *of constant faith*.

§ 24. Obs. 3. In ablativo singulari *in the ablative singular* hæc

these words malunt formari *choose to be formed* in e quam i in e *rather than i*: pauper *poor*, puber *adult*, hospes *host or guest*, compos in possession (of his senses), superstes *survivor*, senex *old man*, sospes *safe*, impos *powerless*, compositaque cum and (those) compounded with corpus *body* (and) pes *foot*; bicorpor *double-bodied*, bipes *double-footed*, multipes *many-footed*.

§ 26. Obs. 1. Jactantior Ancus Ancus, too boastful. Sum paullo infirmior *I am rather infirm*.

Obs. 2. Purissima mella *very pure honey*; Justissima tellus *very just earth*; Optimus Virgilius *very excellent Virgil*.

§ 30. Obs. 1. Sæpe often videas you may see quaternos sets of four persons cœnare *dine* tribus lectis on three couches (i. e. four on each couch). Hic he exsecat extorts quinas mercedes *five per cent. (monthly)* capiti on the principal.

Obs. 3. Sol aureus the golden sun regit rules per duodena astra through twelve stars (signs of zodiac) cœli of heaven.

Obs. 6. Vafer crafty tentat he tries mille modis in a thousand ways.

Ille he ibat was going cum multis millibus with many thousands armatorum of armed men. Tua area thy threshing-floor triverit may have threshed millia centum a hundred thousands (of measures) frumenti of wheat. Scribit he writes esse sibi that there are to himself millia quinque five thousands chlamydu[m] of cloaks domi at home. Mille cadis a thousand casks Chii of Chian wine veterisque Falerni and of old Falernian positis intus having been placed within, nihil est, this is nothing, tercentum millibus three hundred thousands (of them), potet he should drink acre acetum sour vinegar.

§ 35. Scipiades Scipio vicit conquered Pœnos the Carthaginians et proprios amores and his own passions; vicit eos he conquered them (the Carthaginians); sed but se vincere to conquer himself majus erat was a greater (deed).

§ 40. Qui gurges what whirlpool, aut quæ flumina or what rivers ignara are ignorant lugubris belli of lugubrious war? Quod mare what sea non Dauniae cædes decoloravere have not the Daunian (Italian) slaughters discoloured? Quæ ora what shore caret is without nostro cruore our blood?

§ 41. Quicquid whatsoever reges delirant the kings rave, Achivi plectuntur the Greeks rue. Aude aliquid dare something dignum brevibus Gyaris worthy the narrow Gyari et carcere and a prison, si vis esse aliquis if you wish to be somebody. Non recito cuiquam *I recite to nobody*, nisi amicis but my friends; idque coactus and that when I am compelled; non ubivis not in any place you choose, coramve quibuslibet or in the presence of any one you like. An quidquam sit should any thing be majus nobis greater to us tanto

munere *than so great a reward?* Quidam *a certain person* occurrit *meets me* notus mihi *known to me* tantum *only* nomine *by name*. Sævus *cruel* fingere *to forge* quælibet *any sort of* opprobria *calumny* in quemvis *against any one you choose*. Non contingit cuivis homini *it does not fall to the lot of any one you choose* adire Corinthum *to reach Corinth*. Ut ætas est cuique *according as his age is to each*, ita so facetus *courteous* adopta quemque *adopt each*. Quisque *every one* metet *will reap* semina jacta vitæ suæ *the seed of his own life which he has sown*. Quælibet herba *every herb (you see)* monstrat *shows* præsentem Deum *God present*. Est aliquid *it is something (for a man)* fecisse *to have made himself* dominum *the lord* unius lacertæ *of a single lizard* quocunque loco *in whatever place it may be*, quocunque recessu *in whatever nook*. Quidam *a certain person* ait *says* 'est aliquid *it is something* ire *to go*, non quavis *not by any road that any body likes*;' neque errat quisquam *and no one is wrong*, quæquæ sequens optima *if he follows every thing that is best* quicquid agit *(in) whatever he does*.

§ 42. Obs. 1. Quisquis *whosoever* studet æmulari Pindarum *studies to emulate Pindar*. Ne lest quicunque Deus *whatsoever God*, quicunque heros *whatsoever hero* adhibebitur *shall be employed*.

Obs. 2. Quem dierum cunque *what (kind) of days* soever fors dabit *chance shall give*, appone lucro *set it down for gain*.

Obs. 3. Non quisquam *not any one* isthic *in that place of yours* limat obliquo oculo *looks ashance at* mea commoda *my comforts*. Nec deditus *not given* citharæ *to the harp* nec musæ ulli *nor to any muse*.

Obs. 4. Sis memor *be mindful*, quivis, et *and* quilibet, includunt omnes *include all*; sed contra *but on the other hand*, quisquam, et *and* ullus, excludunt omnes *exclude all*.

§ 44. Equidem *I for my part* nil tale verebar de te *had no such fear of you*. Equidem *I indeed* vidi *have seen* multos *many* se-rentes *when sowing* medicare semina *medicate the seed*.

§ 46. Otia damnantur *leisure is condemned* quæ nulla negotia tractant *which does no work*.

§ 47. Putes *you may think* Garganum nemus *that the Garganian wood* mugire *is roaring*, aut or mare Tuscum *the Tuscan sea*. Eloquar *should I speak*, an sileam *or should I hold my peace?* Mortalia facta peribunt *mortal deeds will perish*, nedum (ne dicam) *not to say that (i. e. much less)*, honos et gratia sermonum *can the honour and beauty of language* stet stand vivax *long-lived*. Hoc *this* Ithacus *the Ithacan (Ulysses)* velit *would wish*, et Atridæ *and the sons of Atreus* mercentur *would buy* magno at a great price. Quid faceret *what should he do?* Quo se ferret

whither should he bear himself, conjuge his wife bis raptâ having been twice snatched away? Quo fletu with what weeping moveret should he move Manes the Manes, quâ voce with what voice (move) Numina the Deities? Proh pudor! for shame! et advena illuserit and shall a stranger have mocked nostris regnis our realms! Sis felix may you be propitious! levesque and may you lighten nostrum laborem our labour, quæcunque whoever (you are)!

§ 48. *Irruerant Danai the Greeks had rushed in; et tectum omne tenebant and were occupying the whole house. Ut semen-tem feceris as you have sown, ita metes so you will reap.*

§ 52. *Obs. 1. Paterfamilias surgat let the father of the family rise cubitu primus from bed first, postremus cubitum eat go to bed last.*

§ 54. *Obs. 5. Injuria injury interdum sometimes utilis est is useful ipsis passis to those themselves who have suffered it.*

Obs. 6. Licet usque eamus we may still go on cantantes singing, minus via lædit the road (thus) tires less. Plura locuturi when about to say more, subito deducimur imbre we are severed by the sudden rain. Aristides pulsus patriâ Aristides when banished from his country, Lacedæmona fugit fled to Lacedæmon. Mandârat furtim he had committed him secretly Threicio regi to the Thracian king, alendum to be reared.

§ 56. *Obs. 3. Fuge avoid quærere to inquire quid sit futurum what may be about to be cras to-morrow.*

§ 64. *Obs. 7. Musæ the Muses locuturæ fuissent would have been about to speak Plautino sermone in the language of Plautus si Latinè loqui vellent if they wished to speak Latin.*

Obs. 10. Sunt bini censores two censors (for each year). Transnanto ter let them thrice swim across Tiberim the Tiber, uncti anointed, quibus est opus to whom there is want somno alto of sound sleep. Laudato praise thou ingentia rura great farms, colito till thou exiguum a little one.

§ 70. *Obs. 4. Spargier agno to be sprinkled with a lamb. Dicier to be said, hic est this is he.*

Obs. 9. Quæ finis what is the end standi of standing? nos we ducimus pass (waste) horas the hours flendo in weeping. Nate Deâ o born from a goddess, omnis fortuna all fortune superanda est is to be conquered ferendo by bearing it. Putandum est it must be thought animas that souls ire go sublimes aloft ad cælum to heaven hinc hence. Parcendum it must be spared (you must spare) teneris them tender; et and dum while palmes the tendril of the vine agit se shoots itself ad auras into the air lætus luxuriant, immissus flowing per purum through the pure (sky) laxis habenis with loose reins (shoots), ipsa itself acie nondum tentanda is

not yet to be tried with the edge falcis of the pruning-knife, sed but frondes the leaves carpendæ (are) to be culled manibus with the hands uncis curved, legendæque and to be plucked inter betwixt and between. Sepes hedges etiam too texendæ (are) to be woven et and pecus omne all cattle tenendum to be restrained. Tellus the earth tamen yet sollicitanda (is) to be stirred pulvisque and the dust movendus to be moved, et and Jupiter Jupiter (the sky) metuendus to be feared uvis for the grapes jam maturis now ripe.

Obs. 10. Missi sunt they were sent speculatum to reconnoitre arcem the citadel.

§ 75. *Obs. 2. Ait he says nil that nothing esse is prius preferable to, nil nothing melius better cælibe vitâ than a single life. "Nil nothing satis est is enough," inquit says he, "quia because sis you are tanti (esteemed) at so much quantum habeas as you have."*

§ 82. *Obs. 1. Plus valet he avails more qui magis arte agit quàm vi who acts with art rather than force, quàm qui vi agit magis quàm arte than he who acts with force rather than art.*

§ 83. *Auditis hear ye? An or amabilis insania (does) a pleasing phrenzy ludit delude me me?*

Novistine do you know locum a place potiore better rure beato than the happy country?

Nonne vides do you not see ut how Tmolus mittit Tmolus sends croceos odores its saffron odours, India India (sends) ebur ivory, molles Sabæi the soft Sabæans (send) sua thura their frankincense?

Num whether honor idem the same beauty adest is present cocto to it cooked? Num whether (could they) occumbere die Sigeis campis on the Sigeian plains, num whether capti being taken potuere could they capi be kept prisoners? num or hath Troja incensa Troy in flames cremavit consumed viros the men?

Quin exercemus why do we not exercise (ratify) potiùs rather pacem æternam eternal peace inter nos among ourselves pactosque hymeneos and plighted nuptials?

Ut valet how fares he? ut meminit nostri how does he remember us?

An memorem should I mention mare the sea quod which alluit bathes (Italy) suprâ above, quodque and that which (bathes it) infrâ below? Anne or (should I mention) lacus tantos so great lakes?

Furor ne cæcus does blind madness an or vis acrior more eager violence rapit hurry on? Fertis ne huc Do ye bear hither pacem peace? an or arma arms?

Dubito I am in doubt memorem whether I should mention Romulum Romulus post hos after these, an or quietum regnum the quiet reign Pompili of Pompilius (Numa), an or superbos fasces the proud fasces (rods with axes) Tarquini of Tarquinius, an orabile lethum the noble death Catonis of Cato. Quid enim for

what ambigitur is questioned? (whether) Castor an or Docilis (names of gladiators) sciat plus has the more skill.

Multum intererit there will be a wide difference Davusne whether Davus loquatur speak, an or heros a hero; maturusne senex whether a mature old man, an or (a person) fervidus warm juvenâ with youth adhuc florente yet blooming; et and (there will be a wide difference whether) matrona potens a potent matron (speak), an or sedula nutrix a busy nurse.

Ipsè he himself (knows not) quis sit who he is, utrum sit whether he is at all, an non sit or is not, id quoque that too nescit he knows not.

Quid refert what signifies it utrum whether Mutius Mutius ignoscat pardon dictis the words an non or not?

Puellæ maidens nescivêre hyemem have been (are usually) ignorant of the (coming) storm carpentes plying ne nocturna quidem not even nightly pensa tasks (in wool). Licet it is allowed lædere amicum to hurt a friend ne joco quidem not even in sport. Ne Hercules quidem contra duos not even Hercules is a match for two.

Haud male by no means ill, Telemachus, proles the offspring patientis Ulysssei of patient Ulysses (said), Ithacæ locus the country of Ithaca non es aptus is not suited equis for horses. Haud ignara by no means ignorant ac and non incauta not incautious futuri of the future.

Sustinere non potuerunt vim tribunitiam they could not support the tribunitian power, nedum his temporibus much less in these times.

Dolere to be in pain philosophi the philosophers affirmant affirm is non modo summum malum not only not the greatest evil, sed ne malum quidem but not even an evil at all. Non modo cogimur not only are we not compelled to do quod non possumus what we cannot, sed ne quantum quidem possumus but not even as much as we can.

§ 85. *Et sapit he both is wise et mecum facit and makes (agrees) with me et judicat and judges Jove æquo with just Jupiter.*

Et and dedit gave septem annos seven years studiis to studies, insenuitque and grew old.

Tribulaque both harrows, traheæque and drags, et and ratri rakes iniquo pondere with galling weight.

§ 86. *Aut (the conjunction) aut jungit joins diversa sibi things different from each other, et contraria and things contrary to each other sensu in sense; Vel vel emendat corrects dicta what has been said, vel or gaudet rejoices addere to add (something) dictis to what has been said; Sive et Seu sive and seu (rejoice) supponere to suppose similes casus similar cases rerum of things; Neve et Neu neve and neu prohibent prohibit; Aut aut vertitur is changed in Ve*

into *ve* poetis by the poets. Omnia quæ all which things Flaccus Flaccus (Horace) demonstrat shews lyricæ carmine in a lyric ode:—

Quem virum what man aut heroa or hero, Clio o Clio, sumes will you take celebrare to celebrate lyrâ on the lyre vel or acri tibiâ on the shrill flute? Aut either in umbrosis oris on the shady banks Heliconis of Helicon (in Bæotia), aut or super Pindo on Pindus (in Thessaly), gelidove in Hæmo or cold Hæmus (in Thrace).—Ille he seu whether egerit he may have driven to flight Parthos Parthians imminentes hanging over Latio Latium domitos tamed justo triumpho in a full triumph, sive or Seras the Seres (Chinese) subiectos lying under oris the shores Orientis of the East et and Indos the Indians—Neve and let not ocyor aura a quicker (too quick) gale tollat carry away te thee iniquum hostile nostris vitiis to our vices—Neu nor sinas do thou suffer Medos the Medes equitare to ride inultos unpunished, te duce you being our general, Cæsar o Cæsar!—Poetæ poets volunt wish aut prodesse aut delectare either to profit or to please. Aut famam sequere either follow history, aut sibi convenientia finge or invent what is coherent. O Laertiade o son of Laertes, quicquid dicam whatever I shall say aut erit aut non will either come to pass or not.—Vel duo vel nemo two or nobody; vel clam vel cum scrobe secretly or with a ditch.

PROPRIA QUÆ MARIBUS,

OR

THE GENDERS OF NOUNS, CONSTRUED.

V. 1.

PROPRIA *proper names* quæ which tribuntur are assigned maribus to the male kind dicas you may call mascula masculines; ut as sunt are Divorum (the names) of the heathen gods; Mars the god of war; Bacchus the god of wine; Apollo the god of wisdom; Virorum (the names) of men; ut as, Cato Cato a noble Roman, Virgilius the poet Virgil: Fluviorum (the names) of rivers; ut as, Tiberis the Tiber (at Rome), Orontes Orontes (a river near Antioch, in Syria): Mensium (the names) of months; ut as, October the month October: Ventorum (the names) of winds; ut as, Libs, the south-west wind, Notus, the south wind, Auster, the south wind: Montium (the names) of mountains; ut as, Othrys Othrys (a mount in Thessaly), Eryx Eryx (in Sicily)—Ætna let Ætna (in Sicily) excipiantur be excepted, et Ceta and Ceta (in Thessaly), Cyllene a mount in Arcadia, Rhodope in Thrace, Calpe Gibraltar; et and Alpes let the Alps excipiantur be excepted, quæ which sunt are fœminæ feminines; neutrum Soracte let the neuter Mt. Soracte (St. Oreste, near Rome) notetur be noted.

V. 8.

PROPRIA nomina *proper names* referentia denoting fœmineum sexum the female sex tribuntur are given fœmineo generi to the feminine gender, sive whether sint they be Dearum (the names) of goddesses; ut as, Juno Jupiter's wife, Venus the goddess of beauty: Muliebria (the names) of women; ut as, Anna Anne, Philotis Philotis: Urbium (the names) of cities; ut as, Elis a city of Peloponnesus, Opus a city of Locris; Regionum (the names) of countries; ut as, Græcia Greece, Persis Persia: item also nomen the name insulæ of an island; ceu as, Creta Crete (Candia), Britannia Britain, Cyprus Cyprus.

Tamen but quædam some names urbium of cities sunt are excipienda to be excepted; ut as, ista mascula these masculines; Sulmo Sermione, in Italy, Agragas Agrigentum (now Girgenti), in Sicily: quædam neutralia some neutrals; ut as, Argos Argos, in Peloponnesus, Tibur Tibur (now Tivoli), in Italy, Præneste now Palestrina, in Italy: et also Anxur Anxur (now Terracina), in Italy, quod which dat gives utrumque genus both genders.

V. 16.

FŒMINEI generis of the feminine gender erunt will be *Plantæ* plants *Gemmæque* and precious stones *Latine in Latin*; ut *as*, *myrtus* myrtle, *sapphirus a sapphire*; et and vulgò commonly nomina appellativa the names *Arborum* of trees erunt will be muliebria feminines; ut *as*, *alnus an alder-tree*, *cupressus a cypress-tree*, *cedrus a cedar-tree*. *Spinus a sloe-tree* mas is masculine, *oleaster a wild olive-tree* mas is masculine, *carduus a thistle*, *helleborus hellebore*, *calamus a reed*, *rubus a briar*, *asphodélusque and asphodel*, *asparagus*, *narcissus*, *amaracus*, et and *acanthus* est mas is masculine. Sunt these nouns are et also neutra of the neuter gender, *siler a withy-tree*, *suber a cork-tree*, thus a *frankincense-tree*, *robur an oak*, que and *acer a maple-tree*.

V. 23.

ETIAM also volucrum (the names) of birds; ceu *as*, *passer a sparrow*, *hirundo a swallow*: *Ferarum* of wild beasts; ut *as*, *tigris a tiger*, *vulpes a fox*: et and *Piscium* (the names) of fishes; ut *as*, *ostrea an oyster*, *cetus a whale*, sunt are dicta called *epicœna nouns* of the epicœne gender; quibus, to which vox ipsa the termination itself feret will give genus aptum the right gender.

V. 26.

ATTAMEN but notandum it is to be observed ex cunctis of all the nouns suprâ above mentioned que and reliquis of those that follow, omne that every noun quod which exit in um ends in um, seu whether *Græcum* it be *Greek* sive or *Latinum* *Latin*, esse is genus neutrum of the neuter gender; sic also nomen a noun invariable undeclinable; ut *as*, *cornu horn* atque and *genu knee*, *Tempe Tempe* (a pleasant vale in *Thessaly*), *fas law*, *nil, nihil nothing*, *instar like*.

V. 30.

NOMEN a noun non crescens not increasing genitivo in the genitive case; ceu *as*, *caro carnis flesh*, *capra capræ a she goat*, *nubes nubis a cloud*, est is genus muliebre the feminine gender.

V. 32.

NOMINA multa many nouns virorum denoting the offices of men in a ending in a dicuntur are called *mascula masculines*; ut *as*, *scriba a scribe*, *assecla a page*, *scurra a buffoon*, et and sic thus *lixa a sutler*, *lanista a master of gladiators*.

Quot as many nouns as *declinatio prima* the first declension *Græcorum* of the *Greeks* fundit in as supplies in as et in es and in es, et and quot as many *Latin nouns* as fiunt are derived ab illis from them per a ending in a, *mascula* are *masculines*; ut *as*, *satrapas*, *satrapa a Persian nobleman*; *athletes*, *athleta a wrestler*. Item also leguntur these are read *mascula* of the masculine gender, *verres a boar pig*, *natalis a birth-day*, *aqualis an ewer*.

Nata nouns compounded ab asse of as a *Roman penny* or *pound*

weight; ut as, centussis a hundred asses; conjunge join to these lienis the spleen, et and orbis an orb, callis a path, caulis a stalk, follis bellows, collis a hill, mensis a month, et and ensis a sword, fustis a club, funis a rope, cenchris a spotted serpent, panis bread, crinis hair, et and ignis fire, cassis a toil or net, fascis a faggot, torris a fire-brand, sentis a thorn, piscis a fish, et and unguis a nail or talon, et also vermis a worm, vectis a lever, postis a door-post; sic so axis an axle-tree, et and amnis a river.

In *er nouns ending in er, ceu as, venter the belly; in os vel us nouns ending in os or us, ut as, logos a word, annus a year, mascula are masculines.*

At but sunt these nouns are feminei generis of the feminine gender, mater a mother, humus the ground, domus a house, alvus a paunch, et and colus a distaff, et also ficus, quartæ of the fourth declension, pro for fructu a fig, que and acus a needle, porticus an arcade, atque and tribus a tribe, socrus a mother-in-law, nurus a daughter-in-law, et and manus a hand, idus the ides of a month; huc to these anus an old woman addenda est is to be added, huc to these mystica vannus the mystical fan Iacchi of Bacchus.

Jungas you may also join his to these Græca Greek nouns ver-tentia os in us changing os into us: papyrus paper, antidotus an antidote, costus the herb zedoary, diametrus a diameter, byssus fine flax, abyssus a bottomless pit, diphthongus a diphthong, synodus an assembly, methodus a method, dialectus a dialect, et and arctus a set of stars called the Bear, cum with multis aliis many other nouns, quæ which nunc at this time perscribere to write at large longum est is tedious.

V. 52.

NOMEN a noun in e ending in e, si if gignit is it makes is in the genitive case, est neutrum is neuter; ut as, mare the sea, rete a net: et and adde add quot whatever nouns in on ending in on, quæ flexa per i which make i in the genitive case; ceu as, barbiton a harp or lute. Adde add his to these, virus poison, pelagus, the sea; vulgus the common people modo sometimes neutrum is neuter, modo sometimes mas is masculine. Adde add chaos chaos, melos melody, a Græcis from Greek words; sic so, cetos a whale, eposque and an epic poem.

V. 56.

SUNT these nouns are incerti generis of the doubtful gender, talpa a mole, et and dama a deer, canalis a channel, et and cytissus hadder, balanus the fruit of the palm-tree, clunis, a buttock, que and finis an end or limit, que and penus all provisions, pampinus a vine-leaf, et and corbis a basket, linter a bark, torquis a chain, specus a cave, anguis a snake; ficus, dans making fici in the genitive case, pro morbo for a disease, atque and phaselus a pinnace, lecythus an oil-cruze, atque and atomus an atom, grossus a green fig, pharus a watch-tower, et and paradisus paradise.

V. 61.

COMPOSITUM a noun compounded a verbo of a verb dans a ending in a est is commune duorum the common of two genders; Grajugena a Grecian born, a from gigno to beget; agricola a farmer, a from colo to till; advena a stranger, a from venio to come, monstrant show id that.

Adde add senex an old man or woman, auriga a charioteer, et and verna a slave by birth, sodalis a companion, vates a prophet, extorris a banished man or woman, patruelis a cousin-german, que and perduellis an open enemy in war, affinis one allied by marriage, juvenis a young person, testis a witness, civis a citizen, canis a dog or bitch, hostis an enemy.

V. 66.

NOMEN a noun est is genus muliebre of the feminine gender si if penultima syllaba the last syllable but one genitivi of the genitive case crescentis increasing sonat sounds longa long, velut as hæc these nouns, pietas pietatis piety, virtus virtutis virtue, monstrant do show.

V. 69.

NOMINA quædam certain nouns monosyllaba of one syllable dicuntur are mascula masculines: sal salt, sol the sun, ren a kidney, et and splen the spleen, Car a Carian, Ser a Chinese, vir a man or husband, vas vadis a surety, as a pound weight, mas the male kind, bes eight ounces, Cres a Cretan, præs a surety for money, et and pes a foot, glis a dormouse, habens having, gliris genitivo in the genitive case, mos a manner, flos a flower, ros dew, et and Tros a Trojan, mus a mouse, dens a tooth, mons a mountain, pons a bridge, et and simul also fons a fountain, seps pro for serpente a serpent, et and gryps a griffin, Thrax a Thracian, rex a king, grex gregis a herd of cattle, et and Phryx a Phrygian.

Etiam also polysyllaba nouns of more than one syllable, in n ending in n, sunt are mascula masculines; ut as, Acarnan a man of Acarnania, lichen a tetter, et and delphin a dolphin: et also in o nouns ending in o, signantia signifying corpus bodily substance; ut as, leo a lion, curculio the weasand or a weevil; sic also senio the number six, ternio the number three, sermo a discourse.

In er, or, et os, nouns ending in er, or, and os, mascula are masculines; ceu as, crater a bowl, conditor a builder, heros a hero: His to these conjunge join torrens a land-flood, nefrens a young toothless animal, oriens the east, que and cliens a client, atque and bidens instrumentum a fork with two spikes, cum pluribus with more nouns in dens ending in dens: Adde add to these gigas a giant, elephas an elephant, adamas adamant, que and Garamas a man of Libya, que also tapes tapestry, atque and lebes a caldron. sic so et also magnes a loadstone, que and unum nomen one noun quintæ of the fifth declension meridies mid-day; et also

quæ the nouns which componuntur are compounded ab of asse a pound weight; ut as, dodrans nine ounces, semis half a pound.

Mascula these masculines jungantur may be joined, Samnis a Samnite, hydrops the dropsy, et and thorax the breast; jungas you may join quoque also mascula these masculines, vervex a wether sheep, phœnix a phœnix, et and bombyx pro for vermiculo a silkworm. Tamen yet ex his of these Siren a mermaid, necnon and also soror a sister, uxor a wife, sunt are muliebre genus of the feminine gender.

V. 87.

Et also hæc nomina these nouns monosyllaba of one syllable sunt are neutralia neutrals: mel honey, fel gall, lac milk, far bread-corn, ver the spring, æs brass, cor the heart, vas vasis a vessel, os ossis a bone, et and os oris a mouth, rus the country, thus frankincense, jus right, crus the leg, pus corruption.

Et also polysyllaba nouns of many syllables in al ending in al, que and in r ending in r; ut as, capital a priest's veil, laquear a roof or ceiling. Alec a sharp pickle neutrum is neuter, alex a kind of fish muliebre is feminine.

V. 91.

SUNT these nouns are dubii generis of the doubtful gender; scrobs a ditch, serpens a serpent, bubo an owl, rudens a cable, grus a crane, perdix a partridge, lynx a spotted beast, limax a snail, stirps pro for trunco the body of a tree, et and calx pedis the heel of the foot.

Addē add dies a day, esto let it be tantum only mas masculine numero secundo in the plural number.

V. 94.

SUNT these nouns are commune of the common of two genders: parens a father or mother, que and auctor an author, infans an infant, adolescens a young man or woman, dux a leader, illex a decoy or lure, hæres an heir, exlex an outlaw.

Creata nouns compounded a of fronte a forehead, ut as, bifrons one with two faces; custos a keeper, bos an ox, bull, or cow, fur a thief, sus a swine, atque and sacerdos a priest or priestess (are also of the common of two genders).

V. 97.

NOMEN a noun est is mas of the masculine gender, si if penultima the last syllable but one genitivi of the genitive case crescentis increasing sit be brevis short; ut, as, sanguis blood, genitivo in the genitive case sanguinis.

V. 99.

HYPERDISSYLLABON let a noun of more than two syllables, in do ending in do, quod which dat makes diuis in the genitive case, sit be fœminei generis of the feminine gender; atque also in go a

noun ending in go, quod which makes ginis in genitivo in the genitive case: dulcedo sweetness, faciens making dulcedinis, monstrat shows id that tibi to you, que and compago compaginis a joint id that. Adjice add virgo a virgin, grando hail, fides faith, compes a fetter, teges a mat, et and seges corn-land, arbor a tree, que and hyems winter; sic so chlamys a mantle, et and sindon fine linen, Gorgon Medusa's head, icon an image, et and Amazon an Amazon.

Græcula Greek nouns finita in as ending in as, vel in is or in is; ut as, lampas a lamp, iaspis a jasper, cassis a helmet, cuspis the point of a weapon: item also mulier a woman, et and pecus cattle dans making pecudis in the genitive case.

Adde add fœmineis to the feminine, forfex a pair of shears, pellex a harlot, que and, carex sedge, supellex household stuff, appendix an appendage, hystrix a porcupine, coxendix a hip, que and filix fern.

V. 109.

NOMEN a noun in a ending in a, signans signifying rem a thing non animatam without life, est is neutrale genus of the neuter gender; ut as, problema a question proposed: En nouns also ending in en; ut as, omen a token of good or bad luck: Ar nouns ending in ar; ut, as, jubar a sunbeam: Ur que and nouns ending in ur; ut as, jecur the liver; que and Us nouns ending in us; ut as, onus a burden: Put nouns ending in put; ut as, occiput the hinder part of the head.

Attamen but ex his of these pecten a comb, furfur bran, sunt are mascula masculines.

Sunt these nouns are neutra of the neuter gender, cadaver a carcass, verber a stripe, iter a journey, suber cork, tuber pro for fungo a mushroom, et and uber a teat, gingiber ginger, et and laser the herb assafœtida, cicer a vetch, et and piper pepper, atque and papaver a poppy, et also siser a parsnip.

Addas you may add his to these neutra the neuters, æquor a smooth surface, marmor marble, que and ador fine wheat; atque and pecus cattle, quando when facit it makes pecoris in genitivo in the genitive case.

V. 117.

SUNT these nouns are dubii generis of the doubtful gender, cardo a hinge, margo the brink or brim of a thing, cinis ashes, imbrex a gutter-tile, forceps a pair of tongs, et and, pumex a pumice-stone, cortex the rind or bark of a tree, et and, pulvis dust, que and adeps fat.

Adde add culex a gnat, natrix a water-serpent, et and onyx a precious stone, cum prole with its compounds, que and silex a flint, quamvis although usus use vult will have hæc these nouns melius rather dicier to be called mascula masculines.

V. 121.

ISTA *these nouns sunt are communis generis of the common of two genders*: vigil *a sentinel*, pugil *a boxer*, exul *a banished man or woman*, præsul *a prelate*, homo *a man or woman*, et and nemo *nobody*, martyr *a martyr*, Ligur *a Ligurian*, augur *a soothsayer*, et and Arcas *an Arcadian*, antistes *a chief priest or priestess*, miles *a soldier*, pedes *a foot man or woman*, interpretes *an interpreter*, comes *a companion*, hospes *a host or guest*: sic so ales *any great bird*, præsēs *a president*, princeps *a prince or princess*, auceps *a fowler*, eques *a horse man or woman*, obses *a hostage*: atque and alia multa nomina *many other nouns quæ which creantur are derived a verbis from verbs*; ut as, conjux *a husband or wife*, judex *a judge*, vindex *an avenger*, opifex *a workman*, et and aruspex *a diviner*.

V. 127.

ADJECTIVA *adjectives habentia having duntaxat only unam vocem one termination, ut as, felix happy, audax bold, retinent keep genus omne every gender sub unâ under that one ending*: si if cadant *they fall sub under geminâ voce a double termination, velut as, omnis et and omne all, vox prior the former word est is commune dufim the common of two genders, vox altera the second word neutrum is neuter*: at but si if variant *they vary tres voces the three endings, ut as, sacer, sacra, sacrum sacred, vox prima the first word est is mas masculine, altera the second foemina feminine, tertia the third neutra is neuter*.

Obs. 1. At but sunt *there are some adjectives quæ which vocares you may call substantiva substantives prope in a manner flexu by their declining, tamen yet reperta they are found to be adjectiva adjectives naturâ by nature que and usu by use. Talia such sunt are, pauper poor, puber ripe of age, cum with degener degenerate, uber fruitful, et and dives rich, locuples wealthy, sospes safe, comes accompanying or attending, atque and superstes surviving, cum with paucis aliis a few others quæ which lectio justa a due reading docebit will teach*.

Obs. 2. Hæc *these adjectives gaudent like adsciscere to take sibi to themselves proprium quendam flexum a certain peculiar way of declining, campester champaign, volucer swift, celebrer, famous, celer speedy, atque and saluber wholesome; jungere join pedester belonging to a footman, equester, belonging to a horseman, et and acer sharp; jungere join paluster marshy; atque and alacer cheerful, sylvester woody*.

At but tu you variabis *shall decline hæc these adjectives sic thus, hic celer in the masculine, hæc celeris in the feminine, hoc celere neutro in the neuter gender: aut or aliter otherwise sic thus, hic atque hæc celeris in the masculine and feminine, rursum again hoc celere est is tibi neutrum your neuter*.

NOUNS HETEROCLITE OR IRREGULAR CONSTRUED.

V. 144.

QUÆ *those nouns which variant change genus their gender aut or flexum declension, quæcunque and whatsoever nouns novatæ ritu after a new manner deficiunt fall short, ve or superant exceed in declining, sunt let them be called heteroclita heteroclites or nouns irregular.*

V. 146.

CERNIS *you see hæc these nouns variantia varying partim in part genus their gender, ac and flexum their declining :*

Pergamus *the city Troy gignit makes Pergama in plurali numero in the plural number.*

Prior numerus *the singular number dat gives his to these nouns neutrum genus the neuter gender, alter the plural utrumque both masculine and neuter : rastrum a rake cum with fræno the bit of a bridle, et and clathrum a bar, porrumque and a leek, siserque and a carrot; sed but fræna neuter et and fræni masculine, quo pacto after which manner formant they form et also cætera the rest, sibilus a hissing, atque and jocus sport, locus a place. — Jungas you may join his to these quoque also plurima many more.*

V. 152.

PROPAGO *the stock quæ which sequitur follows est is manca defective casu in case ve or numero in number.*

V. 153.

QUÆ *nouns which variant vary nullum casum no case ; ut as, fas divine law, nil nothing, nihil nothing, instar likeness or proportion, et and multa many nouns in u ending in u, simul also in i; veluti as, que both cornu a horn que and genu a knee; sic so, gummi gum, frugi thrifty; sic so, Tempe a pleasant vale in Thes-saly, tot so many, quot how many, et and omnes numeros all nouns of number a tribus from three ad centum to a hundred, vocabis you shall call aptota aptotes or without cases*

V. 157.

QUE *and nomen a noun cui vox cadit una that has but one case est is called monoptoton a monoptote ; ceu as, noctu by night, natu by birth, jussu by order, injussu without order, simul also astu by craft, promptu in readiness, permissu with leave : legimus we have read astus craft, plurali in the plural number ; legimus we have*

read inficias a denial, sed but vox ea sola that case alone reperta est is found.

V. 161.

SUNT those nouns are called diptota diptotes, quibus to which duplex flexura two cases remansit have remained: ut as, fors chance dabit will make forte sexto in the ablative case, que and spontis choice sponte; et and jugeris an acre dat makes jugere sexto in the ablative case; autem but verberis a stripe verberere: quoque also suppetiæ aid dant makes suppetias quarto in the accusative case; tantundem just so much dat makes tantidem, impetis an attack format makes impete in the ablative case; sic so repetundarum illegal exactions repetundis. Autem but verberis a stripe cum with jugere an acre optat wishes for quatuor casus four cases plurali in the plural number.

V. 168.

VOCANTUR nouns are called triptota triptotes quibus in which inflectis you decline tres casus three cases; sic so est it is opis nostræ in our power, legis you meet with fer opem bring assistance, atque and dignus worthy ope of help: flecte decline preci prayer, atque and precem, et and blandus petit he sues amicum his friend prece with entreaties: at but frugis fruit caret wants tantum only recto the nominative case, et and also ditionis rule; vox the word vis force est is integra entire, nisi unless fortè perhaps dativus the dative case desit be wanting. Junge join his to these vicis a turn atque and vicem et and vice; quoque also plus more habet has pluris, et and plus quarto in the accusative case: numerus alter the plural number datur is given omnibus his to all these nouns.

V. 175.

NOTES you may observe propria cuncta all proper names, quibus est which have natura a nature coercens restraining them, ne fiant from becoming plurima plurals; et and alia multa many other nouns occurrent tibi will fall in your way legenti in reading, raro seklom excedentia exceeding numerum primum the singular number.

V. 178.

MASCULA these masculines sunt are contenta confined numero secundo to the plural number tantum only, manes ghosts, majores ancestors, cancelli lattices, liberi children, et and antes the fore-ranks of vines, et and lemures spectres, proceres nobles, simul also fasti annals, atque and minores posterity, posterius posterity et and hi Superi the Gods above, natales an extraction; adde add penates household gods, et and loca names of places plurali of the plural number, quales as que both Gabii a city in Italy, que and Locri the inhabitants of Locris, et and quæcunque whatever nouns similis rationis of like nature legas you may read passim in authors.

Hæc *these nouns sunt are* fœminei generis of the feminine gender, que and numeri secundi of the plural number: exuviæ any thing stript off from the body, phalære horse-trappings, que and grates thanks, manubiæ the spoils of war, et and idus the ides of the month, nundinæ a fair, itemque and also indutiæ a truce, item also que both insidiæ an ambush, que and minæ threats, excubiæ watch by day or night, nonæ the nones of the month, nugæ trifles, que and tricæ toys, calendæ the calends of a month, quisquilæ the sweepings or refuse of any thing, thermæ a hot-bath, cunæ a cradle, diræ curses, que and exequiæ funeral rites, feriæ holidays, et and inferiæ sacrifices performed to the dead; sic so que both primitiæ the first fruits of the year, que and plagæ signantes signifying retia nets, et and valvæ folding-doors, que and divitiæ riches, item also nuptiæ a marriage, et and laces the bowels; Thebæ Thebes et and Athenæ Athens addantur may be added, quod genus of which sort invenias you may find et also nomina plura more names locorum of places.

Hæc neutra *these nouns neuter pluralia of the plural number leguntur are read* rariùs seldom primo in the singular: mœnia the walls of a city, cum with tesquis rough and desert places, præcordia the midriff of a body, lustra the dens ferarum of wild beasts, arma arms, mapalia Numidian cottages, sic so, bellaria junkets, munia an office or charge, castra a camp; funus a funeral petit requires justa solemnities, et and virgo a virgin petit requires sponsalia espousals; disertus an eloquent man amat loves rostra the pulpit, que and pueri children gestant carry crepundia rattles, que and infantes infants colunt cunabula lie in cradles; augur a soothsayer consult consults exta the entrails, et and absolvens finishing his sacrifice superis to the gods above recantat chants over effata their decrees; festa the feasts deum of the gods, ceu as, Bacchanalia feasts dedicated to Bacchus, poterant will be proper jungi to be joined. Quod si and if leges you shall read plura more, licet reponas you may place them quoque also hac classe in this rank.

V. 202.

Hæc *these nouns sunt are* simul also et both quarti of the fourth atque and secundi flexûs of the second declension: enim for laurus a bay-tree facit makes genitivo in the genitive case lauri et and laurûs; sic so quercus an oak, pinus a pine-tree, ficus pro for fructu a fig atque and arbore the tree; sic also colus a distaff, atque and penus all kinds of victuals, cornus, quando when habetur it signifies arbor a tree; sic so lacus a lake, atque and domus a house: licet although hæc these nec recurrant are not found ubique in every case. Leges you will read quoque also plura more his than these, quæ which jure relinquo you may well leave prius to the ancients.

AS IN PRÆSENTI, ETC.,

OR

THE RULES FOR VERBS, CONSTRUED.

V. 1.

AS in præsentī a verb making as in the present tense format forms perfectum the preterperfect tense in avi: ut as, no nas to swim navi, vocito vocitas to call often vocitavi. Deme except lavo to wash lavi, juvo to help juvi, que and nexo to knit dans ui making ui, et and seco to cut quod which makes secui, sic et so too mico to glitter quod which dat makes micui, sic so plico to fold quod which makes plicui, sic et so too frico to rub quod which dat makes fricui; sic so domo to tame quod which makes domui, tono to thunder quod which makes tonui, verbum the verb sono to sound quod which makes sonui, crepo to crack quod which makes crepui, veto to forbid quod which dat makes vetui, atque and cubo to lie along cubui: hæc these verbs raro formantur are seldom formed in avi. Do das to give vult will formare form ritè by custom dedi, sto stas to stand steti.

V. 10.

Es in præsentī a verb making ēs in the present tense format forms perfectum the preterperfect tense dans ui by ui: ut as, nigreo nigres to grow black nigrui: excipe except jubeo to bid jussi; sorbeo to sup up habet hath sorbui quoque also sorpsi, mulceo to stroke gently mulsi; luceo to shine vult will have luxi, sedeo to sit sedi, que and video to see vult will have vidi: sed but prandeo to dine makes prandi, strideo to scream stridi, suadeo to advise suasi, rideo to laugh risi, et and ardeo to be on fire habet hath arsi.

Syllaba prima the first syllable his quatuor in these four verbs infra following geminatur is doubled: namque for pendeo to hang down vult will have pependi, que and mordeo to bite momordi, spondeo to betroth vult will habere have spopondi, que and tondeo to clip or shear totondi.

Si if l vel r, l or r, stet stand ante before geo, geo vertitur is changed in si into si: ut as, urgeo to urge ursi; mulgeo to milk dat makes mulsi quoque also mulxi, frigeo to be cold frixi, lugeo to mourn luxi, et and augeo to increase habet hath auxi.

Fleo fles to weep dat makes flevi, leo les to anoint levi, que and

inde natum *its compound* deleo *to wipe out* deleui; pleo *ples to fill* plevi, neo *to spin* nevi.

Mansi, formatur *is formed a from* maneo *to tarry*; torqueo *to twist* vult *will have* torsi, hæreo *to stick* hæsi.

Veo, fit *is made* vi: *as*, serveo *to be hot* fervi: niveo *to wink or beckon*, et *and* inde satum *its compound* conniveo *to wink*, poscit *requires* nivi et *and* nixi: cieo *to stir up* civi, que *and* vicio *to bind* vievi.

V. 28.

TERTIA *the third conjugation* formabit *will form* præteritum *the preterperfect tense* ut *as* manifestum *is shown* hic *here*:

Bo, fit *is made* bi: *as*, lambo *to lick* lambi: excipe *except* scribo *to write* scripsi, et *and* nubo *to be married* nupsi: antiquum *the old verb* cumbo *to lie down* dat *maketh* cubui.

Co, fit *is made* ci: *as* vinco *to overcome* vici; parco *to spare* vult *will have* peperci et *and* parci; dico *to say* dixi, quoque *also* duco *to lead* duxi.

Do, fit *is made* di: *as*, mando *to eat* mandi; sed *but* scindo *to cut* dat *makes* scidi, findo *to cleave* fidi, fundo *to pour out* fudi; que *and* tundo *to pound* tutudi, pendo *to weigh* pependi, tendo *to bend* tetendi, que *and* junge *join* cado *to fall* quod *which* format *forms* cecidi; cædo *pro for* verbero *to beat* cecidi; cedo *pro for* discedere *to depart*, sive *or* locum dare *to give place*, cessi: vado *to go*, rado *to shave*, lædo *to hurt*, ludo *to play*, divido *to divide*, trudo *to thrust*, claudo *to shut*, plaudo *to clap hands*, rodo *to gnaw*, ex *do from* do, semper *always* faciunt *si* make *si*.

Go, fit *is made* xi: *as*, jungo *to join* junxi: sed *r but* the letter *r* ante *before* go *vult will have* si, ut *as* spargo *to sprinkle* sparsi; lego *to read* legi, et *and* ago *to act* facit *makes* egi: tango *to touch* dat *makes* tetigi, pungo *to prick* punxi, que *and* pupugi; frango *to break* dat *makes* fregi, pago *for* paciscor *to covenant* vult *will have* pepigi; etiam *also* pango *to fasten* pegi, sed *but* usus *custom* maluit *had rather* form *panxi*.

Ho, fit *is made* xi: ceu *as* traho *to draw* traxi docet *shows*, et *and* veho *to carry* vexi.

Lo, fit *is made* ui: ceu *as*, colo *to till* colui: excipe *except* psallo *to play upon an instrument* cum *p with* p, et *and* sallo *to season with salt* sine *p without* p, nam *for* utrumque *both* tibi format *make* li; vello *to pluck* dat *makes* velli quoque *also* vulsi, fallo *to deceive* fefelli; cello *pro for* frango *to break* ceculi, que *and* pello *to drive away* pepuli.

Mo, fit *is made* ui: ceu *as*, vomo *to vomit* vomui; sed *but* emo *to buy* facit *maketh* emi; como *to deck the hair* petit *requires* compsi, promo *to draw out* prompsi: adjice *add* demo *to take away* quod *which* format *forms* dempsi, sumo *to take* sumpsit: premo *to press* pressi.

No, fit is made vi: ceu as, sino to suffer sivi; excipe except temno to condemn tempesi; sterno to strew dat makes stravi, sperno to despise sprevi, lino to smear over levi, interdum sometimes lini et and livi, quoque also cerno to discern crevi; gigno to beget, pono to put, cano to sing, dant make genui, posui, cecini.

Po, fit is made psi: as, scalpo to scratch scalpsi; excipe except rumpo to break rupi, et and strepo to make a noise, quod which format formeth strepui, quæque inde creantur, and the verbs which are formed from it.

Quo, fit is made qui: as, linquo to leave liqui; demito except coquo to cook or dress meat coxi.

Ro, fit is made vi: ceu as, sero pro for planto to plant et and semino to sow sevi, quod which signans signifying ordino to set in order dabit will make semper always melius rather serui; verro to brush vult will have verri; uro to burn vult will have ussi, gero to bear gessi, quæro to seek quæsivi, tero to beat or bruise trivi, curro to run cucurri.

So, formabit will form sivi, veluti as, arcesso to send for, incesso to attack, atque and lacesso to provoke probat shows: sed but tolle except capesso to take in hand quod which facit makes capessi, que and capessivi; atque and facesso to despatch facessi, et also viso to go to see visi; sed but pinso to pound or grind habebit will have pinsui.

Sco, fit is made vi: as, pasco to feed cattle pavi; posco to require vult will have poposci, disco to learn vult will formare form didici, sic so edisco to learn thoroughly dat gives edidici.

To, fit is made ti: as, verito to turn verti; sed but activum let this verb active sisto, pro for facio stare to make to stand notetur be marked, nam for dat it makes jure by right stiti; mitto to send dat giveth misi, peto to ask vult will formare form petivi; sterto to snore habet hath stertui, meto to mow messui. Exi, fit is made ab from ecto: ut as, flecto to bend flexi; necto to knit dat makes nexui habetque and also has nexi; etiam also pecto to comb dat makes pexui, habet it hath quoque also pexi.

Vo, fit is made vi: as, volvo to roll volvi; excipe except vivo to live vixi.

Xo, fit is made ui: as, texo to weave, quod which habebit will have texui, monstrat showeth.

Cio, fit is made ci: as, facio to do feci, quoque also jacio to cast jeci: antiquum the old verb lacio to allure lexi, quoque also specio to behold spexi, elicio to elicit elicui; sed but cætera the rest a lacio from lacio (make) lexi.

Dio, fit is made di: as, fodio to dig fodi.

Gio makes gi: ceu as, fugio to fly fugi.

Pio, fit is made pi: as, capio to take cepi; excipe except cupio to desire cupivi; et and rapio to snatch rapui, sapio to savour or taste sapui, atque and sapivi.

Rio, fit is made ri : as, pario to bring forth young peperii.

Tio makes ssi, geminans s doubling the letter s : ut as quatio to shake quassi, quod which vix reperitur is scarcely found in usu in use.

Denique finally uo, fit is made ui : as, statuo to erect statui; pluo to rain format formeth pluvi, sive or plui; sed but struo to build makes struxi, fluo to flow fluxi.

V. 88.

QUARTA the fourth conjugation dat is ivi makes is in the present tense ivi in the preterperfect : ut as, scio scias to know scivi monstrat tibi shows you. Excipias except venio to come dans making veni, et and veneo to be sold venii, raucio to be hoarse rausi, farcio to stuff farsii, sarcio to patch sarsii, sepio to hedge sepsi, sentio to perceive sensi, fulcio to prop fulsi, item also haurio to draw hausi, sancio to establish sanxi, vincio to bind vinxi; salio pro for salto to leap salui, et and amicio to clothe dabit will give amicui.

V. 94.

SIMPLEX the simple verb compositumque and its compound dat make tibi to you idem præteritum the same preterperfect tense : ut as, docui I have taught, edocui I have taught perfectly monstrat showeth. Sed but syllaba the syllable, quam which simplex the simple verb semper always geminat doubles, non geminatur is not doubled composito in the compound : præterquam except his tribus in these three, præcurro to run before, excurro to run out, repungo to prick again, atque and ritè creatis in verbs rightly compounded a of do to give, disco to learn, sto to stand, posco to require.

Compositum the compound verb a of plico to fold, cum with sub, vel or nomine a noun, ut as ista these, supplico to beseech, multiplico to multiply, gaudet will formare form plicavi; applico to apply, complico to fold up, replico to fold back or lay open, et and explico to unfold, formant make quoque also ui.

Quamvis although simplex the simple verb oleo to smell vult will have olui, tamen yet quodvis compositum every compound verb inde thereof formabit will form melius rather olevi; at but redolet to cast a scent sequitur follows formam the form simplicis of the simple verb, que and subolet to smell a little.

Omnia composita all the compound verbs a of pungo to prick formabunt will form punxi; unum one, repugno to prick again, vult will have pupugi, interdumque and sometimes repunxi.

Natum the compound a of do to give, quando when est it is inflexio tertia the third conjugation, ut as, addo to add, credo to believe, edo to set forth, dedo to yield up, reddo to restore, perdo to lose, abdo to put away, vel or obdo to set against, condo to build, indo to put in, trado to deliver, prodo to betray, vendo to sell, make

didi: at *but* unum *one*, abscondo *to hide*, makes abscondi. Natum *a compound a of* sto *stas to stand* habebit *will have* stiti.

V. 111.

VERBA hæc simplicia *these simple verbs*, si *if* componantur *they are compounded*, mutant *change* vocalem primam *the first vowel* præsentis *of the present tense*, que *and* præteriti *of the preterperfect tense*, in *e into e*: ut *as*, damno *to condemn* dans *making* condemno, lacto *to suckle*, delecto *to delight*, sacro *to dedicate* consecro; et *so*, fallo *to deceive*, arceo *to drive away*, tracto *to handle*, fatiscor *to be weary*, cando *to burn* vetus *an old word*, capto *to lie in wait*, jacto *to throw*, patior *to suffer*, que *and* gradior *to step*, partio *to divide*, carpo *to crop*, patro *to achieve or finish*, scando *to climb*, spargo *to sprinkle*; que *and* pario *to bring forth young*, cujus duo nata *whose two compounds*, comperit *to know for certain* et *and* reperit *to find*, dant *make the preterperfect tense* per *i in i*; sed *but* cætera *the rest* per *ui in ui*, velut *as* hæc *these*, aperire *to open*, operire *to cover*.

Hæc duo composita *let these two compounds a of* pasco pavi *to feed cattle*, compesco *to pasture together*, dispesco *to drive from pasture*, notentur *be observed* habere *to make tantum only* pescui; cætera *the rest*, ut *as*, epasco *to eat up*, servabunt *will keep* usum *the use simplicis of the simple verb*.

V. 122.

HÆC *these verbs*, habeo *to have*, lateo *to lie hid*, salio *to leap*, statuo *to erect*, cado *to fall*, lædo *to hurt*, et *and* tango *to touch*, atque *and* cano *to sing*, sic *so* quæro *to seek*, cædo cecidi *to beat*, sic *also* egeo *to want*, teneo *to hold fast*, taceo *to hold one's peace*, sapio *to savour*, que *and* rapio *to snatch*, si *if* componantur *they are compounded*, mutant *change* vocalem primam *the first vowel* in *i into i*: ut *as*, rapio *to snatch* rapui, eripio *to take away by force* eripui; natum *a compound a of* cano *to sing* dat *makes præteritum the preterperfect tense* per *ui, in ui*, ceu *as*, concino *to sing in concert* concinui.

Sic *also* displiceo *to displease a of* placeo *to please*; sed *but* hæc duo *these two compounds*, complaceo *to please cum with* perplaceo *to please very much*, benè servant *well keep* usum *the use simplicis of the simple verb*.

Composita *the compounds a of* verbis *the verbs* calco *to tread*, salto *to leap or dance*, mutant *change a per u, a into u*: conculco *to tread upon*, inculco *to tread in*, resulto *to rebound*, demonstrant *show id that tibi to you*.

Composita *the compounds a of* claudio *to shut*, quatio *to shake*, lavo *to wash*, rejiciunt *a cast away a*: occludo *to shut against*, excludo *to shut out, a from* claudio *to shut*, docet *teaches id this*; que *and* percutio *to strike*, excutio *to strike out a from* quatio *to strike*; a *from* lavo *to wash*, nata *the compounds* proluo *to drench*, diluo *to wash out*.

V. 135.

Si if componas you compound hæc these verbs, ago to act, emo to buy, sedeo to sit, rego to rule, frango to break, et and capio to take, jacio to cast, lacio to allure, specio to behold, premo to press, pango to fasten, sibi mutant they change vocalem primam the first vowel præsentis of the present tense in i into i, nunquam never præteriti of the preterperfect tense; ceu as of frango to break, refringo to break open makes refregi; incipio to begin incepti, a of capio to take; sed but pauca let a few notentur be marked: namque for perago to finish sequitur follows suum simplex its simple verb, que and satago to be busy; atque and dego to live ab from ago to act dat makes degi, cogo to bring together coegi; sic so a from rego to rule, pergo to go forward makes perrexī; quoque and surgo to rise vult will have surrexi; mediâ syllabâ the middle syllable præsentis of the present tense ademptâ being taken away.

Ista quatuor composita these four compound verbs a of pango to fix or fasten retinent a keep a: depango to fix in the ground, oppango to fasten against, circumpango to fasten about, atque and repango to fasten again.

Facio to do variat changeth nil nothing, nisi unless præposito præeunte a preposition goes before; olfacio to smell out docet teaches id that, cum with calfacio to make hot, que and inficio to infect.

Nata the compounds a of lego to read, re, per, præ, sub, trans, ad, præeunte going before, servant keep vocalem the vowel præsentis of the present tense; cætera the rest mutant change it in i into i; de quibus of which hæc these tantum only, intelligo to understand, diligo to love, negligo to neglect, faciunt make præteritum their preterperfect tense lexi; reliqua omnia all the rest legi.

V. 152.

Nunc now discas you may learn formare to form Supinum the supine ex præterito from the preterperfect tense.

Bi, sumit takes sibi to itself tum: namque for sic so bibi to drink fit is made bibitum.

Ci, fit is made ctum: as vici to overcome victum testatur shows, et and ici to smite dans making ictum, feci to do factum, quoque also jeci to cast jactum.

Di, fit is made sum: as vidi to see visum: quædam some geminant s double s; ut as, pandi to open passum, sedi to sit sessum; adde add scidi to cut quod which dat makes scissum, atque and fidi to cleave fissum, quoque also fodi to dig fossum.

Hic here etiam also advertas you may mark, quod that syllaba prima the first syllable, quam which præteritum the preterperfect tense vult geminari will have doubled, non geminatur is not doubled supinis in the supines: idque and this totondi to clip or shear dans making tonsum, docet shows, atque and cecidi to beat quod which

maketh cæsum, et and cecidi to fall quod which dat maketh casum, atque and tetendi to bend quod which maketh tensum et also tentum, tutudi to beat or pound tunsum, atque and dedi to give quod which jure by right poscit requires datum, atque and momordi to bite vult will have morsum.

Gi, fit is made ctum : as, legi to read lectum ; pegi to fasten que and pepigi to covenant dant make pactum, fregi to break fractum, quoque also tetigi to touch tactum, egi to act actum, pupugi to prick punctum ; fugi to flee dat makes fugitum.

Li, fit is made sum : as salli, stans standing pro for sale condio to season with salt, makes salsum ; pepuli to drive away dat makes pulsum, ceculi to break culsum ; atque and fefelli to deceive falsum ; velli to pluck dat makes vulsum ; quoque also tuli to bear habet hath latum.

V. 171.

Mi, ni, pi, qui, formant form tum, velut as manifestum is manifest hic here : emi to buy emptum, veni to come ventum, cecini a from cano to sing cantum ; cepi a from capio to take captum, quoque also cœpi to begin cœptum : rupi a from rumpo to break ruptum ; quoque also liqui to leave lictum.

Ri, fit is made sum : as, verri to brush versum ; excipe except peperi to bring forth young partum.

Si, fit is made sum : as, visi to go to see visum ; tamen but misi to send formabit will form missum, s geminato s being doubled ; excipe except fulsi to prop fultum, hausi to draw haustum, sarsi to patch sartum, quoque also farci to stuff fartum, ussi to burn ustum, gessi to bear gestum ; torsi to wreath requirit hath duo two supines tortum et and torsum ; indulsi to indulge indultum que and indulsum.

Psi, fit is made ptum : as, scripsi to write scriptum, quoque also sculpsi to engrave sculptum.

Ti, fit is made tum : namque for steti a from sto to stand, que and stiti a from sisto to make to stand, ambo both ritè by right dant make statum : tamen but excipe except verti to turn versum.

Vi, fit is made tum : as, flavi to blow flatum ; excipe except pavi to feed cattle pastum ; lavi to wash dat makes lotum, interdum sometimes lautum, atque and lavatum ; potavi to drink facit makes potum, interdum sometimes et also potatum ; sed but favi to favour makes fautum, cavi to beware cautum ; a from sero sevi to sow ritè formes you may rightly form satum ; livi que and lini to besmear dant make litum ; solvi a from solvo to loose solutum, volvi a from volvo to roll volutum ; singultivi to sob vult will have singultum, veneo venis venivi to be sold venum, sepelivi to bury ritè by right sepultum.

Quod a verb that dat makes ui, dat makes itum : as, domui to tame domitum ; excipe except quodvis verbum every verb in uo, quia because semper formabit it will always form ui in utum ui in

utum, ut *as*, exui to put off exutum. deme except rui a from ruo to rush dans making ruitum; secui to cut vult will have sectum, enecui to slay enectum, que and fricui to rub frictum, item also miscui to mingle mistum, et and amicui to clothe dat makes amicum: torruui to roast habet hath tostum, docui to teach doctum, que and tenui to hold tentum, consului to consult consultum, alui to feed altum que and alitum; sic so salui to leap saltum, colui to till quoque also ocului to hide cultum; pinsui to pound or grind habet hath pistum, rapui to snatch raptum, que and serui a from sero to set in order vult will have sertum; sic so quoque also texui to weave habet hath textum.

Sed but hæc these verbs mutant change ui in sum ui into sum: nam for censeo to judge habet hath censum, cellui to break celsum, meto messui to reap habet hath quoque also messum; item also nexui to knit nexum; sic so quoque also pexui to comb habet hath pexum.

Xi, fit is made ctum: *as*, vinxi to bind vinctum: quinque five abjiciunt n cast away n, ut *as*, finxi to form or fashion fictum, minxi to make water mictum, adjice add pinxi to paint dans giving pictum, strinxi to bind fast strictum, quoque also rinxi to grin rictum.

Flexi to bend, plexi to twist, fixi to fasten, dant make xum; et and fluo to flow fluxum.

V. 209.

Quodque compositum supinum every compound supine formatur is formed ut *as* simplex the simple supine, quamvis although eadem syllaba the same syllable non stet does not continue semper always utrique to them both. Composita the compounds a of tunsum to pound, n demptâ by taking away n, make tusum; a of ruitum to rush, i media the middle letter i demptâ being taken away fit is made rutum; et and quoque also a of saltum to leap sultum; composita the compounds a of sero to sow, quando when format it forms satum, dant make situm.

Hæc these supines captum to take, factum to do, jactum to cast, raptum to snatch, mutant a per e change a into e; et and cantum to sing, partum to bring forth young, sparsum to sprinkle, carptum to crop, quoque also fartum to stuff.

Verbum the verb edo to eat compositum being compounded non facit maketh not estum, sed but esum; unum one duntaxat only comedo to eat up formabit will form utrumque both.

A from nosco to know duo these two compounds tantum only, cognitum to know et and agnitum to know again, habentur ore found; cætera the rest dant make notum: noscitum jam now est is nullo in usu not in use.

V. 220.

VERBA in or, verbs ending in or, admittunt take præteritum their

preterperfect tense ex posteriore supino from the latter supine, u verso being turned per us into us, et and sum vel fui consociato being added; ut as, a of lectu to be read lectus sum vel or fui I have been read. At but horum of these verbs nunc sometimes est there is deponens a deponent, nunc sometimes est there is commune a common notandum to be noted.

Nam for labor to slide dat makes lapsus; patior to suffer passus, et and ejus nata its compounds, ut as, compator to suffer together compassus que and perpetior to endure formans forming perpassus; fateor to own dat makes fassus, et and inde nata its compounds, ut as, confiteor to confess confessus, que and diffiteor to deny formans forming diffessus; gradior to step dat makes gressus, et and inde nata its compounds, ut as, digredior to step aside digressus: junge add fatiscor to be weary fessus sum, metior to measure mensus sum, et and utor to use usus.

Ordior pro for texo to weave dat makes orditus, pro for incepto to begin orsus, nitor to strive nisus vel or nixus sum, et and ulciscor to revenge ultus; simul also irascor to be angry iratus, atque and reor to suppose ratus sum, obliviscor to forget vult will have oblitus sum, fruor to enjoy optat chooseth fructus: tum demum then finally, junge add misereri to have pity misertus.

Tuor to see et and tueor to defend non vult will not have tutus sed but tuitus sum; adde add locutus a of loquor to speak, et and adde add secutus a of sequor to follow.

Experior to try facit makes expertus; pasciscor to make a bargain gaudet will formare form pactus sum, nanciscor to get nactus; apiscor to obtain, quod which est is vetus verbum an old verb, aptus sum, unde from whence adipiscor to get adeptus.

Junge add queror to complain questus, junge add proficiscor to go profectus, expergiscor to awake experrectus sum; et and quoque also hæc these, comminiscor to devise commentus, nascor to be born natus, que and morior to die mortuus, atque and orior to rise quod which facit makes præteritum its preterperfect tense ortus.

V. 245.

Hæc these verbs habent have præteritum a preterperfect tense activæ of the active et and passivæ vocis of the passive voice: cæno to sup format tibi formeth you cænavi et and cænatus sum, juro to swear juravi et and juratus, que and poto to drink potavi et and potus, titubo to stumble titubavi vel or titubatus.

Prandeo to dine prandi et and pransus sum, placeo to please dat makes placui et and placitus, suesco to accustom dat makes suevi quoque and also vult will have suetus.

Nubo to be married nupsi que and nupta sum, mereor to deserve meritus sum vel or merui; adde add, libet it pleaseth libuit libitum, et and adde add, licet it is lawful quod which makes licuit licitum; tædet it wearieith quod which dat makes tæduit et and pertæsum;

adde *add* pudet it *shameth* faciens *making* puduit que and puditum, atque and piget it *grieveth*, quod which tibi *format forms* you piguit que and pigitum.

V. 256.

NEUTRO-PASSIVUM a *neuter-passive verb* format tibi *forms* you præteritum its *preterperfect tense* sic thus: gaudeo to be glad gavisus sum, fido to trust fisus, et and audeo to dare ausus sum, fio to be made factus, soleo to be wont solitus sum.

V. 259.

FUGIUNT these verbs want præteritum the *preterperfect tense*, vergo to bend, ambigo to doubt, glisco to spread, fatisco to chink, polleo to be powerful, nideo to shine: tum then terio to strike, furo to rage, tum then puerasco to grow a child; omnia que inceptiva and all inceptive verbs et and quæ which caruere want supinis their supines; ut as, metuor to be feared, timeor to be feared: meditativa omnia all meditatives, præter except parturio to be in labour, esurio to be hungry, quæ duo which two servant keep præteritum their *preterperfect tense*.

V. 264.

HÆC verba these verbs raro seldom aut or nunquam never retinebunt will have supinum their supine: lambo to lick, mico micui to glitter, rude to bray as an ass; tum then scabo to claw, parco peperci to spare, dispesco to drive from pasture, posco to require, disco to learn, compesco to restrain, quinsco to nod the head, degc to live, angio to throttle, sugo to suck, lingo to lick, ningo to snow; que and satago to be busy, psallo to play on an instrument, volo to be willing, nolo to be unwilling, malo to be more willing, tremio to tremble, strideo, strido, to scream, flaveo to be yellow, liveo to be black and blue, avet to covet, paveo to dread, conniveo to wink, fervet to be hot.

Compositum a compound a of nuo to nod, ut as, renuo to refuse; a of cado to fall, ut as, accido to fall upon, præter except occido to fall down, quod which facit makes occasum, que and recido to fall back recasum; respuo to refuse, linquo to leave, luo to pay, metuo to fear, cluo to shine or to be famous, frigeo to be cold, calveo to be bald, et and sterto to snore, timeo to fear: sic so luceo to shine, et and arceo to drive away, cujus composita whose compounds habent have erciturum: sic so nata the compounds a of gruo to cry like a crane, ut as, ingruo to invade et and quæcunque neutra whatever neuters secundæ of the second conjugation formantur are formed in ui; excipias you may except oleo to smell, doleo to be in pain, placeo to please, que and taceo to hold one's peace, pareo to obey, item also careo to want, noceo to hurt, jaceo to lie down, que and lateo to lie hid, et also valeo to be in health, caleo to be hot; namque for hæc these verbs gaudent supino have a supine.

SYNTAXIS TRANSLATED.

§ 134.—First Concord—Nominative Case and Verb.—p. 125.

A VERB personal agrees with its nominative case in number and person, as — *To-morrow's life is too late, live to-day. Danger is never conquered without danger.* See above, § 125.

The nominative of pronouns is rarely *expressed*, except for the sake of distinction or emphasis, as — *You have condemned*; as if he said, (*you and*) *no one else.* *You keep the nest, I praise the pleasant country's streams.*

When the persons are diverse, the verb follows the more worthy, as — *If you and Tullia are in good health, 'tis well; I and Cicero are in good health. Noble praise, in troth, and rich spoils you are carrying off, you and your son! I and mine feed in front of my own house.*

These nominatives, *Men, We*, are often understood, as — *There, as men say, either the ungenial night is silent. We believe that deep rivers failed, and that floods were drunk up, when the Medes dined.*

A noun, put in apposition with a pronoun of the first or second person, requires a verb of the first or second person. *Hannibal seek peace*, that is, *I, Hannibal.* *Three hundred have sworn*, that is, *we.* *We, the Roman youth, proclaim this war against you. What glory is ours, if, young men, ye deceive a boy; if many, one.* *The greatest part of poets (we) are deceived by a show of what is right.*

Verbs Substantive, as *I am, I become, I exist*; Verbs Passive of calling, as *I am named, I am called, I am said, I am styled, I am denominated*, and their like, as *I seem, I appear, I hear, I am thought, I am accounted*, have the same cases on each side of them, as — *God is the chief good. February was once the last month of the year, now December. The result is the teacher of fools. You are becoming an old woman and yet you wish to appear fair. I labour to be brief, I become obscure. (My) tract on Friendship, which is intitled Lælius. Lælius, who is termed wise. Very petty people are called dwarfs. He is to be called bad who is good on his own account. Cato chose to be, rather than to appear, good. You hear (are called) a subtle and knowing judge of the ancients. Faith is accounted the basis of our religion. Athos is believed of yore to have been sailed over. This whole world is rightly thought one state. No one is born rich. The Senate met in large number. Nature has given to all to be happy. If he will seek to be inscribed Father of*

Cities, upon statues. There is no leisure to me to be an invalid. It is not lawful for us to be so eloquent.

Also, almost all verbs admit an adjective after them, which agrees with the substantive of the verb in case, gender, and number, as—*Believe that every day has broke upon you the last. Nor less did Æneas stir himself early.*

In these the dative is sometimes changed into an accusative, as—*It is expedient to you to be good. It is lawful for a Roman citizen to be one of Gades.*

Verbs of affirming and knowing have, on each side of them, a nominative, when, what any one affirms, that he affirms not of another but of himself, as—*A good and wise man says that he is prepared for the deserving. Ajax asserted that he was the great grandson of Jove. Do you not know that you are the wife of invincible Jove? The pinnacle which you see, O friends, says that it has been the swiftest of ships.*

The verbs, *I seem, am heard, am said*, and the like, are wont to be used much oftener personally than impersonally, as—*Homer is believed to have been in the time of Lycurgus. The plays of Terence were thought, on account of their elegance, to be written by C. Lælius. The toga of Afranius is said to have fitted Menander, Plautus to hasten to the model of the Sicilian Epicharmus. We seem to be about to winter in our Formian Villa. Say not, therefore, It is said that Homer lived; It is thought that the plays were written; It is said that the toga fitted; It seems that we shall winter.*

Sometimes the sentence is the nominative to the verb, as—*To have learnt faithfully ingenuous arts, softens manners, and suffers them not to be savage. To wish to be cured was part of the cure. It is not wit, to be malicious. The essence of art is that what you do should be appropriate. It is virtue to abstain from lawful good things. Death is birth to the pious.* See below, §§ 136, 137.

Sometimes an adverb with a genitive, as—*Partly (part) of the men fell in the war.*

§ 135. p. 128.

When another verb (particularly if it be a verb of *feeling*) precedes, the verb is put in the infinitive, and the noun in the accusative, as—*I rejoice that you have returned safe and sound.* See above, § 127. *Obs. 2.*

Sometimes the former verb is omitted, as—*That I should desist, conquered, from my enterprise! That this sun should have risen so black to me!*

A verb placed between two nominatives of different numbers can agree with either of them, as—*The quarrels of lovers are the renewal of love. Their breast, too, becomes oaks.*

A noun of multitude singular sometimes is joined to a verb plural, as—*Part of them have departed. Part seeks seeds of flame. part cut into pieces. Whither are you rushing, O generous house?*

§ 136.—*Second Concord.—Substantive and Adjective.*—p. 129.

Adjectives, participles, and pronouns agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case, as—*A rare bird on the earth and very like a black swan.*

When the substantives are of different gender, the adjective follows the gender, and sometimes the number, of the more worthy, as—*Liber and Libera were born of Ceres. The man and woman are good. The king and queen are happy. Their comrades and king having been retrieved.* See above, § 126. *Obs.* 1.

Except when they signify a thing not endued with life, when the adjective is put in the neuter gender, as—*The bow and arrows are good.* See above, § 126.

Sometimes the sentence supplies the place of a substantive, the adjective or participle being put in the neuter gender, as—*It having been heard that the king is going to Dover. Except that you were not together (with me) in other respects happy. It is sweet and beautiful to die for our country.*

Sometimes the infinitive is put for the substantive, as—*Your to know (knowledge) is nothing. That sad live (living) of ours. To each is his own will, nor is it lived with one (the same) vow.*

The adjective is often put in the neuter gender without a substantive, as—*It is foolish to spare the perishable paper. And we unbend serious (things) at a modest table. To those who seek for many things, many things are wanting.*

(These) are Elliptical—*A wolf is a grievous (thing) to the stalls. He is borne on in the huge Centaur: that is to say, ship. Pergamum, raised by the sword, that is, city. So, At the cool Præneste. The Eunuchus was acted twice in the day, that is, the play of Terence (so called).*

Some are to be explained by the sense, as—*How fare you, my dearest of things?*—For this is spoken, not of a thing, but of a man.

Substantives are sometimes used adjectively, as—*Behold we just now seem to bring hero feelings.*

Sometimes they are declined adjectively, as—*The Romulean city: the river Rhine.*

To these may be added substantives declined adjectively according to the substantive attached to them, as—*Result is the master of fools. Philosophy is the mistress of life. So, A conqueror army, victorious Rome, avenger sword, avenger flames, and the like.*

§ 137.—*Third Concord.—Relative and Antecedent.*—p. 130.

The relative agrees with the antecedent in gender, number, and person, as—*Who is a good man? He who keeps the decrees of the Senators who observes laws and rights. The husbandman plants*

trees of which he will never see the fruit. There is a river in England which is called the Thames.

Elegantly, the sentence is put for the antecedent, as—*I came to her in time, which is the principal of all things.*

Sometimes the pronoun *id* is prefixed to the relative, as—*He came in time, that which is most pleasing.*

A relative placed between two substantives, of (referring to) the same thing, but of different genders and numbers, usually agrees with the latter (substantive), as—*Men occupy that globe which is called the earth. Thebes, which is the capital of Bœotia.*

Sometimes the relative agrees with the personal pronoun, which is understood in the possessive (pronoun), as—*All (began) to speak all good things, and to praise my fortunes, who (because I) had a son endued with such a disposition,*—where the personal pronoun *I* is understood in the possessive *my*.

This (the following example) is according to synesis or the sense—*That he might give to chains the baneful monster ; who, seeking to perish more nobly,*—where *quæ* is admitted after *monstrum*, for there the language is concerning a woman (Cleopatra).

The relative *Qui*, put in apposition with the first or second person, requires a verb of the first or second person, as—*I, who march queen of the Gods. Here am I who did it. What worthy rewards will you give to Nisus, who have deserved the first crown by my prowess ? You are that Maximus, who alone restorest to us our state by delaying. May you arise some avenger from my bones, to persecute with fire and sword the Dardan colonists ! We are they who admire Cicero.*

Sometimes the antecedent borrows the case of the Relative, as—*That the plays he had made might please the people. The city which I build is yours. Who does not amid these things forget the evil (cares) which cares love has ? The poets Eupolis and Cratinus and Aristophanes and other men of whom the ancient comedy is.*

Sometimes the relative is put by attraction in the case of the antecedent, as—*The people, whom you know, being judge.*

Sometimes the substantive, added to the relative, borrows the case of the relative, as—*Whose name is Iulus. To which husbandmen made the name amellus.*

Very often the antecedent is put after the relative, as—*What trade each man knows, in this let him exercise himself. Remain in that state of life in which you have been placed.*

Sometimes the relative has after it the adjective of the antecedent, and especially numerals, comparatives, and superlatives, as—*Archilochus, who poured forth first Parian iambics : Say not, Archilochus, the first, who poured forth Parian iambics. Tarquinius Superbus, who last reigned at Rome. Obey the advice which now, most excellent, the old Nautes gives. I, O queen, will never deny that you deserved (well) in those things which, very numerous, you can recount, nor will it grieve me to remember Elisa (Dido).*

This is Elliptic—*Wish it only, which is your virtue (such is your virtue) you will take by storm* · that is, *considering the virtue, which is yours.*

If a nominative is put between the relative and the verb, the relative is governed by the verb, or by some other word which is placed with the verb in the sentence, as—*Grace is absent from a favour, which delay retards. Whose deity I adore.*

§ 138.—*Peculiar Use of Numbers.*—p. 132.

The singular is used elegantly for the plural, especially by the poets, as—*Very many images of death; with many dogs; with this year's corn; blessed with Bithynian ware; with Carthaginian soldiers.*

Also the plural for the singular, as—*Suppliant, I adore your Deity. The snake swells as to its hissing neck. Victorious he will drive his car to the lofty Capitol.*

So, *very pure honey; and faces, breasts, for face and breast, and the like.*

§ 139.—*Peculiar Use of Cases.*—p. 133.

Sometimes the nominative is put for the vocative, as—*Ye, O Patrician blood. Cast your weapons from your hand, O my offspring.*

Sometimes the vocative for the nominative, as—*Be more and more prosperous. In that you, O thousandth, derive your branch from a Tuscan stock, or, in that you, O clad in your trabea, salute the Prætor as one of your own family.*

§ 140.—*The Construction of Nouns.*—p. 133.

Two substantives of (referring to) the same thing, or placed in apposition, are put in the same case, as—*Wealth is dug up, the incitements of (to) ills. Libethrian Nymphs, our love. And there was a great contest—Corydon with Thyrsis. We escape the rocks of Ithaca, Laertian realms. I see the two thunderbolts of war, the Scipios. Philip summoned Aristotle as preceptor to his son Alexander. Junius dedicated as Dictator the Temple of Health which he had vowed as Consul, and put out for contract as Censor. Use me either as general or soldier.*

§ 141.—*The Genitive.*—p. 133.

The Genitive indicates the subject to which a thing belongs, as—*An Oration of Cicero; or, the person from whom it comes, as—A wound of (from) Ulysses; or, the cause for which it is done, as—Through anger for the virgin snatched away—or, its quality, as—A man of highest ability; or, the object whither it tends, as—Love of money; or the quantity, as—A ditch of ten feet.*

The Genitive after a Noun.

When two substantives, of different sense, come together, the

latter is put in the genitive, as — *The love of money increases, as much as money itself increases. Calamity is the occasion of virtue.* So a genitive is used after *causâ, gratiâ, ergo, nihil.*

This genitive is sometimes changed into a dative, as — *He is father to the city, and husband to the city.*

Sometimes into an adjective, as — *Herculean labour, for labour of Hercules.*

An adjective and pronoun, put in the neuter gender, without a substantive, sometimes requires a genitive, as — *A little of money. Through the open (places of) streets. Bitter cares; cheap things. I gave (sent) this (despatch) of a letter to you. You keep the rectitude of your mind. What of cause is there? But we do not see the wallet on our backs.*

But these (following) adjectives, first, midst, last, extreme, lowest, highest, upmost, remaining, rest, joined with substantives, are wont to be put for the first, middle, last, &c. part, as — *At the first fall of night, shut your house. These themes (lessons) Janus (the street) from top to bottom, teaches. The first of the play: that is, the first part or beginning of the play. Midnight, that is, the middle part of the night. And, in like manner, the highest (part of the) citadel, the lowest (part of the) wax, the rest (of the) crowd.*

Sometimes a genitive is put alone, the former substantive being understood by ellipsis, as — *When you shall have come to Diana's, that is, temple. Hector's Andromache, that is, wife. Gisco's Hasdrubal, that is, son. Glaucus' Deiphobe, that is, daughter. His Byrrhia, that is, slave.*

Adjectives which signify desire, knowledge, memory, fear, and their contraries, require a genitive, as — *The nature of man is greedy of novelty. Mind, conscious of right, smiles at the lies of fame. Be mindful of short life. Unmindful of kindness. Unskilled in affairs. Rude in war. Fearful of the gods. Reckless of himself. Epaminondas was so careful of truth, that he never told a story even in sport.*

With very many others, which denote Quality, as — *Sick at heart; joyful in labour; ripe in years; late in studies; maimed of his feet; void of truth; known for his parental disposition to his brothers; or, (which denote) Relation, as — Master of himself; having realised his vow; disdainful of the land; innocent in life; prophetic of the future; docile in measures; studious in works.*

Hither belong too substantives of a cognate signification with those adjectives, as — *Sure trust in my crop. Confidence in your race.*

Adjectives which belong to plenty or want sometimes require an ablative, sometimes a genitive, as — *Rich in horses, rich in embroidered apparel, and gold. Free from guile. Poor in water. Force void of prudence falls by its own weight. Rich in lands, rich*

in money put out to interest. Love is most fertile in both honey and gall. Blessed with influence. The king of the Cappadocians, rich in slaves, is poor in brass (money).

Obs. In these the genitive generally denotes an inherent quality; the Ablative one either inherent or accidental.

The genitive of the quality depending on a substantive has always an adjective, and generally one of three terminations, attached to it; as, *The ant of much labour.*

Verbal adjectives in *ax* govern a genitive, as—*Bold in genius. Time devouring things. Tenacious of justice.*

Nouns partitive, numerals, comparatives, and superlatives, and some adjectives put partitively, require a genitive of a substantive, from which, too, they borrow their gender, as—*Take which of the two of these you prefer. The first of the Roman kings was Romulus. Of the hands, the right is the stronger. Indus the greatest of all rivers. The eighth of wise men. We follow thee, O holy of the gods.*

Sometimes the adjective is understood, as—*You too will become of noble fountains, that is, one. Write him of your flock. This, believe me, is one of your duties.*

They are used, too, with these prepositions, *a, ab, de, e, ex, in, inter, ante*, as—*Ajax, the second hero after Achilles. For one of you two is a deity, the other will be. Thales was the wisest in the seven. First among all. First before all.*

Secundus sometimes requires a dative, as—*Not second to any of the ancients in virtue.*

An interrogative and its redditive (reply) will be of the same case, number, and tense, as—*Of what things is there no satiety? Of wealth. What is now going on in England? They are consulting about religion.*

Unless the syntax requires something different, as—*Whose book is this? Mine. What did you buy it for? A great price.*

§ 142.—The Genitive after the Verb.—p. 137.

Sum requires a genitive as often as it means possession, duty, sign, part, or that which appertains to any thing, as—*The cattle belongs to Melibæus. It is (the duty) of a young man to revere his elders. / Any one may err, only a fool will persist in his error. All this is of your gift. It is for virtue to conquer what all fear.*

But in the same sense are used these neuter nominatives, *mine, thine, ours, yours, human, brutal*, and the like, as—*It is not mine, to speak against the authority of the senate. To err is human. That I please, is yours.*

Obs. But not nominatives of adjectives of only one termination, for you cannot say *insipiens est hoc facere*, but you will say (in the genitive) *insipientis est hoc facere.*

Verbs of accusing, condemning, acquitting, and the like, re-

quire a genitive, the word *crimine* being understood, as — *He who accuses another of vice, ought to examine himself. He condemns his son-in-law of wickedness. He was acquitted of theft. Cæsar indicted Dolabella for extortion. He accuses me of my head (of a capital crime). Acquits me of my vow. Binds me to my vow. And Sisypheus, the son of Æolus, condemned to long labour.*

Also, verbs of advising govern the genitive of the thing, as — *Adversity reminded (them) of religion.*

This genitive is sometimes changed to an ablative, either with a preposition, or without a preposition, as — *I thought you were to be admonished of that thing. If you are an unjust judge to me, I will condemn you of the same crime.*

Both, none, one of the two, neither of the two, another, both, and the superlative degree, are not joined to these verbs, except in the ablative case, as — *Do you accuse of theft or adultery? Both, or of both of the two — both, or of both; — neither, or of neither. You are accused of very many things at once.*

I am busy, I commiserate, I have pity on, govern the genitive, but *miseror* and *commiseror* the accusative, as — *He is busied in his own concerns. I pray, pity so great labours; pity a mind bearing not worthy things. And pity your race. Either grieved, pitying the poor, or envying the having (rich).*

I remember, I forget, I recollect, I recall to mind, take a genitive or accusative, as — *He remembers his given troth. It will be a pleasure hereafter to remember these things. It is the part of folly to see the faults of others, to forget its own. Whoever you are, henceforth forget the lost Greeks. I remember his desert toward me. If I rightly remember things heard. At sun-rise remember your resurrection; at sun-set remember your death.* //

Regno sometimes is joined to a genitive, as — *Daunus ruled rustic tribes.*

I gain possession of, is joined to a genitive or ablative, as — *The Trojans, having disembarked, gained possession of the wished-for sand. The Romans gained possession of the standards and arms.*

§ 143. — *The Dative.* — p. 138.

The Dative indicates the object to which a noun or verb is referred directly, or that to which any thing is done, or acquired by, or taken away from.

The Dative after a Noun. — p. 139.

Adjectives, by which advantage, disadvantage, likeness, unlikeness, nearness, distance, pleasure, submission, or relation to any thing, is signified, require a dative, as — *If you render that he be beneficial to his country, useful to the fields. A crowd, grievous to peace, and hostile to placid quiet. Like to his father. The co-*

lour which was white, is now contrary to white. Pleasant to his friends. Suppliant to all. Next to him, but next by a wide interval.

Hither are referred nouns compounded with the preposition *con*, as—*A messmate, a comrade, a fellow-servant, a kinsman, &c.*

Some of these, which signify likeness of mind, are joined to a genitive, but which (signify likeness) of body, to a dative, as—*He (is) like you in manners, me in face.*

Common, foreign, exempt, akin, and the like, are joined to a genitive, dative, and ablative with a preposition, as—*It is common to all animals. Death is common to all. This is common to me with you. Not foreign (or alien) from design. Foreign from ambition. Not alien from the studies of Scævola. It will be given to you to be exempt from this calamity. The wild fig is free from all. We are exempt from those evils. The land was made public (property) of the Roman people. Akin to this fault. The study of eloquence was not common to Greece, but peculiar to Athens.*

Suited, ill-suited, useful, useless, fit, with many others, are joined sometimes to the dative, sometimes to the accusative with a preposition, as—*The country of Ithaca is not suited for horses. Born for glory. Useful for that object.*

Verbal adjectives in *bilis*, taken passively, and participials in *dus*, demand a dative, as—*Penetrable by no star, an inert grove. O Julius, to be commemorated by me after none of my companions.*

§ 144.—*The Dative after the Verb.*—p. 140.

All verbs govern a dative of the thing or person, which any thing is gained by, or taken away from, as—*In that place of yours it is neither sown nor reaped for me. What chance took you from me? There are many who take from some what they may give to others; and these wrongly think that they will seem liberal. We must take care to use that liberality which may profit friends, and hurt no one. He is liberal who takes from himself what he gives to others. He who desires his virtue to be advertised, labours not for virtue, but for glory. Live, I pray, but live to God; for to live to the world is the work of death: it is living life to live to God.*

Verbs signifying advantage or disadvantage govern a dative, as—*You cannot do me good, or harm.*

Except *juvo*, *lædo*, *delecto*, and certain others, which require an accusative, as—*Shrubs and low tamarisks please not all. You hasten to remove what hurt the eye. By delighting the reader, and instructing him at the same time.*

Verbs of contending and comparing govern a dative, as—*Let Amyntas alone contend with you. Let us fight against our love begun. Should he pine? and not compare himself with the greater crowd of the poorer?*

But sometimes they govern an ablative with the preposition

cum; sometimes they govern an accusative with the prepositions *ad* and *inter*, as—*I compare Virgil with Homer. If he is compared to him, he is nothing. These things are not to be compared among one another.*

Some verbs of differing and taking away are sometimes joined to a dative, as—*Concealed virtue differs little from buried indolence. Tear yourself from delay. Let not your life differ from your language.*

Verbs of giving and rendering require a dative, as—*Fortune gives too much to many, enough to no one. He is ungrateful, who does not return a favour to one deserving well (of him).*

Sometimes an accusative of the person, with an ablative of the thing, as—*He presents the noble youth with this distinguished gift.*

Verbs of promising and paying govern a dative, as—*Which (things) I promise to you, and take upon myself, that I will observe most religiously. He paid the debt to me.*

Verbs of commanding and announcing govern a dative, as—*Money collected rules or serves every one. Often take heed, what you say, and of what man, and to whom.*

Except *jubeo*, *rego*, *guberno*, which have an accusative, as—*You will be poor!—I will order my strong mind to bear this. The moon rules the months—God himself governs the world.*

Except (too) *tempero* and *moderor*, which (when) put for I impose bounds to, or I spare, have a dative; (when) for I govern, (have) an accusative, as—*He controls himself. The sun tempers all things with his light. He guides his horses—who will not restrain his passion.*

Verbs of trusting and distrusting govern a dative, as—*Both is a fault, to trust nobody, and every one. It is fit to commit nothing but what is mild to empty veins.*

Verbs of obeying and resisting govern a dative, as—*He who obeys God offers the best victim. It is fit to obey your parent rather than your love. An affectionate son always obeys his father. Fortune resists slothful prayers.*

These verbs, *nubo*, *vaco*, *studeo*, and *faveo*, *indulgeo*, *parco*, *gratulo*, *ignosco*, and *medeor*, *irascor*, *adulor* govern a dative, as—*The husband marries a wife; the bride marries a husband. If you (any woman) wish to wed filly, wed an equal. He is at leisure (gives himself) to verses; and loves the Muses, and devotes himself to this alone. Since the one favours corn, the other Bacchus (wine). Indulge the rows. Spare the pious race. He will pardon his warts (foibles). Philosophy heals the mind. I am wroth with you; so (you reward) my love! Epaminondas thought it impious to be angry with his country. Atticus never flattered Antony when in power.*

Obs. But *adulor* sometimes admits an accusative.

These verbs, *excuso*, *ignosco*, *persuadeo*, and *defendo*, *condono*, *caveo*, *minor*, and *invideo*, and *probo*, and some others govern a dative of the person, and an accusative of the thing, as—*He*

(began) to plead as an excuse to Philip his labour and mercantile engagements. You pardon many things to others, but nothing to yourself. This you convince yourself of; this he approves to me. Keep ye off the solstice from the cattle. He threatened death to both. Does his father grudge the Roman citadels to Ascanius? You will ward off the heat from the pregnant cattle. Mothers fear you for their children (lit. young animals, heifers, &c.).

Verbs compounded with these adverbs, *benè, satis, malè*; and with these prepositions, *præ, ab, ad, con, sub, ante, post, ob, in, inter*, usually govern a dative, as—*May the gods bless you! I will satisfy you. This conduces to your praise. He lived with us. I prefer the most unjust peace to the most just war. I postpone money to fame. Meet ye the coming disease. The wall obstructs the windows. Danger impends over all. He was not only among these things but over them.*

Not few of these change the dative to another case, as—*One excels another in genius.*

Sum, with its compounds, except *possum*, governs the dative, as—*It is neither harm nor good to me.*

Sum, with many other (verbs), admits a double dative, one of the person and another of the thing, as—*The sea is the ruin of greedy sailors. Do you hope that will be a credit to you, which you impute as a fault to me? He is to your mind; he is a care to you.*

A dative of the thing is also elegantly added to other verbs, as—*Virtue is neither given nor received as a gift. He puts out money to usury. He has a scruple about it. Life is given as a freehold to none, as a leasehold to all. To make a trade of the Republic is most base. He sounds a retreat. He holds him up to contempt, scoffing, and derision.*

There are cases where this dative, *tibi*, or *sibi*, or also *mihi*, is added for the sake of elegance, as—*I stab this man with his own sword. How, I pray, is Celsus? What do you want, O woman?*

§ 145.—Accusative.—p. 144.

The Accusative indicates the object which suffers directly from an action.

Accusative after a Noun.

An accusative indicating a part is added to verbs, adjectives, and participles, as—*In face and shoulders, like a god. Downcast in her look she held her peace. He pricks up his ears, and trembles in his limbs. With her knee bare, and having her flowing folds collected in a bow-knot. Her tender cheeks are wholly dyed with blushes. In other respects a Greek. We are softened in our minds by placid art.*

And in the Greek manner to passive participles having a reflex sense, as—*Flowers having the names of kings inscribed (on them). Having satchels and a slate slung over their left arm. Three and four times having struck her graceful breast with her hand.*

§ 146.—*Accusative after a Verb.*—p. 144.

Verbs transitive, of whatever kind, whether active or dependent, require an accusative, as—*Fly thou from an inquisitive man, for the same is a prattler. Have peace with men, war with vices. The sun has no spectator but when it is eclipsed. First of all, fear God.*

Verbs neuter have an accusative of cognate signification, as—*She seems to be going, unaccompanied, a long journey. I dreamt a strange dream. He slaves a hard slavery. Obstinate to sport (in sporting) an insolent sport. What you wish another to conceal, first conceal (yourself). To watch over books. Xerxes walked the seas, and sailed the land.*

There are, too, other verbs, both neuter and passive, which have an accusative after them, as—*Nor does your voice sound a man (like a human creature), O a goddess, doubtless! The garden smells (of) violets. The sweet honey tastes (of) Hyblæan thyme. And the hard oaks will exude dewy honey. He dines on bought pot-herbs. Who feign (themselves) Curii, and live Bacchanals (revels). To rain flesh. He runs the Stadium (course of 600 feet). Who, the Stadium having been traversed (having traversed the Stadium), was often victor at the Olympian games. I swear by the rough seas. He begged him that he would dance (imitate by dancing) the rustic Cyclops. He would despise to be crowned (at) the great Olympia. To be assessed at a large rate of land. They graze here and there both on arbutus and grey willows. He is moved (moves himself) now (like) a Satyr, now (like) a rustic Cyclops.*

Neuters sometimes receive a passive form with a nominative of cognate meaning, as—*Willingly this and every war will be warred. The third age is being lived.*

Verbs of asking, teaching, forcing, clothing, hiding, generally govern a double accusative, one of the person, another of the thing, as—*We all implore peace of you. You who are before, why do you ask the lamp of me in the race? My excellent father accustomed me to this. It is ridiculous for you to admonish me of that. I will unteach you those habits of yours. What do you not drive mortal breasts to, O accursed hunger of gold! He puts on himself the shoes which he had before taken off. I have habituated my son that he should not conceal those things from me.*

Verbs of this kind also, in the passive voice, have an accusative of the thing after them, as—*You are demanded the entrails of an ox. Porcius Cato was asked his opinion. Taught a better way. He dared to carry me a boy to Rome to be taught arts. Which things Paris denies that he can be (says he cannot be) compelled to do, in order that he may reign safely and live happily. That was concealed from me. And thou, Pæan (Apollo), powerful in the truth, and from whom no day of the future is hid by the Gods. We*

do what has been already done, which the old proverbs forbid us. We are warned (of) many things in entrails. He is girded (he girds himself on) the useless sword. Immediately she puts on the face and dress of Diana.

An infinitive sometimes supplies the place of the accusative, as—*You will restore (to me) to speak (the speaking) sweetly : you will restore to smile gracefully. Deem it the highest crime to prefer life to honour, and for the sake of life to lose the reasons for living. There is one book (that of) Nature, Scripture is the second: the one showing the power, the other (showing) the will of God.*

The verb is sometimes left out—*Wherefore to me (should I have) fortune, if it is not allowed me to use it ? (What!) you (rival) him in singing !*

The accusative is sometimes omitted, as—*Hannibal moved, that is, his camp :—loosed, that is, his ship.*

Especially if it be a pronoun, as—*The cars dash into the course, that is, themselves. He so much recoils from, and changes. The ditches have turned into solid ice. And he mingles with the men, nor is seen by any.*

Sometimes it is put absolutely, as—*Our conversation consists in a great degree of iambs.*

Verbal nouns sometimes govern the cases of their own verbs, as—*Why is there to you a care for this ? Hanno avoiding the camp.*

§ 147.—Ablative.—p. 147.

The ablative indicates the condition or quality of a thing : that is, number, price, quantity, manner, instrument, cause, place, time, and the like.

Ablative after a Noun.

Adjectives and substantives govern an ablative signifying the cause, form, and quality, instrument or manner of a thing, as—*Pale through anger. In name, a grammarian ; in deed, a barbarian. Cæsar, a Trojan by extraction. Ennius, very great in genius, in art, rude. Pericles and Thucydides, majestic in language, frequent in aphorisms, concise in condensation of matter. Having hair red, face black, foot short, and one-eyed.*

Worthy, unworthy, endued, deprived, content, banished, relying on, free, and sometimes equal, unequal, with adjectives signifying price, take an ablative, as—*Loving whatever is worthy of a wise man and a good. Dare, O stranger, to despise money, and make thyself also worthy of the God. Who (because I) had a son endued with such a disposition. The moles, deprived of eye-sight, have dug their lairs. Agesilaus was lame of one foot. Depart, content with your lot. A mind free from terror. Purchaseable neither by purple nor by gold.*

Obs. Add to these, *Go on in virtue ! Go ye forward in virtue !* Some of these sometimes admit a genitive in poetry, as—*Un-*

worthy of his great ancestors. Verses worthy of a goddess. An outcast from the realm.

Opus and *usus* require an ablative, especially of the participle passive, as—*Now there is need of courage, O Æneas; now there is demand for strength. Before you begin (a thing) there is need for it having been deliberated; and, when you have deliberated, there is need of its being executed with despatch.*

But *opus* sometimes seems to be put adjectively for necessary, as—*A leader and adviser is necessary to us. You will say that a thousand sesterces are necessary.*

§ 148.—*Comparatives and Superlatives.*—p. 148.

Comparatives, unless they are expressed by *quàm*, require an ablative, as—*Silver is cheaper than gold, gold than virtues: that is, than gold (is); than virtues (are). What is more hard than stone? what softer than water? Yet hard stones are hollowed by soft water. The glory of giving was formerly considered greater than titles and office (fasces). I put under you a better man than I am.*

Nouns when compared by means of *quàm* are put on both sides in the same case, as—*Ennius was older than Plautus and Nævius. Nothing is less constant than wind and water. He fell, wept by many good men: more wept by none than by thee, O Virgil. I have seen no one more crafty than Phormio.*

Quàm is often understood, not expressed, after *amplius*, *plus*, and *minus*, as—*Not more than one night. Nor is more than the seventh summer being spent. The snow never lay less than four feet deep.*

The ablative after a comparative is sometimes elegantly omitted, as—*Youth is more ardent; that is, than is right. His toga flags down on him shaven too clownishly. He lives too sparingly; let him be called frugal.*

Comparatives are sometimes expressed by *magis*, as—*Velleius (Paterculus, the historian), who flatters Tiberius, is rather eloquent than wise: that is, he is eloquent indeed; but not wise.*

Two comparatives elegantly meet together, as—*Velleius is more eloquent than wise: that is, he is wise indeed, but not so renowned for wisdom as eloquence.*

The comparative is sometimes contained in the verb, as—*It is better to receive than commit an injury. I prefer (thy) ridiculous poems, to thee, O divine Philippic, of distinguished fame, who art rolled (up in the volume) the next from the first (that is, the second Philippic, of Cicero).*

Comparisons are often expressed by the prepositions *ante*, *inter*, *præ*, *præter*, *supra*, as—*O Virgin, happy before others. Wise among few. Happy in comparison with us.*

To comparatives, when something happens contrary to expectation, the words, *quam pro*, are wont to be added elegantly, as—

The battle was more severe, than for (might have been expected from) the number of the combatants.

To comparatives, also, are added *quam ut, quam qui*, a subjunctive following, as—*The Roman empire was too great to be crushed. The Campanians had been guilty of too great offences to be pardoned. I am too great for fortune to hurt me.*

Tanto, quanto, hoc, eo, and quo, with some others, which signify the measure of excess, also *etate* and *natu*, are often joined to comparatives and superlatives, as—*By so much the worst poet of all, as much as you are the best advocate of all. A gambler the better he is in his art, the worse he is (as a man). By how much the more waters are drunk, by so much the more are they thirsted for. Greater and greatest in age. Greater and greatest by birth (age).*

To superlatives the pronoun *quisque*, in the singular number, is joined, signifying each most excellent individual of that kind; but, in the plural, signifying the most excellent of different kinds, as—*Each best day of life to wretched mortals flies the first. If all the most ancient of writings are ever the best. Instead of pleasant things, the Gods will give (you) the fittest.*

To superlatives are added the particles *ut, ita*, with the pronoun *quisque*, as—*In proportion as each one (a man) speaks best, so he most fears the difficulty of speaking.*

Superlatives are elegantly expressed by *tam, quam; tantum, quantum; ut, qui; is, qui*; the pronoun *qui* being added, as—*I am as mild, as (one) who is most lenient. I defer as much to him, as to whom (I defer) the most. The thing is agreeable, as (that) which is most (agreeable). He did it by that right by which a man (could) best (do it).*

To superlatives the particle *quam* is added, the verb *possum* being sometimes annexed, as—*I will speak the most shortly that I can (as briefly as possible). I will speak the most briefly that I shall be able.*

§ 149.—Ablative after the Verb.—p. 150.

Every verb admits an ablative, without a preposition, signifying the instrument, or cause, or manner of an action, as—*These strive to defend with darts, those with stones. The wolf with its tooth, the bull assails with its horn. It trembles both in heart and knees. He grew vehemently pale with rage. A good man ought to be moved from the right road neither by prayers, nor bribes, nor favour, nor danger. Fools are not grieved for having sinned, but take it ill to be rebuked; whereas they ought, on the other hand, to have grieved for their sin, and to rejoice in their reproof. The good fly from sin for love of virtue. For we all become worse by licence. Virtue is not acquired by wealth, but wealth by virtue. He dispatched the matter with wonderful expedition.*

But to the ablative of the agent is prefixed the preposition *a* or *ab*, as—*And the tender sheep are assailed by the wolf with his tooth.*

To the ablative of the manner is sometimes added a preposition, but usually with an adjective, as—*He wrote with great industry. Thence he returned safe with great glory.*

To certain verbs is subjoined a noun of price in the ablative case, as—*I do not purchase hope with a price. I would not have bought it with a farthing, or a rotten nut. That victory cost the Carthaginians the blood of many men. This man sold his country for gold.*

The value of an object is put in the genitive, but the price which is either paid or asked (for it) in the ablative, as—*Purchased for what? A small sum. How much then? Eight asses. To buy for a denarius (ten asses) what is worth a thousand denarii. What we do not want is dear at an as (three farthings).*

Vili, paulo, minimo, magno, nimio, plurimo, dimidio, duplo, are often put by themselves, the word *pretio* or *spatio* being understood, as—*Wheat sells cheap. Ireland is less by half than Britain.*

Flocci, nauci, nihili, pili, assis, hujus, teruncii, are added to verbs of valuing, as—*I weigh (esteem) him at a lock of wool, nor do I value him at this, who esteems you at a hair.*

These genitives are excepted, put without substantives: *tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris, tantidem, quantivis, quantilibet, quanticunque*, &c., as—*You will be of so much value to others, as you shall have been to yourself. One eyewitness is worth ten earwitnesses. Slaps (given to slaves when manumitted) are sold by me at a much higher price.*

Verbs of abounding, filling, loading, equipping, abstaining, and those differing from these, are joined to an ablative, as—*You abound in love, O Antipho. The farm abounds in pigs, goats, lambs, poultry, milk, cheese, honey. That is a very wretched fortune which has no enemy. To be free from fault is the greatest comfort. Sylla filled all his soldiers with wealth. With what lies have most frivolous men loaded you! These are the arts by which boyhood is wont to be formed, instructed, and educated. Rescue thyself from this charge.*

Of which (verbs) certain sometimes govern a genitive, as—*Cease at length your soft complaints. Abstain thou, he said, from anger and warm strife. They are sated with old Bacchus (wine) and fat venison. You think he is not in need of either a physician or a keeper.*

Fungor, fruor, utor, vescor, dignor, muto, communico, supersedeo, are joined to an ablative, as—*Discharge thou well the duties of life; this will be to use thy present life, and to enjoy thy past. Whosoever we (are who) feed on the produce of earth. I, for my part, by no means think myself worthy of such an honour. He pulls down, builds, changes square things for round. I will make you partake in my table. A multitude of words must be dispensed with (we must dispense with).*

Verbs of sacrificing are joined to an ablative, as — *When I shall make (an offering) with a cow-calf for my corn, do you come yourself. Grant me, that I may offer these (virtues) at the temples, and I shall be accepted (make a propitious sacrifice) with bread-corn.*

Mereor and *mereo*, with the adverbs *bene*, *male*, *melius*, *pejus*, *optime*, *pessime*, are joined to an ablative with the preposition *de*, as — *He always deserved well of me. If I have deserved at all well of you. Erasmus has deserved very well of the Latin language.*

To any verbs and participles an ablative, taken absolutely, is added, as — *When Augustus was emperor, Christ was born; when Tiberius was emperor, (He was) crucified. Augustus was born in the consulship of M. T. Cicero and Antonius. I, having either read or written that which may delight me silent, anoint myself with oil. When Pericles was chief ruler at Athens, Sophocles, Euripides, Aristophanes, Poets; Phidias, Ictinus, and Callicrates, Sculptors and Architects; were illustrious.*

An ablative absolute is sometimes used for *si*, *quam*, *quamdiu*, *simulac*, *quoniam*, *quomvis*, as — *I being (if I am) your leader, you will be safe. Nor would you receive the worst gifts, if I were rich in arts. I cannot be unhappy, if God is appeased. Let them see Virtue, and pine at having deserted her. It is no use to shut the fold when the flock is lost. If piety towards God is removed, the confidence and intercourse of men is removed also. The day usually goes on brightly, when the cloud is dispelled. Nor is any egress open, since the waves of the sea hem (me) in. Nothing (is) to be despaired (of), Teucer being (since Teucer is) leader, and under the auspices of Teucer. (While) their king being (is) safe, there is one mind to all; being (when he is) lost, they have broken (break) their faith. Tears fall, we being (although we are) unwilling.*

Concerning Measure, Time, and Place.—p. 153.

§ 150.—Measure.

Measure, weight, or quantity of a thing, after adjectives or adverbs, is put in the accusative, after substantives in the genitive, as — *Continuous ditches, each five feet deep. A wheel six digits thick. A ditch of fifteen feet. A crown of small weight.*

Ordinals, too, very often express the measure of time and space, as — *Mithridates is now reigning the twenty-third year from that time. The Albans are at the twelfth milestone from the city.*

§ 151.—Time.—p. 154.

They (nouns) which signify part of time are more frequently put in the ablative, as — *No mortal is always wise.*

But they which signify duration of time usually are put in the accusative, as — *Pericles was at the head of affairs at Athens for forty years. Here it will now be reigned for three hundred entire*

years. *He used to watch all night till the very morning, he snored all day. To have slept seven hours is enough.*

§ 152. — *Space.* — p. 154.

Space, extent, and progress, after verbs, are put in the accusative, distance is put either in the accusative or ablative, as — *Then, having dined, we crawl three miles. The plain (of) Marathon is ten miles from the city of the Athenians. He is as far as the poles asunder. Titan was in the middle, between the coming and past night, and was distant from each by an equal space.*

Obs. In these, where we in English say *of*, the genitive is used; where in English the preposition is not used, the accusative; where we say *by*, the ablative (is employed).

Also, *He is two days off*; where is understood *space*, or *by the space*; *march*, or *by the march*.

§ 153. — *Names of Places.* — p. 154.

Every verb admits a genitive of the name of a town, in which an act takes place; provided it (the town) be of the first or of the second declension and singular number, as — *What shall I do at Rome? I cannot lie. Archias was born at Antioch, a city formerly famous.*

These genitives, *humi, domi, militiae, belli*, follow the regimen of towns, as — *Arms abroad are of little use, unless there is counsel at home. We were always together in the field and at home.*

But if the name of the town be only of the plural number, or of the third declension, it is put in the ablative, as — *A Colchian, or an Assyrian, bred at Thebes, or at Argi. I may love Tibur at Rome, fickle, and Rome at Tibur. Fabricius was at Rome, what Aristides was at Athens. He lived at Rome and Venice.*

Obs. *Ad*, prefixed to a place, signifies, in English, *near*, as — *Hannibal was conqueror in Italy, near Cannæ.*

To verbs signifying motion to a place, the name of the place is generally added in the accusative, without a preposition, as — *I went to Cambridge to get learning. Whither are you tending? My road is not to Cumæ, or to Baiæ. The Apostle Paul sent Epistles to Rome, to Corinth, to the Galatians, to Ephesus, to Philippi, to Colossæ, to Thessalonica, and to Timothy, Titus, and Philemon. I am going to London to buy goods.*

In this way we use *domus* and *rus*, as — *Go home, full, evening is coming, go home, O she-goats. I will go into the country.*

Obs. You will say *ruri* and *rure fuit*, but *rure venire*.

To names of countries, mountains, country-houses are generally prefixed prepositions, as — *Carrying Troy into Italy. I marched to the Amanus. They seem about to winter in the Formian villa. The Emperor (Maximilian) served under the King (Henry VIII.) in France.*

Obs. The preposition is sometimes omitted by the Poets, as —

A fugitive (driven) by the Fates, he came to Italy and the Lavinian shores.

But islands generally follow the regimen of towns, as — *Apollo ordered (us) to settle at Crete. Æschines retired from Athens, and betook himself to Rhodes. Conon lived very much in Cyprus, Timotheus in Lesbos.*

To verbs signifying motion from a place, is generally added the name of the place in the ablative without a preposition, as — *Unless you had before set out from Rome, you would now be leaving it. Dionysius sent for Plato from Athens. Demaratus fled from Corinth to Tarquinii. I am about to travel from York.*

§ 154. — Construction of Pronouns. — p. 156.

The genitives *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, are put when a person is meant, as — *He pines for regret of you.*

Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, are used, when an action or possession of a thing is signified, as — *He favours your desire.*

The genitives *nostri, vestri*, are used when the object at which a thing aims is signified; (the genitives) *nostrum, vestrum* (are used) when the subject of which it consists is signified, as — *Let both of you, I pray, be mindful of us. Your memory of us is agreeable to me. After the manner of Lucilius, (a man) better than both of us. Love of us. A crowd of you.*

These possessives, *meus, tuus, suus, noster*, and *vester*, take these genitives after themselves, *ipsius, solius, unius, duorum, trium, omnium, plurium, paucorum, cujusque*, and the genitives of participles and adjectives which are referred to the primitive understood, as — *I said that the republic was safe by the exertions of me alone. Since no one reads the writings of me, fearing to recite them publicly. Let the bones of me dead repose softly! You have seen the eyes of me weeping. We have seen the breast of you an unsuspecting man. In the memory of us all.*

Sui and *suus* are reciprocals, and are always reflected to that thing of greatest importance which has gone before in the sentence, as — *Peter admires himself too much: he spares his own errors. Peter earnestly implores you, that you would not desert him (himself). He is twice conqueror, who conquers himself in victory. Every one knows himself least. To believe himself born not for himself but for the whole world. || Even a single hair has its shadow. And Rome herself falls by her own strength. Render thou every one his due. His own (citizens) ejected Hannibal from the city. His own pleasure attracts each.*

These demonstrative (pronouns), *hic, is, iste, ille*, are thus distinguished: *hic* indicates the nearest person to me; *is* (indicates) him of whom we have made mention; *iste*, him who is near you; *ille*, him who is removed from both of us.

Hic and *ille*, when they are referred to two things placed before (preceding) them, *hic* generally is referred (refers) to the latter, *ille* to the former (of them), as — *Whithersoever you may look there*

is nothing but sea and air ; the latter swelling with clouds, the former menacing with waves.

Hic is sometimes put for *ego*, as — *If you would be willing to introduce this man : that is, me.*

Ille increases the emphasis, as — *Or that (great) ruler of Olympus permits. To that great Alexander. That Medea. Not he afraid to perish for his dear kinsfolk and country. Are you that Æneas ? That he was predicted by the Fates as that son-in-law coming from a foreign clime.*

Obs. As in Greek, οὗτος, ἐκεῖνος.

Ille, with the conjunction *quidem* added to it, denotes an opinion which is to be qualified, as — *That remedy is slow, indeed, but effective. That remedy is effective, but dangerous.*

Ille and *is* are elegantly placed in the beginning of a sentence, for the sake of expressing contrast, feeling, and emphasis, as — *The Father himself, in the midnight of storms, wields the bolts with his flashing right hand, with which shock the mightiest earth trembles : beasts have fled, and abject fear has laid low mortal hearts through the nations. He smites with his blazing weapon either Athos, or Rhodope, or lofty Ceraunia. With what tears should he move the Manes, with what words the deities ? She, indeed, was floating, now cold, in the Stygian bark. When Proteus went, seeking from the wave his wonted grottoes ; around him the dripping tribe of the vast sea, gambolling, scatters far and wide the briny dew.*

So, he who pursues two hares, catches neither.

Ipse is used for defining numerals exactly, as — *Cato died eighty-three years exactly before my consulship.*

Ipse (αὐτός) often means *ultra*, or *sponte*, as — *The she-goats come (of) themselves to the milk-pails. Hither the heifers come (of) themselves to drink, through the meads.*

Ipse is annexed to a personal pronoun, and, if the emphasis falls on the action, *ipse* is put in the nominative ; if (the emphasis falls) on the suffering, *ipse* is put in an oblique case, as — *I want not medicine ; I comfort myself. You have conquered yourself : that is, no one else has done so. You have conquered yourself : that is, have conquered him whom no one else was able to conquer.*

To the pronouns *idem* and *alius* are added *qui*, *ac*, *et* ; and, as in Greek, a dative, as — *Vesta is the same as earth. My life is the same, and my mind towards you is the same as it was. Dissimulation is when you speak differently from what you think. You shall swear to the same arms with us. He who preserves the unwilling, does the same with the killing. That same king, who bought so ridiculous a poem so dearly, forbad, by an edict, that any one besides Apelles should paint him, or any other than Lysippus should mould brasses imitating the countenance of brave Alexander.*

Alius is sometimes joined to an ablative without a preposition, as, — *And do not consider any one happy but the wise and good.*

Obs. For expression of a difference, *alius* is often doubled, as — *Never Nature says one thing, and Wisdom another*

Is and *idem* are often put with conjunctions on account of emphasis, as — *Man has memory, and that, too, infinite. There was in Torquatus (Torquatus had) much literature, and that not commonplace. They spend their labour on obscure objects, and those, too, not necessary.*

Idem is used for *item*, and *ipse* for *etiam*, as — *Nothing is liberal, which is not just. Nothing profits, which may not injure. To Vespasian Titus succeeded, who himself too was called Vespasian.*

Nemo is sometimes used for *nullus*, as — *No painter was found to finish that part of the Coan Venus which Apelles had left incomplete.*

The interrogative *qui* is used adjectively, *quis* substantively, as — *What king was there then at Rome? Who was then king at Rome?*

To these words, *si, nisi, num, ne, ubi, unde, quo, quanto*, is added the pronoun *quis*, as — *If any shall have made libellous verses against any one, there is law and a trial. Unless anything detains you, listen. Is any one angry with you? Let not any hurt any. What did I wish? you will say, when anything has hurt you. In proportion as a man is more crafty, so much the more suspected (is he).*

Quod sciam is put elegantly for *quantum sciam*, as — *No one, as far as I know, is at home.*

Quisquis is sometimes referred to a plural verb, as — *Then be ye far off, whoever tricks out his hair with art.*

All words, put indirectly, such as *qui, quis, quantus, quotus, qualis, ut, ubi, cur*, require a subjunctive, as — *For the prophet knows all things that are, that were, that follow soon about to come. He saw under what a night our day was lying. Virtue thinks of where she is going, not what she is suffering. Consider not how many but whom you please. Again and again look what sort of man you recommend. Believe ye me, having experienced, how great he rises on his shield, with what a whirlwind he hurls his spear. Do you write back word how many you wish to be (at table). Is there any place where winters are more mild? I alleged many reasons why I ought to escape excused.*

Obs. *Qui* prefixed to the indicative denotes simply a thing existing; to the subjunctive, a thing done with some design and deliberation, as — *Virgil, and after him Varius, told you what I was. But what I really was, that I tell you. Learn what your little friend thinks, who (himself) is still to be taught. I advise the senate what they ought to do.*

Qui after *is sum*, or when it can be resolved into *talis ut*, requires a subjunctive, as — *You are not such a one as not to know what you are. A man must procure such provisions for his voyage as may float with him if wrecked. He was not a citizen who could utter the free dictates of his heart, and sacrifice his life for truth. There are some such as not to have. He is such as to be able to be conquered. I store and arrange such things as I may be able soon to bring forth. And fountains murmur with flowing waters; a thing such as to invite light slumbers.*

Qui, when it is joined to the verbs *sum*, *habeo*, *reperio*, or the adjectives *dignus*, *aptus*, *idoneus*, generally requires a subjunctive, as — *I have one (such as) to sound often into my purged ear. You have one (such as) to sit by your side to prepare fomentations. He who obeys modestly is worthy to rule in time. Worthy to beg at the wheels of Aricia. The character of Lælius seemed to me fit to speak concerning friendship.*

Qui, signifying *the cause*, requires a subjunctive, as — *You are foolish for believing him. I have no cause to blame old age.*

Qui, when it can be resolved into *ut ego*, *quamvis ego*, *quoniam ego*, *ut tu*, *quamvis tu*, *quoniam tu*, *ut ille*, *quamvis ille*, *quoniam ille*, and the like, requires a subjunctive, as — *I am greater than whom fortune should be able to injure: that is, ut mihi. The wise man thinks that posterity, although he may never have any feeling of it, belongs to himself: where cujus is used for quamvis ejus. Yet thou couldst lead me to thy home (plural), that I might as a handmaid serve thee with sweet labour.*

§ 155.—Passive Verbs.—p. 161.

To passives is added an ablative of the doer, but with the preposition *a* or *ab*, preceding it; and sometimes a dative (is added), as — *He is praised by these, blamed by those. Honest and not secret things are (that is, honesty and not secrecy is) desired by good men. Here I am a barbarian, because I am understood by no one.*

The other cases remain in the passive voice, which were (governed by the verb) in the active, as — *You are accused by me of theft. You will be held up to scorn. You will be untaught those manners of yours by me. You will be deprived of your office.*

Vapulo, *veneo*, *liceo*, *exulo*, *fio*, have a passive sense, as — *You will be beaten by the master. Not I, but a thin phantom of me is beaten. I prefer to be stripped by a citizen than to be sold by an enemy. Virtue is valued at a low rate by them all. Why should philosophy be banished by friends at meals? What will be done by him?*

Passive verbs are sometimes used reflexively, as — *When it comes into my mind, I set myself down to write. Let us turn thither. He puts on both his shield and his habergeon triple-tissued with gold, and girds on his trusty sword. And the year rolls itself into itself through its own traces. I who purify myself of bile about the time of the vernal season. You burst, and bark, O greatest of mighty kings. The olive root forces itself from the dry wood. Spare to break my slumber, whoever touchest the hollow marble; whether thou drinkest, or bathest, be still. See above, § 46.*

§ 156.—Impersonal Verbs.—p. 162.

These impersonals, *interest* and *refert*, are joined to genitives, besides the ablatives *meâ*, *tuâ*, *suâ*, *nostrâ*, *vestrâ*, and *cujâ*, as — *It is the duty of the magistrate to protect the good. It is the interest of all that the bad should be punished. It is not so much my concern as that of the state. It is your own business to know your*

self. Cease to inquire of what does not at all concern yourself. It is of great benefit to the Christian commonwealth, that bishops should be learned and pious.

Obs. In these forms we call *mea, tua, &c.*, ablatives, on the authority of Priscian.

These genitives, too, are added, *tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, quanticunque, tantidem*, as — *Of such moment is it to act honestly. It is greatly my interest to be a private person.*

Impersonals, put acquisitively, require a dative, as *placet, libet, licet, liquet*; as — *Good is done us by God.*

But these impersonal verbs, as *juvat, decet, delectat, oportet, fallit, fugit, præterit*, govern an accusative, as — *It delights me to go over the deep. It becomes you and your sisters. Not to all men what is pleasing is allowed, nor does what becomes them delight all. Fair peace becomes men, savage anger wild beasts. He who does not know the way to go down to the sea, ought to seek a river to accompany him. See above, § 76.*

To these, *attinet, pertinet, spectat*, is properly added the preposition *ad*, as — *You wish me to say what appertains to you. It concerns all to live well.*

To these impersonals, *pœnitent, tædet, miseret, miserescit, pudet, piget*, is subjoined an accusative of the person with a genitive of the thing, as — *If he had lived to his hundredth year, he would not repent of his old age. I am tired of these trifles. I pity you. He doubles his offence who is not ashamed of his sin. I am grieved and ashamed of my brother. I am ashamed and sorry for you.*

Verbs which, in the active voice, govern a dative generally, in the passive, become impersonals, as — *The bank (of the river) is not well trusted. This age is favoured, rather than envied.*

An impersonal verb of the passive voice can be elegantly used for each of the persons of both numbers, as — *We cannot live well, unless we live virtuously. They are silent for the night. He lives well with a little. They feed for the whole month in order. So much confusion is there in the fields. They had come to the threshold.*

§ 157.— Verbs in the Infinitive.— p. 164.

To very many verbs, especially if signifying a sense and a feeling, as — *Audio, dico, sentio, credo, promitto, simulo, spero* (to which, in English, the word *that* is added), verbs infinitive are added, as — *He will hear that citizens have whetted the steel. They said that bees have a part of the heavenly mind, and ætherial draughts. I think that man lost, who has lost his shame. Do you perceive that mid-day is declining? We believe that human bodies will one day be ruined. Do you wish to be rich? — wish (then) to have longed for nothing. Brutus promises that he will do it; he pretends to be (that he is) mad; he hopes to conquer.*

Obs. Between *gaudeo te bene valere*, and *gaudeo quod tu bene vales*, there is this difference, that in the former the emphasis falls on *my joy*, in the latter on *your health*. See above, § 127, *Obs.* 2.

Also, to verbs expressing power, desire, duty, custom, as — *I am able to relate to you many precepts of the ancients. It is lawful to no one to sin. And what things he desired to be given to himself, he desired to be capable of being denied him. You ought to reply in writing on this also.*

Also, to participles and adjectives denoting quantity, and to substantives, are added Infinitive Verbs, as — *He was then worthy to be loved. Not deserving death. Stiff winter, and never relaxing in the spring. Fearing to be loosed. Lighter to be taken away. Uncontrolled, so as to hope anything. First in spring to pluck the rose, and in autumn, apples. Snowy to look at. More brave to despise (in despising). Bold to endure all things. Persuasive in leading, — effective in washing away, — brave in handling. Savage in forging any sort of calumnies against any body. It is an outrage for a Roman citizen to be put in chains, a crime to be beaten, almost parricide for him to be killed. It is time for you to be gone.*

But to verbs signifying intention or purpose, also to verbs of asking, ordering, exhorting, trying, a subjunctive is added, with the conjunction *ut* (and sometimes *quo*) in affirming, and the conjunction *ne* in denying and prohibiting, as — *That you may live, watch. We do not cease to advise Pompey to fly from ignominy. I ask, or, if you allow, I pray, that you would preserve the unhappy men. Themistocles persuaded me in this, that I should avoid every fault, by marking them with examples. When he exhorted me that I should live sparingly, frugally, and content with that which he himself had acquired for me. What did my fraud seek, except that I should be joined to you alone? He forbade, by an edict, that any one should paint him besides Apelles.*

Except *jubeo* and *veto*, which require an accusative with an infinitive, as — *The Greek Aristippus, who ordered his slaves to fling down his gold in the middle of Libya. He who, when he can, forbids not sin, commands it.*

A participle sometimes discharges the office of an infinitive, as — *He perceived that he had fallen into the midst of the enemy.*

To these preterites, *memini*, *vidi*, *audivi*, and to some others, is elegantly subjoined an infinitive of the present tense, as — *I remember the oaks touched from heaven (struck by lightning) predicting this. For I remember beguiling long suns (days) with you. After that I saw you, O Aulus, bearing in your loose lap your knucklebones and nuts (toys), giving them away and playing; (but) you, O Tiberius, counting them, morosely hiding them in crannies; I feared lest an opposite infatuation should distract you.*

Sometimes Infinitives are placed alone by ellipsis, as — *Hence to scatter equivocal words into the crowd, and guilty to seek arms (against me):* (where is understood, *he began*). *Hence groans were heard, and the rage of lions.*

Infinitives are often put for substantives, as — *Wisdom is the*

head and source of good writing. It is a great virtue to keep a thing secret, but, on the other hand, it is a grave fault to speak what ought to be concealed. Self-government is the greatest government. It is base to speak one thing and think another. See above, § 134.

Infinitives are put by Poets in the place of Gerunds, as—*What man do you choose, O Clio, to be celebrated? She had given her hair to be tossed by the winds. He gives a great talent of silver to carry.*

§ 158.—*Gerunds and Supines.*—p. 166.

Gerunds and Supines govern the cases of their verbs, as—*I am elated with the desire of seeing your ancestors. Especially since many things must be treated (I must treat many things) with new phrases. Since eternal punishments are to be feared in death. Time must be used, time flies with rapid foot. They are not to be listened to who say we ought to be angry with our enemies. We sent him to consult the oracle of Apollo.*

§ 159.—*I. Gerunds.*

Gerunds in *di* have the same construction as genitives, and depend on certain both substantives and adjectives, as—*An innate love of having urges Cecropian bees. Æneas, on the lofty stern, now determined to go. Necessity is the best teacher of pleading. Who knows not that the greatest bait to sin is the hope of impunity? The desire alone of sinning suffers these penalties. The art of loving; the care of husbandry.*

Gerunds in *do* have the same construction as datives and ablatives, as—*Here is water well suited for drinking, bread for eating. If he is not solvent, his surety must pay for him. The principles of writing are united with speaking. By doing nothing men learn to do ill. You will gain more glory by bearing injuries than by revenging them. The disease is cherished and lives by concealment. It has come to your ears by conversation.*

When necessity is signified, Gerunds in *dum* are placed and have the same construction, as nominatives, as—*We must pray for a sound mind in a sound body. We must do what our parents bid us. He who directs the state, must first take care that every one enjoy what is his own. He must watch, who desires to conquer.*

Gerunds in *dum* have sometimes the same construction as accusatives, as—*A place most glorious for pleading. Before they are tamed they raise a high spirit.*

Participles in *dus* from verbs governing an accusative are often used in the place of gerunds, and are called *gerundives*, as—*To be led by a reward to accuse men, is next to larceny. What care should be used for keeping cattle. All elegance of speaking is increased by reading orators and poets. Demosthenes was fond of hearing Plato.*

Sum, signifying the cause, is joined to participles in *dus* of the genitive and dative case, as—*The kingly power was for the sake of preserving liberty. There is a second labour for dressing vines.*

Gerundives are used in the place of substantives, as—*Before the*

building or design of building the city. Regulus, being captured by the Carthaginians, was sent to Rome (to treat) concerning exchange of prisoners. Timotheus was skilled in ruling the state. The eyelids are very well suited to open and shut the pupils. He is always hastening and overwhelmed in increasing his property.

II. Supines.

The supine in *um* signifies actively, and follows a verb or participle, denoting motion to a place, as—*They come to see, they come to be seen themselves. Why do you go about to ruin yourself; Mæcenas goes to play, I and Virgil to sleep. Soldiers were sent to reconnoitre the citadel.*

The supine in *u* signifies passively, and follows nouns adjective, as—*The viper, baneful to be touched. That which is foul to be done is also base to be said. The philosopher will render you reasons (as to) what is better to be avoided and (as to) what is better to be sought.*

It (this supine) follows also *opus, fas, nefas*, as—*Necessary to be said, lawful to be seen; unlawful to be written.*

§ 160. — Construction of Participles. — p. 168.

Participles govern the cases of the verbs from which they are derived, as—*Stretching both his hands to the stars, he thus speaks.*

To participles of the passive voice is sometimes added a dative, especially if they end in *dus*, as—*A great man is dead, and one to be feared by Otho. Chremes remains, who is to be won over by prayers by me.*

Participles, when they become nouns, often admit a genitive, as—*Greedy of what is another's, profuse of his own.*

Participles sometimes supply the place of a substantive, as—*Before the city was built, or to be built (before its building or design). Through anger for the loss of the Virgin. The destruction of the city of Saguntum was the cause of the second Punic war.*

Exosus and *perosus* signify actively, and require an accusative, as—*Hating the Trojans to a man. Hating all the female race.*

Natus, prognatus, satus, cretus, creatus, ortus, editus, require an ablative, and often with a preposition, as—*A good (woman) sprung from good parents. O sprung from the blood of the gods! From what blood sprung! Venus sprung from the sea affords the sea (favourable) to him sailing. Sprung from the earth. I was a nymph sprung from a great river.*

Participles are used poetically in the place of substantives, as—*(Animals) flying, for birds; swimming, for fish; bleating, for sheep; the silent, for spirits; healing, for physicians; cultivating, for husbandmen.*

§ 161. — Peculiar Usage of Tenses. — p. 169.

Instead of the present (tense), in dating letters, the imperfect and preterite are used, as—*I was dictating these things to you behind*

the mouldering fans of Vacuna. I wrote these things the day before the ides before daybreak.

Obs. In all these cases the reference is not to the writer, but to the reader.

Instead of the preterite (tense) the present is used, which is called the historical present, as—*Rome increases by the ruin of Alba, the number of her citizens is doubled, the Cælian mount is added to the city, Tullus takes it as the site of his palace.*

The perfect (tense) is elegantly used concerning things dispatched at one effort, as—*The earth trembles; beasts have fled. If Brutus is safe, we have conquered. If ye shall have entertained this temper, O soldiers, we have conquered.*

The perfect also elegantly expresses that which is wont to be done, as—*He who longs to reach the wished-for goal in his course has suffered and done much (when) a boy. While their king is safe they have all one mind; when lost, they break their faith, and of themselves they tear in pieces the constructed honey, and dissolve the wattles of their combs. Hence they turn spokes for wheels, and drums (disk-wheels) for carts.*

The imperfect and the plusquam-perfectum of the indicative sometimes supply the place of the plusquam-perfectum of the subjunctive, as—*The trunk of the tree having fallen upon my brains (head) had carried me off, unless Faunus had warded off the blow with his right hand. If it did not diffuse far a different smell, it would be a bay-tree. He might despise the swords of Antony, if he had said every thing thus.*

The first future is used for courtesy instead of the imperative, as—*Nor will you labour to render word for word, (if you are) a faithful translator.*

Two future events are expressed in three ways: if both will occur at the same time, both are put in the first future (tense), as—*We shall be happy when, having left our bodies, we are exempt from desires. He will be ignorant to speak, who knows not how to hold his tongue. Wherefore if he is wise, he will devour the road. I will say if I can. Obs.* Take care not to say: *I will say or do, &c., si possum.*

If, when one (of the events) is finished, the other begins to happen, the latter is put in the first future, the former in the second future, as—*Not, quoth she, if you should have burst yourself, will you be equal in size. In friendship you will love when you have judged, not judge when you have loved. I shall not cease to be apprehensive of Carthage before I have learnt that it is destroyed. We shall then sing verses better when he shall have arrived. If times are cloudy, you will be alone. That wealth alone which you have given, you will always have.*

If both will be dispatched together, both are put in the second future, as—*He who shall have crushed Antony, will have put an end*

to the war. *He who shall have been well acquainted with either of them, will have been acquainted with both. You will in vain have avoided one fault, if you swerve perversely to its opposite.*

The second future is used courteously and modestly, for the first future, especially after a conjunction, as—*You will not rightly call him who possesses many things, happy. I will not acquire, what I may either, as a miserly Chremes, bury in the ground, or squander (as) an ungirt (profligate) spendthrift. Ah, if you go on, I will depart.*

So the present subjunctive, instead of the future indicative, as—*When you have given yourself up to sloth, you may in vain implore the Gods.*

The perfect potential expresses an opinion modestly; sometimes for an imperative, as—*I would, in my senses, compare nothing with a dear friend. I would believe that no other days (than these) shone on the first creation of the world, nor had any other tenour (than this). What you doubt about, do not. O Varus, plant no other tree than the sacred vine. Dwell with yourself, and learn how slender a stock you have.*

Between the first future, and the future in *rus*, there is this difference: the former expresses a thing, without doubt about to take place, the other (indicates) only a present intention, as—*They who live not, but who are ever about to live, will never live.*

The tenses of the infinitive are interchanged by the poets, as—*Prometheus is said to have added to the primitive clay a particle cut out from animals collected from all sides.* And Amphion, the founder of the Theban citadel, is said to have moved stones by the sound of his shell (lyre). If she may be able to shake the mighty Deity from her breast.*

§ 162.—*The Sequence of Tenses.*—p. 172.

To the present, to the perfect (indefinite, *see above*, § 48.), to the future, and to the imperative, is subjoined the present of the subjunctive, when the event is still lasting, the perfect when it is over, the future in *rus* when it will take place hereafter, as—*There is no nation which does not praise your verses, O Publius (Virgil); (there is) no age which has not praised your verses; none which will not praise your muse. For he has seen what (things) are, what have been, and what will be. I will now write (to say) what I give, what I have given, and will give. Tell me what he is doing, whither he has come, and is doing.*

To the imperfect, to the perfect definite, and to the preterpluperfect, is added the imperfect of the subjunctive, when the

* *Coactis* is proposed here as a conjectural reading for *coactus*.

question is concerning a thing contemporaneous; the preterpluperfect, when concerning a thing past; the future in *rus*, when concerning a thing future, as—*I was doubting, where I was, what I had done, and what I was about to do. He asked, where he was, whence he had come, whither he was going. I had written to say why I was neither giving, nor had given, nor would give.*

§ 163.—*Peculiar Use of Moods.*—p. 172.

The indicative is generally used after compound pronouns, *quisquis, quicunque*; and after illative conjunctions, *ut—ut, unde—unde*, and the like; also after, *sive—sive, seu—seu*, when a present or future thing is treated of, as—*Whether calm old age awaits me, or death hovers round me with dark wings, whatever be the complexion of my life, I will write.*

But the subjunctive, when a thing is supposed, which may perchance happen, as—*Mæcenas, a man never slumbering, when affairs required watchfulness.*

The indicative expresses a thing which ought to have been done, and has not been done, as—*It would have been right; he would have been able; it would have been better.*

These, too, are to be noted: *it would be tedious; it would be endless.*

Participles are elegantly used for the indicative and infinitive, as—*In Plato, Socrates says to Crito, that he (Socrates) must die on the third day after. I wish you to be warned of that. I wish you to be relieved from anxiety. It was right that the whole affair should have been reserved entire for Lucullus—it was necessary that there should have been an interview with Hirtius.*

§ 164.—*Paraphrase of the Imperative.*—p. 173.

The imperative of exhorting or deterring is often expressed by a paraphrase, as—*Let me understand, take care of your health, say not, contend not, believe not; and poetically, suspect not, follow not, fear not, wonder not, pray not, hope not, and the like.**

§ 165.—*Oratio Obliqua.*—p. 173.

It is called *oratio obliqua* when any one recites what he or any one else has said.

In the *oratio obliqua* the principal topics are put in the infinitive, the parenthetical ones in the subjunctive, as—*Not,—as a large number of people say, that it is not their own fault that they have not high-born and illustrious parents,—would I so defend myself. Certainly you promised that the Romans hereafter, in the course of years, would hence arise, from the revived blood of Teucer,*

* The special modes of paraphrase are not rendered here; the Scholar will be exercised in supplying them.

leaders, to hold the sea and all lands under their sway. (He told them) that he himself, in the meantime, when the kind Dido was not aware of it, and had no expectation that so great love would be broken, would sound the approaches, and what was the softest time for speaking. A little afterwards he writes that he had at home five thousand cloaks; (adding) that he might take part or all. Socrates well said that the nearest, and, as it were, most compendious way to glory, was, for a man to study to be what he wished to seem to be. Socrates was wont to say, that all men were eloquent enough in what they understood. For (he said) that the road would be safe and open, if the Deity were changed into money.

§ 166.—Construction of Adverbs.—p. 174.

En and *ecce*, adverbs of showing, are generally joined to a nominative, more rarely to an accusative, as—*Lo, Priam. Lo, four altars; Lo, two to you, O Daphnis, and two altars to Phæbus.*

En and *ecce* (adverbs) of upbraiding, are joined to an accusative only, as—*Lo, his soul and mind.*

Some adverbs of place, time, and quantity, admit a genitive—

Of place, as *ubi, ubinam, nusquam, ed, longè, quò, ubivis, huccine, &c.*, as—*Where in the world? Wheresoever you live. Whither in the world is he gone? He is found nowhere. It was come to such a pitch of impudence. By no means at all.*

Of time, as *nunc, tunc, tum, interea, pridie, postridie, &c.*, as—*I could do nothing at that time but weep. They engaged, the day before that day. Before the Kalends.*

Of quantity, as, *parum, satis, abunde*, as—*He who acts rightly has always enough partizans. Enough eloquence, too little wisdom. We have heard fables enough.*

Some admit the cases of the nouns whence they are derived, as—*It is said by the Stoics to be the summum bonum to live suitably to nature. The Moors are next to Spain. Better or best of all. He delayed longer than was expected. He lives uselessly to himself.*

Adjectives, in the neuter gender, are placed adverbially, as,—*Looking sternly. Smiling sweetly. The sun having just risen. Waters are drunk more pleasantly from the spring itself.*

For adverbs adjectives are used, especially in the Poets. *Aeneas stirred early in the morning.*

Adverbs of difference, *aliter, secus*, and those two, *ante, post*, are often joined to an ablative, as—*Much otherwise. A little otherwise. Much before. A little after. He came a long time after.*

Instar and *ergo* have a genitive case after them, as—*They build a horse like a mountain by the divine art of Pallas. To be rewarded on account of virtue.*

To adverbs of difference and similitude, as—*æque, juxta, pariter, perinde, aliter, contra, secus*, are added the particles *ac* and *atque*, as—*He hurries his readers into the middle of the subject, not otherwise than (as if) well known to (him).*

§ 167.—*The Construction of Conjunctions.*—p. 176.

Copulative and disjunctive conjunctions join similar cases, moods, and tenses, as—*Socrates taught Xenophon and Plato. He stands with his body erect, and looks down on the earth. He neither writes nor reads.*

Unless the principle of a different construction demands otherwise, as—*I bought a book for a hundred asses and more. Unless you had beguiled me loving, and were feeding me with false hopes He lived at Rome and Venice.*

§ 168.—*With what Moods of Verbs certain Adverbs and Conjunctions agree.*—p. 176.

An, ne, num, put dubitatively and indefinitely, are joined to a subjunctive, as—*It is no matter whether you have done it or recommended it. Go and see whether he is returned.*

Cum, as a conjunction of time, is joined to the indicative and subjunctive; as a conjunction of cause and concession, to the subjunctive, as—*Easily we all, when we are well, give good advice to the sick. Teucer, when he was flying from Salamis and his father. Since you sustain alone so many and so great concerns. The thunders, although they strike one, terrify not one alone.*

Dum for *dummodo*, and *dum, quoad*, and *donec* for *quousque*, concerning a future event, require a subjunctive, as—*Provided I may profit you. Until the third summer has seen him reigning. You will be dear at Rome till age desert you. Till you have repaired the temples.*

But concerning a past event, they admit an indicative, as—*The stag, superior in fight, used to drive the horse from the common pasture, until he (the horse), inferior in the long contest, implored the aid of man, and received the bit.*

Dum (while), concerning a present thing, is joined to an indicative, as—*He almost set himself in a blaze, whilst he turns the lean thrushes on the fire.*

Ne, in the sense of prohibiting, is joined to a subjunctive, as—*Do not do this. The year warns you not to hope for immortality (on earth).*

Antequam, priusquam, and *postquam*, when they denote a thing certain, are joined to the indicative, as—*We use our own limbs, before we have learnt for what use we have them. Tyre was taken the seventh month after it was begun to be besieged.*

But, in uncertain, to a subjunctive, as—*Eighty years warn me to collect my baggage, before I set out from life.*

The conjunctions, *quin, quominus*, require a subjunctive after a negative, prohibition, or impediment preceding, as—*There is nothing which may not be spoilt by ill telling. Nor (is there) respite; but the year either overflows with apples, or with the produce of cattle, or the sheaf of the Cereal straw. Who is there, but has heard it? Old*

age is no impediment to our pursuing the study of literature. Nothing prevents you from scouring the *Ægean* in a large ship.

But *quin*, used interrogatively or for *præterea*, is joined to an indicative, as—*Why do we not celebrate eternal peace and plighted wedlock? Besides, the body, loaded with yesterday's excess, weighs down the soul also with it.*

To express a condition, serve *si*, *si forte*, *modo*, *nisi*, and the like:—

Nisi and *si* are joined to the subjunctive when they signify an actual cause; to the indicative, when they signify a coexisting condition, as—*We cannot live happily unless we live virtuously. Arms abroad are of little use unless there is counsel at home. If the citizens are virtuous, the city (is) well fortified.*

A condition, if expressed simply, is put in the indicative; if you think it either true or likely, (it is put) in the present of the subjunctive; if neither true nor likely, in the imperfect, or (of a past thing) preterpluperfect of the subjunctive, as—*That I may admonish if you at all want a monitor. But these, too, if any one engrafs them, or commits them changed to well-dug ditches, will have put off their wild temper. If man have health, your art, Phæbus, is dead. If, as much as I desired, I were able also to do. Not, if I were wishing more, would you refuse to give. Not, O Mæcenas, if I were to wish for more, would you refuse to give. Not, O Mæcenas, if I had wished for more, would you have refused. If Democritus were on earth, he would laugh. If you had not hurt (him) in some way, you would have died.*

Si, sometimes, concerning a fact, is joined to the indicative, as—*They thought this a great crime, and one worthy of death, if a young man had not risen (from his seat, out of respect) to an old.*

Si, *ut*, *ne*, *ac*, *licet*, are sometimes understood, as—*If you plunge it in the deep, it emerges more beautiful. Should his master have given him a twirl, by the spinning of the top he comes out Marcus Dama. A hungry Greek will go to the skies, if you bid him. If the king loves what is virtuous, all will love the same. Tell Cæcilius, O paper, to come to Verona. It is necessary that the possessor should be in health, if he designs to use well the things he has amassed. Tell him to come to dinner. Take care that you do nothing unworthy of yourself. As soon as Taygete has shown her graceful face to the earth. Though you expel nature with a fork, yet she will always return.*

Esti, *tametsi*, and the like, when they denote a thing really existing, are joined to the indicative; when a thing supposed only, to the subjunctive, as—*Although, therefore, it is not due to our deserts, yet there is great hope in the goodness of God.*

Obs. *Quamvis sit* would be the words of a person doubtful whether it was not due.

Ut for *quàm*, *postquam*, *sicut*, and *quomodo*, is joined to an in-

dicative; but when it signifies *quamquam*, *utpote*, or the final cause, to a subjunctive, as—*How often the greatest talents lie hid in obscurity! Since we are (have been) in Pontus, the Ister has stood three times (frozen) with ice. (Such) as you are yourself, so you think every one is. How fares he? how does he remember us? Though power is absent, yet will is to be praised. You are not to be trusted since you have so often deceived. I prithee, Davus, that he may return to the way. He eats to live, not lives to eat.*

After verbs of fearing, *ut* denies, *ne* affirms, as—*O boy, I fear you will not be long-lived, and that some great man will strike you with an ague. Fearing to lose something from the amount, or not to increase his property.*

Ut, after *adeo*, *ita*, *sic*, *tam*, and the like, requires a subjunctive, as—*No one is so wild that he cannot grow tame, provided only he lend a patient ear to instruction.*

Ut, after the impersonals *est*, *accidit*, *placet*, *restat*, *sequitur*, *expedit*, *usu venit*, *tantum abest*, and the like, requires a subjunctive, as—*It is (possible) that one man may marshal his shrubs wider than another in his furrows. It remains, that I regulate and console myself with these principles.*

Obs. These are elliptical—*That any thing should break you!—That you should ever amend yourself! that is, I cannot believe that.*

§ 169.—Construction of Prepositions.—p. 180.

A preposition in composition generally governs the same case that it governed out of composition, as—*They shove the ships from the rock. I pass you unsaluted.*

Verbs compounded with *a*, *ab*, *ad*, *con*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, in sometimes repeat the same prepositions with their case out of composition, and this elegantly, as—*They abstain from wine.*

In, for *erga*, *contra*, *ad*, and *supra*, requires an accusative, as—*She receives a (good) mind and benevolent disposition towards the Trojans. I should be sinning against the public weal. An heir is sought for the kingdom. The kingdom of Jove is over kings themselves.*

Per, of, adjuring, is generally separated from its noun by the interposition of a word, as—*I implore you by the Gods. I pray you by these tears and your right-hand.*

Sub, when it is referred to time, is generally joined to an accusative, as—*Near the same time: that is, about or at the same time. Before cockcrow. Before the fall of Troy.*

Super, for *ultra*, is joined to an accusative; for *de*, to an ablative, as—*He will extend his sway beyond the Garamantes and Indi. Asking oft many things concerning Priam, many things concerning Hector.*

Tenus is joined to an ablative, both singular and plural, as—*Up to the groin. To the breasts.*

And it always follows its case, as—*Up to the legs.*

A preposition is sometimes put between its substantive and adjective, as—*Through you also my shame is extinct. On a green bough.*

Sometimes after its substantive, as—*No one is born without faults. Over the deck and oars, and the painted sterns of fir.*

Cum is put after the pronouns *me, te, se, nobis, vobis*; and sometimes after *qui, quibus*, as—*Mecum, tecum, quicum, quibuscum.*

§ 170.—*Construction of Interjections.*—p. 181.

Nouns sometimes become interjections, as—*And cattle spoke, monstrous! Rivers halt.*

O, of exclaiming, is joined to the nominative, accusative, and vocative, as—*O jovial day of man! O too happy husbandmen, if they knew their own blessings! O fair boy! trust not too much to your beauty.*

Heu and *proh* sometimes are joined to a nominative, sometimes to an accusative, as—*Alas, piety! alas, ancient faith! Alas, hated stock! By Jupiter, thou, man, drivest me to madness! By faith of God and men!* also, to a vocative, *O sacred Jupiter!*

Hei and *væ* are joined to a dative, as—*Woe is me, that love is curable by no herbs! Woe is me, from what hope have I fallen!*

PROSODIA TRANSLATED.



§ 171.—Definitions.—p. 183.

PROSODY is the part of Grammar, which teaches the quantity (length) of syllables.

Time is the measure of pronouncing a syllable. A short time is marked thus — *Dōmīnūs*; but a long one thus — *cōntrā*. A common thus — *—*.

A foot is the arrangement of two or more syllables, according to a certain observation of time.

A spondee consists of two long syllables, as — *virtūs*.

A dactyl of one long and two short, as — *scribērē*.

Scanning is the legitimate distribution of the verse into its feet.

To scanning belong the figures, *Synalæpha*, *Ecthipsis*, *Synæresis*, *Diæresis*.

Synalæpha is the elision of a vowel or diphthong at the end of a word before another vowel or diphthong at the beginning of one (a word) following, as — *To-morrow's life is too late: live to-day: for vita, vive*. So, *The hostile Dardanidæ demand satisfaction with my life; for Dardanidæ*. But *heu* and *o* are never cut off.

Obs. 1. A diphthong is not to be cut off before the same diphthong or before a short vowel.

Obs. 2. Sometimes *Synalæpha* takes place even in the end of a verse, as — *Omnia, &c., Inseritur, &c.** Sometimes a vowel is not elided before a vowel, as — *Ter sunt, &c.*

Ecthipsis is, as often as *m* is cut off with its vowel (by) the following word beginning with a vowel, as — *A horrid, shapeless, huge monster, whose eye was taken away*. For *monstrum, horrendum*.

And sometimes *s*, as — *Hōrridū miles, for horridus miles*, and the like, in (the Poet) *Ennius*; and *Tum laterali' &c.*, in *Lucretius*.

Crisis or *Synæresis* is the contraction of two syllables into one, as — *Whether the hives would have been woven with pliant osier as if it had been written alvaria*.

So here and there a short vowel before another coalesces into one long, as — *prōinde, prōinde, &c.* with some others, as *pītūita, &c.*

So, *ābīēte, pārīēte, gēnūa, flūvjōrūm, tenūta*, as if they were written *ābjēē, pārjēte, gēnvā, flūvjōrūm, tēnvia*.

So, *Nasūtīēnus*, as if written *Nasidjenus*, in *Horace*.

Diæresis is, when of one syllable are made two, as — *They ought*

* Here and elsewhere, when the English is omitted, and &c. occurs, the learner will repeat the example or examples from memory.

to have unrolled their spindles. *Evoluisse* for *evolvisse*; so, *silvæ* for *silvæ*.

Arsis or Ictus is the raising, Thesis is the falling of the voice.

Arsis, in Heroic verse (Hexameters), falls on the first syllable of each foot; the other syllables of the foot are said to be in the Thesis.

Obs. *O Crasis, you tie what is loose; O Diæresis, you loose what is tied. The voice rises in the arsis, and falls in the thesis.*

After the completion of a foot a short syllable at the end of a word is sometimes lengthened by the power of the Ictus (or Arsis), as—*Poring in the breasts, he consults the panting entrails*: where *bus*, by nature short, is made long (by Ictus).

An Heroic verse, which is also called Hexameter, consists of six feet or metres: the fifth place requires a dactyl, the sixth a spondee, the other places (take) either the one or the other, as we like best, as—*O Tityrus, you lying under the shade of the spreading beech tree*. Here the syllables, *ti, tu, læ, bans, teg, fa*, are in the arsis, the rest (are) in the thesis.

Sometimes a spondee after a dactyl is found in the fifth place, as—*Dear progeny of the Gods; mighty increment of Jove*: and more rarely after a spondee, as—*Saxa per*, &c.

An Elegiac verse, which is also called a Pentameter, consists of two parts: of which the former has two feet, either dactylic or spondaic, with (succeeded by) a long syllable; the second (part), too, has two feet, but only dactylic ones, also with a syllable, as—*Love is a thing full of anxious fear*.

The last syllable of a verse is common: that is, may be either long or short. *Obs.* But, in an Hexameter and Pentameter, the ending in a short vowel is rather rare.

§ 172. — *The Quantity of the First and Penultimate Syllables.* — p. 185.

A vowel before two consonants, or a double consonant, in the same word is long by Position, as—*Ventus, axis, cujus*.

Except compounds, as—*Bijugus, quadrijugus, jurejurando*, and the like.

If a consonant ends the former word, and the following word begins with a consonant, the vowel preceding (the former consonant) is long by position, as—*I am too great for fortune to hurt me*: where the syllables *jor, sum, quam, and sit* are long by position.

A short vowel before a mute, if the liquid *l* and especially *r* follows it, is made common, as—*patris, volucris*; but not in compound words, as—*abluo* I wash away, *obruo* I overwhelm; and a vowel long by nature is not shortened, as—*matris*, from *mater*; *acris*, from *acer*; *salubris*, from *saluber*.

A vowel before a vowel, and before the letter *h*, in the same word, is short, as *Deus. meus, tuus, pius, nihil*.

Except genitives in *ius*, as — *Unius*, *illius*, &c. where the *i* is found common, although in *alterius* and *utrius* it is always short, and in *alius* (i. e. *altius*), and probably *solius*, always long.

To be excepted, also, are old genitives in *ai*, as *aulai*; genitives and datives of the fifth declension, where *e* between two *i*'s is made long, as *faciei*; in other cases it is not (long), as *rei*, *spei*, *fidei*; sometimes, too, the vocatives *Cai*, *Pompei*. But in Ennius, *Vir bonus*, &c.

Fi in *fio* is long, unless *e* and *r* follow together, as *fierem*, &c.
— *All things are now done which I said could not be done.*

Dius, *aer*, *eheu*, have the first syllable long; *Diana*, common.

Ohe, the interjection, has the first syllable common.

A vowel before a vowel in Greek words is sometimes long, as — *Say*, *Muses*; *Regard Laertes*; *The air is turned*.

And in Greek possessives, as — *Nurse of Æneas*; *Orpheus of Rhodope*; *Achæan fire*.

Every diphthong in Latin is long, as — *gold*, *neither*, *muses*; except when a vowel follows, as — *To go before*, *Burnt at the end*, *Very large*. Sometimes, too, at the end of a word, as — *Islands in the Ionian*.

From the observation of etymology we can very often arrive at a knowledge of prosody; as, for example, *Valētudo*, &c., *a valeo*, *valēre*, &c.

So Latin words derived from Greek generally follow the quantity of the Greek, as *musa*, &c.

Compounds usually follow the quantity of their simples, as from *lēgo legis*, I read, thou readest, *perlēgo* I read through; from *lēgo* I send, *lēgas* thou sendest, *allēgo* I alledge; from *æquus* fair, *iniquus* unfair; from *pōtens* powerful, *impōtens* powerless; from *sōlor* I comfort, *consōlor* I console.

Except *interea*, *postea*, *antea*.

Excepted, too, are these short-syllabled words derived from long ones, as — *Dejero* I deny by oath, *pejero* I forswear, from *iuro* I swear; *innuba* unmarried, *pronuba* a bridesmaid, from *nubo* I am married.

Derivatives have generally the same quantity with their primitives, as — *amator*, *amicus*, *amabilis*, with first short, from *amo*.

Excepted are, however, a few, which, derived from short-syllabled words, have their first syllable long, as *fomes* fuel, *fomentum* fomentation, from *foveo* I cherish, &c.

But many of these are to be explained by contraction, as — *Fomentum*, from *fovimentum*; *junior*, from *juvenior*; *mobilis*, from *movibilis*; where two short (syllables) coalesce into one long, as from *coago* I drive together, *cogo*, &c.

There are some which, derived from long vowels, shorten the first vowel, as *arena* sand, &c.

And some others of both kinds, which are left to the studious to be observed in reading.

But in words of this kind, this is particularly to be observed, that, when the signification or conjugation of the verb is altered, its quantity, too, is altered, as *sedo -as* I quell, active, from *sedeo -es* I sit, neuter; so, *placo* I appease, but *placeo* I please; so *jacēre* and *pendēre*, are neuter, but *jacēre* and *pendēre*, active; *fugēre*, neuter, *fugāre*, active; *cādo*, neuter, *cādo*, *occido*, active; *lēgo*, with *e* long, is of the first, *lēgo*, with *e* short, is of the third conjugation. In *lābo -as*, the first syllable is short; in *lābor -ēris*, the first is long.

A dissyllable preterperfect has the first syllable long, as *legi*, *emi*, *movi*, *odi*.

Except *bibi*, *dedi*, &c.

Three preterperfects shorten the first long of their present — *genui*, *potui*, *posui*, from *gigno*, &c.

Those which redouble the first syllable of the preterperfect, have the first syllable short, as *cecidī*, from *cudo*; *cecidī*, from *cādo*; *didici*, I have learnt; *fefelli*, *momordi*, &c.

A dissyllable supine has the first syllable long, as *visum*, *latum*, &c.

Except *datum*, from *do*; *itum*, from *eo*, &c.

Words compounded of *bis*, *dis*, *tris*, are short, as *biceps* two-headed, *di-baphum* twice-dyed, *trivium* three-ways; except *bigæ* a car with two, and *trigæ* with three, horses.

These are to be noted, *pridie*, *meridies*, *biduum* two days, *quotidie*: in all which the first *i* is long.

De and *di*, before consonants in composition, are lengthened, as *degener*, *deleo*, *diversus*, &c.; except *dirimo*, &c.

Idem, in the masculine, lengthens the first syllable, and shortens it in the neuter, as—*By what a man sins, by the same thing he is punished*.

Ne, privative particle, is short in composition, as *nefas*, *nequeo*; but when it is contracted, as—from *ne homo*, *nemo*, or when it becomes a conjunction, it is lengthened, as—*nequam* good for nothing, *nequidquam* to no purpose, *nequaquam* by no means.

Pro in composition is long, except *procella*, *profanus*, *profecto*, *profestus*, *proficiscor*, *profiteor*, *profugus*, *profundus*, &c.

Re in composition is short, unless it is made long by position; but in *reliquiæ* relics, *religio*, and the præterites *reperit*, &c., it is long.

Sē in composition is long, as *sēcessus*, &c., except before a vowel, as *sēorsum*.

So in *socors*, *socordia*, is short.

Nouns ending in *x*, and making the genitive in *gis*, make the penultima short, as *remex* a rower, *remigis*.

Except *lex* a law, *rex* a king, making *legis*, *regis*.

The penultimate, too, of genitives in *icis*, from nominative *ex*, is short, as *vertex*, *verticis*.

The rest in *x* lengthen the penultima of the genitive, as—*pax*, *pacis*, &c.

Except *nex* violent death, *necis*, and the words without nominatives, *vicis* place, *precis* prayer; *nix*, *nivis*, snow; *cruz*, *crucis*, cross; *pix*, *piciis*, pitch; *nux*, *nucis*, nut; *trux*, *trucis*, savage; and very many others derived from Greek, as *anthrax*, *anthracis*, charcoal; *climax*, *climacis*, ladder; *colax*, *colacis*, flatterer.

Adverbs in *tim* have the penultima long, as *viritim* man by man, *catervatim* by troops. Except *affatim* abundantly, *statim* directly, *perpetim* speedily.

§ 173.—The Quantity of Last Syllables.—p. 190.

A short vowel before *sc*, *sp*, *sq*, *st*, *x*, *z*, is sometimes lengthened by the power of the ictus, as—*Hidden spoils and more triumphs from peace. No plan of flight, no hope, all things mute*; and very rarely remains short, as—*Lay it (hope) aside; every one his own hope; but how small this is, ye see*.

A long vowel at the end, before a vowel at the beginning, of a word, is sometimes shortened in the thesis, as—*And, O fair Iola, a long farewell, he said, farewell! They shouted, so that the whole shore sounded with O Hylas! Hylas! You, O friend, I was unable to see, &c. Aut Atho, &c.* So diphthongs—*Insulæ, &c.*

Obs. So, sometimes, in Lucretius, and the comic and lighter writers, monosyllables, except in the last syllable of the foot, are shortened, as—*Sed dum, &c. Cocto num, &c. Si me amas, &c.*

Words ending in *a* are long, as *ama, &c.*

Except *puta* think, *ita* thus, *quia* because, *ejā* on! also all cases in *a*, of whatever gender, number, or declension they may be; except vocatives from Greek words in *as*, as—*O Æneas, O Pallas*; and the ablative of the first declension, as—*By a muse*.

The Latin vocatives occur with a short last syllable, as—*Atrida* O Atrides, *Alcidā* O Alcides.

Except the names of letters of the alphabet, as *alpha*, *beta* (the names of the first and second of the Greek letters).

Words ending in *b*, *d*, *t*, are short, as *ab*, *ad*, *caput*.

In *c* are long, as *ac*, *sic*, *hic* here, the adverb.

But three in *c* are short, as *fac*, &c.

Sometimes *hic* and *hoc* are short, but only in the thesis; the ablative *hoc* is always long,

In *e* are short, as *mare*, &c.

To be excepted are all words of the fifth declension in *e*, as *fide* by faith; *die*, with the particles from it, as *hodie*, *quotidie*, *pridie*, *postridie*; also *quare*, *quodare* for what reason, *eare*, *refert* the impersonal, and if there are any like these.

Also second persons singular imperative of verbs of the second conjugation, as *doce*, &c.

Also monosyllables in *e* are long, as *me*, *te*, *se*; except the enclitic conjugations, *que*, *ne*, *ve*, and *ce*, *te*, *pse*, *pte*, the affixes to pronouns, as *hicce*, *suapte*.

Also adverbs in *e*, derived from adjectives of the second declension, have the *e* long, as *pulchre*, &c.

To which are added *ferme*, *ferē* almost; but *bene* and *male* are short.

Lastly, those which are written by Greeks in *eta* are long by nature, of whatever, case, gender, or number, as *Lethe* the river of oblivion, *Anchise*, &c.

In *i* are long, as *domini*, &c.

Except *mihi*, *tibi*, *sibi*, *ubi*, *ibi*, which are common; but in *necubi* nowhere, *sicubi* if any where, *ubinam* where? *ubivis* where you choose, *utinam* O that! *utique* yes truly, *i* is always short.

Nisi and *quasi* are also short.

Also datives and vocatives of Greek words, whose genitive singular ends in *dos* short, as—Dativ. *Minoidi* to the daughter of Minos, *Palladi* to Pallas, *Phyllidi* to Phyllis; Vocat. *Alexi* O Alexis, &c.

The dative is lengthened by *ictus*—*Tum Thetidi*, &c.; but is usually shortened—*Luce autem*, &c.

In *l* are short, as *animal*, &c.

Except *nil* contracted from *nihil*, *sal*, and *sol*.

M in *circum* is short before a short vowel in composition, as *circumago*, &c.

In *n* are long, as *Pæan* song of victory, *Hymen* deity of marriage, &c.

Except *forsan*, *forsitan*, &c.

To these are added the words which suffer apocope, as *viden'* for *videsne*? *audin'*, for *audisne*? also, *exin* henceforth, *subin* now and then, *dein*, *proin*.

In *an*, too, from nominatives in *ā*, as in the Nominative *Iphigenia*, *Ægina*; Accusative, *Iphigenian*, *Æginan*. For in *an*, from nominatives in *ās*, they are long, as Nom. *Æneas*, *Marsyas*; Accus. *Ænean*, *Marsyan*.

Nouns, also, in *en*, too, whose genitive has *inis* short, as *carmen*, *crimen*, *pecten*, *tibicen*, a flute-player, Gen. *-inis*.

Some, too, in *in* with *i*, as *Alexin*; and in *yn* with *y*, as *Ityn*.

Greek words, too, in *on* with *o* short, of whatever case, as Nom. *Ilion*, &c.; Accus. *Caucason*, &c.

In *o* are long, as *dico*, &c.

Except certain words, as *scio*, *nescio*, *volo*, *puto*, which here and there, among good authors, are found short; and many others which, in poetry of a lighter style or later age, are short.

But *cito*, *ego*, *modo*, *quomodo*, and *cedo* for *dic* or *da*, are always short.

Duo and *homo* are scarcely found long.

In *r* are short, as *Cæsar*, *jubar* ray of light, &c.

But these are long, *fur*, *Lar* household god, *Nar* a river in Italy, *ver*, *fur*, *cur*, and *par* equal, with its compounds, as *compar*, compeer, *impar*, *dispar*.

Greek words, too, in *er*, which end to them (the Greeks) in *np*, as *aer*, *crater*, *character*, *ather*, *soter* saviour: except *pater* and *mater*, which, among the Latins, have the last syllable short.

In *as* are long, as *amas*, *musas*, &c.

Except *anas*, *vas*, and Greek words, whose genitive singular ends in *ados* and not in *antos*, as *Arcas*, &c.

And accusative plurals of nouns increasing (in genitive), as *heros*, &c.

In *es* are long, as *Anchises*, &c.

Excepted are nouns in *es* of the third declension, which shorten the penultima of the genitive increasing, as *miles*, *militis*, &c.

But *aries* ram, *abies* fir, *paries* wall of a house, *Ceres* Goddess of Corn, and *pes* foot, with its compounds, as *bipes* two-footed, *tripes*, &c., are long.

Es, too, from *sum*, with its compounds, is short, as — *potes*, &c., to which *penes* (preposition) may be added.

Also neuters, and nominative plurals of Greek words, as — *cacothēs*, *heroes*, *lampades*, *Cyclopes* one-eyed giants, *Naiades* nymphs of streams.

In *is* are short, as *Paris*, &c.

Except oblique cases plural in *is*, which are long, as *musis*, &c., and *quis* for *quibus* (from *qui*); to these may be added some ablatives, taken adverbially, as *foris* out of doors, *gratis* for thanks (*gratis*).

Also those which lengthen the penultima of the genitive increasing, as *Samnis*, &c.

To those add those which end in *is*, contracted from *eis*, whether Greek or Latin, of whatever number or case, as *Simois* the river of Troy, *Pyrois* made of fire, *partis*, &c.

And all monosyllables, as *vis* force; *lis* strife; except the nominatives *is* and *quis*, and *bis* twice.

To these are added the second person singular of verbs in *is*, whose second persons plural end in *itis*, the penultima long, as *audis*, *velis*; plural *auditis*, *velitis*.

Obs. *Is*, of the second person singular of the second future indicative and preterperfect subjunctive, is common, as *amaveris*. Also the penultima of the second person plural of these tenses is common, as *amaveritis*.

In *os* are long, as *arbos*, *honos*, *nepos*, &c.

Except *compos* competent, *impos* powerless, and *os ossis* a bone.
And Greek words in *omicron*, as *Delos*, &c.

In *us* are short, as *famulus* an attendant, *regius* royal, &c.

Excepted are those which lengthen the penultima of the genitive increasing, as—*salus* safety, *tellus* earth, *incus* anvil, *jus* law; making genitive, *salutis*, &c.

Long, too, are all words of the fourth declension in *us*, except the nominative and vocative singular, as—Gen. sing. *manus*; Nom. Accus. Voc. plur. *manus*.

Add the monosyllables, as *crus*, *thus*, *mus*, *sus*.

And Greek words ending in diphthong *ous*, of whatever case, as—Nom. *Panthus*, *Melampus*; Gen. *Sapphus* of Sappho, *Clius* of Clio.

And the name of Jesus to be adored by all good men.

Words in *ys* are long, except in the thesis of the verse, as *Tethys* Goddess of sea, *Erinnys* Fury.

In *u* are long, as *manu*, &c.; but *indu* and *nenu*, in Lucretius, for *in* and *non*, are short.

In *y* are short, as *Tiphy*, O Tiphys, pilot of Argo, *moly* a panacea.

§ 174.—Feet.—p. 195.

You may see the *Pyrrhich* hasten with two short syllables; the *Spondee*, on the contrary, stand still with too long. A long syllable attached to a short one is called an *Iambus*; but if the long precede a short, lo a *Trochee*!

A *Dactyl* is made of a long and two short; an *Anapæst* of one long after two short. The *Tribrach* shortens three, the *Molossi* have lengthened (lengthen) as many. A long, closed in by two short, make an *Amphibrachys*: but a short interposed between two long, make an *Amphimacrus*. A *Baccheius* consists of a short and two long; and an *Anti-Baccheius* is the foot the reverse of it, in which one short is subjoined to two long.

A *Trochee* prefixed to an *Iambus*, gives thee, O *Choriambus*, but four short have generated (make) a *Proceleusmatic*. Let an *Ionic a majore* and *Ionic a minore* follow: in the latter case, a *Pyrrhich* leads a spondee, in the former it follows it.

Is a short mixed with three long? it is called an *Epitrite*. A long added as a companion to three short forms a *Pæon*. What are you, O *Antispast*? let an *iambus* precede a *trochee*. If to these a long syllable is added, a *Dochmius* comes forth.

§ 175.—Metres of Verses.—p. 196.

The Metres of verses which consist of feet above two syllables, except *Anapæsts*, are made of a foot apiece; the rest (are made)

of two feet apiece; thus the Dactylic Hexameter is made of six feet, the Trimeter Iambic is made of six feet also.

A verse, consisting of six metres, is called Hexameter; of five, Pentameter; of four, Tetrameter; of two, Dimeter; of one, Monometer.

A verse, which wants one syllable, is called Catalectic; one, which wants none, Acatalectic; one which wants a whole foot, Brachycatalectic; one which has a syllable too much, Hypercatalectic.

Two successive feet are called a Dipodia, and sometimes a Syzygy.

§ 176.—*Cæsuras in the Hexameter.*—p. 196.

Cæsura is the place in the verse where a word ends, and the voice pauses a little.

In an Heroic or Hexameter the principal Cæsuras are six, of which unless the verse have one or more, it will be faulty.

Penthemimeral (Cæsura), (πέντε, κ. τ. λ.), that is, after the fifth foot, the most common of all, as—*Tityre, tu patulæ, &c.**

The *Hepthemimeral* (ἑπτά, κ. τ. λ.), that is, after the seventh half foot, as—*Formosam resonare doces, &c.*

After the third trochee, as—*Orphei Calliopea, &c. Falleret indeprensus, &c.*

After the second Dactyl, as—*Aggeribus socer, &c. Descendens, gener, &c.*

After the third dactyl, which is somewhat rare, as—*Cui non dictus Hylas puer, &c.*

After the fourth dactyl, which, as used often by the Bucolic (Pastoral) Poets, is called the Bucolic Cæsura, as—*Ambo florentes ætatis, &c.*

The Cæsura is beautifully varied according to the sense, as—*Nonne vides? &c.*

Obs. Particular attention should be paid to Cæsuras, especially in writing hexameters; and they are to be so regulated, that the ear may be refreshed by variety, not offended by too much licence.

When there is a stop after the fifth dactyl, two monosyllables usually follow, or the same word is repeated which has lately gone before, as—*At Boreæ de parte trucidis cum fulminat, &c. Ipsæ consident medicatis sedibus, &c.*

Rarely, except in proper names, is the verse ended by a word longer than a trisyllable, as—*Dic mihi, Damata, cujum pecus? an, &c.*

* These and the following single lines are given to the point where the rule applies, and not at full length; that, from the commencement, the Scholar may supply the remainder.

§ 177.—*Rules of the Pentameter.*—p. 198.

The first half of the line is to be ended with a word.

Otherwise the verse is faulty, as—*Hæc quoque nostræ sententia, &c.*

An elision after the first half of the line is harsh, as—*Troja virum et virtut-um, &c.*

Neither half is well ended with a one-syllable word, except either another monosyllable or an elision precedes, as—*Non tamen est, &c. Præmia si studio consequor ista, &c. Invitis oculis littera lecta, &c.*

A Pentameter is best ended by a two-syllable word, rarely by a four-syllable, more rarely by a three-syllable; therefore, do not imitate these which follow:—*Maxima de nihilo nascitur, &c. Et caput impositis pressit amor, &c.*

The couplet generally finishes a sentence, or at least ends with a colon.

§ 178.—*Alcaic Verses.*—p. 198.

Ex.—*Virtue, ignorant of base defeat, shines with unsullied honour, nor assumes nor lays down her fasces at the will of the popular gale.*

The two first verses of the (Alcaic) stanza begin better with a long than with a short syllable. The third verse rarely begins with a short syllable.

The Cæsura after the fifth half foot is rarely neglected, except when an elision follows, as—*Mentem sacerdotum, &c.*; or, in compounded words, as—*Hostile aratrum, &c. Antehac nefas, &c.*

The third verse of the stanza cannot begin with a four-syllable word, or with two dissyllables, or with a monosyllable and trisyllable: these which follow are faulty:—*Tranquillitas, &c. Virtus piam, &c. Et nobiles, &c.*: except the last syllable of the quadrisyllable is cut off, as—*Rubiginem, &c.*

The third verse of the stanza is rarely ended by two dissyllables, very rarely by a quadrisyllable, never by a trisyllable and enclitic; these, therefore, which follow, are less to be approved—*Pronos relabi, &c. Nodo coerces, &c.* But *Pæana dicit, &c.*, is to be altogether rejected.

Those verses which follow are all of good character—1. *Deprome, &c.* 2. *Declive, &c.* 3. *Morem, &c.* 4. *Spargunt, &c.* 5. *Non erubescendis, &c.* 6. *Nunc in, &c.* 7. *Non Liber, &c.*

The fourth verse of the stanza reluctantly admits in its beginning the final numbers of the Pentameter; so that you can scarcely imitate those which follow—*O Thaliarche merum, &c. Teque tuasque decet, &c.*

Nor the concluding numbers of the hexameter, as—*Me cichorea levesque, &c. Arvaeque jungere quærit, &c.*

These which follow are of good character:—1. *Compositâ, &c.* 2. *Sardinia, &c.* 3. *Concutitur, &c.* 4. *Lævia, &c.* 5. *Flumina, &c.* 6. *Aut agito.*

§ 179.—*Sapphic Verses*.—p. 200.

Whoever loves the golden mean, secure, is without the dirt of the squalid house; sober, he is without the envied palace.

The penthemimeral cæsure is a property of the Sapphic, as—*Jam satis terris, &c.*

This verse admits only one other cæsure, viz. after the third trochee, as—*Mercuri facunde, &c. Concines majore, &c.*; for *Pertinax et, &c.*, and such lines are bad.

The fourth verse of the stanza is termed Adonic, as—*Terruit urbem.*

§ 180.—*Names of other verses*.—p. 201.

A spondee, and two choriambics, with an iambic joined, give you the verse distinguished by the name of *Asclepiades*, as—*Mæcnas, &c.*

Obs. After the first choriambic, a word either ends or is cut off.

The same verse, if you take out one of the choriambics, behold, will be that (the verse) of Glycon, as—*Sic te, &c.*

Glyconic polyschematistis:—*Sic te Cypri, &c.*

Do you wish to sport with a *Pherecratic verse*? Let a dactyl be to you between two spondees, as—*Grato, &c.*

Obs. 1. In these two kinds of verses Catullus has, in the first place, sometimes a trochee, and sometimes an iambus (as well as a spondee); the latter poets, only a spondee.

Obs. 2. If you prefix a Glyconic to a Pherecratic, you have the Catullian verse—*O Colonia quæ cupis, &c.*

Make *Anapæstic* verses of four feet; in whatever place of the verse you like, let an anapæst be put; in lieu of which, at one time let there be a spondee, at another a dactyl.

If you write such as the Teïan bard (Anacreon) sported formerly, let one syllable after three iambics close the metre; a spondee or anapæst relieves the first iambus, as—*Anacreon, &c.*

The *Logæædic* muse adds trochees to dactyls.

Phalæcus put a spondee in the first place, a dactyl follows, three trochees come after. If you ask the name (of this line) it is called a *Hendecasyllable*, as—*Summam nec metuas, &c.*

A *Scæzon* halts with its last foot; if this were not so, it would render to you an iambic verse with its trimeter numbers: now the sixth foot has a spondee, the fifth an iambus, as—*Labore fessi venimus Larem, &c.*, which line would become an *Iambic Trimeter* or *Senarius*, by writing *Labore fessi venimus nostrum ad Larem*; and would become a *pure Iambic* by modifying it thus:—*Labore fessa vēnit ad Larem suum.*

Obs. 1. Horace was content with writing once (Epode xv.) in *pure Iambics*.

Obs. 2. Concerning *Iambic verses*, Horace says, A. P. 251—*Syllaba longa brevi, &c.*

Obs. 3. Concerning the *Ionic a Minore Metre*, see Bentr. on Horace, Od. iii. xii. 1.

§ 181.—*Mixed Verses.*—p. 202.

Verses which are formed of two verses of different kinds are called Mixed, as—*Solvitur acris hyems*, &c., which is termed an Archilochian, consists of a Dactylic Tetrameter, and a Trochaic Dimeter Brachycatalectic.

Mixed verses, when the last syllable of their first part is common, and, although it ends in a vowel, is not cut off by a vowel following, are called Asynartete, as—*Findunt Scamandri flumina*, &c., where the Pyrrhic *mina* occupies the place of an Iambus, and—*Fervidiore mero*, &c., where *o* in *mero* is not cut off (by the vowel *a* following it).

Obs. See Bentl. Hor. Epod. xi. 1.

§ 182.—*Concerning the Verses of Plautus and Terence.*

Concerning the verses of Plautus and Terence, this is particularly to be noted:—Those who tread prosaic stories with the comic buskin, in order that you may think, what they say, to be taken from common life, vitiate the iambus with the spondaic rhythms; (thus) instead of (saying) *commodavi*, &c., they say *commendavi*, &c.

Obs. The same may be said concerning the earlier tragedies of the Romans, as of Ennius, Accius, Pacuvius. (See Bentl. Hor. A. P. 260.).

And, as they lengthen short syllables, so they shorten syllables long by position, but not by nature; and especially in the first foot of the verse, as in an Iambic Trimeter—*Propter hospitai*, &c.

§ 183.—*Latin Accents.*

The accent is never in the last place, except in monosyllables.

In words of more than two syllables the accent is on the penultima, if the penultima be long by nature, as—*amare, curarum*; but if the penultima be short, the antepenultima is accented.

Obs. But in four-syllable words, when one long follows three short, the first is accented, as *mulieres*.

In the second dipodia of a Trimeter, the comic writers took great care that the *ictus* should not fall on the last syllables (which are without accent), except for a certain peculiar grace of emphasis, as—*Scelesta ovem*, &c.

Beside Iambics and Trochaics, Terence uses also Cretics, Bacchiacs, and Choriambics; but each only once, and never in the dialogue.

§ 184.—*Concluding Feet in Prose.*

In prose, the feet which close the sentence most harmoniously, are a Cretic and Double Trochee, as &c. A Trochee and Antibaccheius, as &c. A Dochmius, as &c. A Tribrach and Trochee, as, &c. Two Cretics, as &c.

APPENDIX.

§ 185.—*HISTORICA.*

HISTORIA ROMANA.

EX VIRGILIO. *Æn.* lib. vi. 756—854.

Nunc age, Dardaniam prolem quæ deinde sequatur
Gloria, qui maneat Itala de gente nepotes,
Inlustres animas, nostrumque in nomen ituras,
Expedit dictis, et te tua fata docebo.
Ille, vides, pura juvenis qui nititur hasta,
Proxima sorte tenet lucis loca; primus ad auras
Ætherias Italo commixtus sanguine surget
Silvius, Albanum nomen, tua postuma proles:
Quem tibi longævo serum Lavinia conjunx
Educat silvis regem, regumque parentem:
Unde genus Longa nostrum dominabitur Alba.
Proximus ille Procas, Trojanæ gloria gentis,
Et Capys, et Numitor, et qui te nomine reddet
Silvius Æneas, pariter pietate vel armis
Egregius, si unquam regnandam adceperit Albam.
Qui juvenes quantas ostendant, adspice, vires!
At, qui umbrata gerunt civili tempora quercu,
Hi tibi Nomentum, et Gabios, urbemque Fidenam,
Hi Collatinas inponent montibus arces,
* Laude pudicitiae celebres, addentque superbos*
Pometios, Castrumque Inui, Bolamque, Coramque.
Hæc tum nomina erunt, nunc sunt sine nomine terræ.
Quin et avo comitem sese Mavortius addet
Romulus, Assaraci quem sanguinis Ilia mater
Educat; vident' ut geminae stant vertice cristæ
Et pater ipse suo superum jam signat honore?
En, hujus, nate, auspiciis illa incluta Roma
Imperium terris, animos æquabit Olympo,
Septemque una sibi muro circumdabit arces,
Felix prole virum: qualis Berecynthia mater

Invehitur curru Phrygias turrita per urbes,
Læta deûm partu, centum complexa nepotes,
Omnes cœlicolas, omnes supera alta tenentes.
Huc geminas nunc flocte acies; hanc adspice gentem,
Romanosque tuos. Hic Cæsar, et omnis Iûli
Progenies, magnum cœli ventura sub axem.
Hic vir, hic est, tibi quem promitti sæpius audis,
Augustus Cæsar, Divi genus; aurea condet
Sæcula qui rursus Latio, regnata per arva
Saturno quondam: super et Garamantas et Indos
Proferet imperium: jacet extra sidera tellus,
Extra anni Solisque vias, ubi cœlifer Atlas
Axem humero torquet stellis ardentibus aptum.
Hujus in adventum jam nunc et Caspia regna
Responsis horrent Divom, et Mæotia tellus,
Et septemgemini turbant trepida ostia Nili.
Nec vero Alcides tantum telluris obivit,
Fixerit æripedem cervam licet, aut Erymanthi
Pacarit nemora et Lernam tremefecerit arcu:
Nec, qui pampineis victor juga flectit habenis,
Liber, agens celso Nysæ de vertice tigres.
Et dubitamus adhuc virtutem extendere factis?
Aut metus Ausonia prohibet consistere terra?
Quis procul ille autem ramis insignis olivæ
Sacra ferens? nosco crines incanaque menta
Regis Romani; primus qui legibus urbem
Fundabit, Curibus parvis et paupere terra
Missus in imperium magnum. Cui deinde subibit
Otia qui rumpet patriæ, residesque movebit
Tullus in arma viros, et jam desueta triumphis
Agmina. Quem juxta sequitur jactantior Ancus,
Nunc quoque jam nimium gaudens popularibus auris.
Vis et Tarquinius regis, animamque superbam
Ultoris Bruti, fascisque videre receptos?
Consulis imperium hic primus sævasque secures
Adcipiet; natosque pater, nova bella moventes
Ad pœnam pulcra pro libertate vocabit.
Infelix! Utcumque ferent ea facta minores:
Vincet amor patriæ laudumque immensa cupido.
Quin Decios, Drususque procul, sævumque securi
Adspice Torquatum, et referentem signa Camillum.
Illæ autem, paribus quas fulgere cernis in armis,
Concordes animæ nunc, et dum nocte prementur,
Heu quantum inter se bellum, si lumina vitæ
Adtigerint, quantas acies stragemque ciebut!

Aggeribus socer Alpinis atque arce Monœci
 Descendens; gener adversis instructus Eois.
 Ne, pueri, ne tanta animis adsuescite bella;
 Neu patriæ validas in viscera vertite vires.
 Tuque prior, tu parce, genus qui ducis Olympo;
 Projice tela manu, sanguis meus.
 Ille triumphata Capitolia ad alta Corintho
 Victor aget currum, cæsis insignis Achivis.
 Eruet ille Argos Agamemnoniasque Mycenæ,
 Ipsumque Æaciden, genus armipotentis Achilli;
 Ultus avos Trojæ, templa et temerata Minervæ.
 Quis te, magne Cato, tacitum, aut te, Cosse, relinquat?
 Quis Gracchi genus? aut geminos, duo fulmina belli,
 Scipiadas, cladem Libyæ? parvoque potentem
 Fabricium? vel te sulco, Serrane, serentem?
 Quo fessum rapitis, Fabii? tu Maximus ille es,
 Unus qui nobis cunctando restituis rem.
 Excudent alii spirantia mollius æra;
 Credo equidem: vivos ducent de marmore voltus;
 Orabunt causas melius, cœlique meatus
 Describent radio, et surgentia sidera dicent:
 Tu regere imperio populos, Romane, memento;
 Hæ tibi erunt artes: pacisque imponere morem,
 Parcere subjectis, et debellare superbos.

EX VIRGILIO. *Æn.* lib. viii. 608—731.

AT VENUS ætherios inter dea candida nimbos
 Dona ferens aderat: natumque in valle reducta
 Ut procul egelido secretum flumine vidit;
 Talibus adfata est dictis, seque obtulit ultro:
 En perfecta mei promissa conjugis arte
 Munera: ne mox aut Laurentes, nate, superbos,
 Aut acrem dubites in prælia poscere Turnum.
 Dixit, et amplexus nati Cytherea petivit;
 Arma sub adversa posuit radiantia quercu.
 Ille, deæ donis et tanto lætus honore,
 Expleri nequit, atque oculos per singula volvit,
 Miraturque, interque manus et brachia versat
 Terribilem cristis galeam flammasque vomentem,
 Fatiferumque ensem, loricam ex ære rigentem,
 Sanguineam, ingentem, qualis, quum cærula nubes
 Solis inardescit radiis, longeque refulget;
 Tum leves ocreas electro auroque recocto,
 Hastamque, et clipei non enarrabile textum.

Illic res Italas, Romanorumque triumphos,
Haud vaturn ignarus venturique inscius ævi,
Fecerat Ignipotens: illic genus omne futuræ
Stirpis ab Ascanio, pugnataque in ordine bella.
Fecerat et viridi fetam Mavortis in antro
Procubuisse lupam: geminos huic ubera circum
Ludere pendentes pueros, et lambere matrem
Impavidos; illam tereti cervice reflexam
Mulcere alternos, et corpora fingere lingua.
Nec procul hinc Romam, et raptas sine more Sabinas
Consessu cavæ, magnis Circensibus actis,
Addiderat, subitoque novum consurgere bellum
Romulidis, Tatioque seni, Curibusque severis.
Post idem, inter se posito certamine, reges
Armati Jovis ante aram, paterasque tenentes,
Stabant, et cæsa jungebant fœdera porca.
Haud procul inde citæ Metum in diversa quadrigæ
Distulerant, (at tu dictis, Albane, maneres!)
Raptabatque viri mendacis viscera Tullus
Per silvam, et sparsi rorabant sanguine vepres.
Nec non Tarquinium ejectum Porsena jubebat
Adcipere, ingentique urbem obsidione premebat;
Æneadæ in ferrum pro libertate ruebant.
Illum indignanti similem, similemque minanti
Adspiceres; pontem auderet quod vellere Cocles,
Et fluvium vinolis innaret Clœlia ruptis.
In summo custos Tarpeiæ Manlius arcis
Stabat pro templo, et Capitolia celsa tenebat,
Romuleoque recens horrebat regia culmo.
Atque hic auratis volitans argenteus anser
Porticibus, Gallos in limine adesse, canebat;
Galli per dumos aderant, arcemque tenebant,
Defensi tenebris et dono noctis opacæ:
Aurea cæsaries ollis, atque aurea vestis;
Virgatis lucent sagulis; tum lactea colla
Auro innectuntur: duo quisque Alpina coruscant
Gæsa manu, scutis protecti corpora longis.
Hic exsultantes Salios, nudosque Lupercos,
Lanigerosque apices, et lapsa ancilia cœlo
Extuderat; castæ ducebant sacra per urbem
Pilentis matres in mollibus. Hinc procul addit
Tartareas etiam sedes, alta ostia Ditis;
Et scelerum pœnas, et te, Catilina, minaci
Pendentem scopulo, Furiarumque ora trementem

Secretosque pios: his dantem jura Catonem.
Hæc inter tumidi late maris ibat imago
Aurea; sed fluctu spumabant cærulea cano:
Et circum argento clari delphines in orbem
Æquora verrebant caudis, æstumque secabant.
In medio classes æratas, Actia bella,
Cernere erat: totumque instructo Marte videres
Fervere Leucaten, auroque effulgere fluctus.
Hinc Augustus agens Italos in prælia Cæsar
Cum Patribus, Populoque, Penatibus et magnis Dīs,
Stans celsa in puppi: geminas cui tempora flammæ
Læta vomunt, patriumqua aperitur vertice sidus.
Parte alia ventis et dīs Agrippa secunda,
Arduus, agmen agens; cui, belli insigne superbum,
Tempora navali fulgent rostrata corona.
Hinc ope barbarica, variisque Antonius armis,
Victor ab Auroræ populis et litore rubro,
Ægyptum, viresque Orientis, et ultima secum
Bactra vehit; sequiturque, nefas! Ægyptia conjunx.
Una omnes ruere, ac totum spumare, reductis
Convolsum remis rostrisque tridentibus, æquor.
Alta petunt: pelago credas innare revolsas
Cycladas, aut montes concurrere montibus altos:
Tanta mole viri turritis puppis instant.
Stuppes flamma manu, telisque volatile ferrum
Spargitur; arva nova Neptunia cæde rubescunt.
Regina in mediis patrio vocat agmina sistro;
Necdum etiam geminos a tergo respicit angues;
Omnigenūque deūmonstra, et latrator Anubis,
Contra Neptunum, et Venerem, contraque Minervam
Tela tenent. Sævit medio in certamine Mavors
Cælatus ferro, tristesque ex æthere Diræ;
Et scissa gaudens vadit Discordia palla;
Quam cum sanguineo sequitur Bellona flagello.
Actius hæc cernens arcum intendebat Apollo
Desuper: omnis eo terrore Ægyptus, et Indi,
Omnis Arabs, omnes vertebant terga Sabæi.
Ipsa videbatur ventis regina vocatis
Vela dare, et laxos jam jamque immittere funes.
Illam inter cædes pallentem morte futura
Fecerat Ignipotens undis et lapyge ferri;
Contra autem magno mœrentem corpore Nilum,
Pandentemque sinus, et tota veste vocantem
Cæruleum in gremium, latebrosaue flumina, vietos.

At Cæsar, triplici invecus Romana triumpho
 Mœnia, Dīs Italīs votum immortale sacrabat,
 Maxima tercentum totam delubra per Urbem.
 Lætitiā ludisque viæ plausuque fremebant:
 Omnibus in templis matrum chorus; omnibus aræ;
 Ante aras terram cæsi stravere juvenci.
 Ipse, sedens niveo candentis limine Phœbi,
 Dona recognoscit populorum, aptatque superbis
 Postibus: incedunt victæ longo ordine gentes,
 Quam variæ linguis, habitu tam vestis et armis.
 Hic Nomadum genus et discinctos Mulciber Afros,
 Hic Lelegas Carasque sagittiferosque Gelonos
 Finxerat; Euphrates ibat jam mollior undis,
 Extremique hominum Morini, Rhenusque bicornis;
 Indomitique Dahæ, et pontem indignatus Araxes.
 Talia, per clipeum Volcani, dona parentis,
 Miratur, rerumque ignarus imagine gaudet;
 Adtollens humero famamque et fata nepotum.

DE IMPERATORIBUS ROMANIS.

AUSONII TETRASTICHA.

I. JULIUS CÆSAR.

IMPERIUM, binis fuerat solenne quod olim
 Consulibus, CÆSAR JULIUS obtinuit.
 Sed breve jus regni, sola trieteride gestum,
 Perculit armatæ factio sæva togæ.

II. OCTAVIUS AUGUSTUS.

ULTOR, successorque dehinc OCTAVIUS, idem
 CÆSAR; at AUGUSTI nomine nobilior.
 Longæva, et nunquam dubiis violata potestas,
 In terris positum credidit esse Deum.

III. TIBERIUS NERO.

PRÆNOMEN TIBERI nactus NERO, prima juventutis
 Tempora laudato gessit in imperio.
 Frustra dehinc solo Caprearum clausus in antro,
 Quæ prodit vitiis, credit operta locis.

IV. CAIUS CALIGULA.

Post hunc castrensis caligæ cognomine CÆSAR
Successit sævo sævior ingenio :
Cædibus, incestisque dehinc maculosus, et omni
Crimine pollutum qui superavit avum.

V. CLAUDIUS CÆSAR.

CLAUDIUS irrissæ privato in tempore vitæ,
In regno specimen prodidit ingenii.
Libertina tamen nuptarum et crimina passus,
Non faciendo nocens, sed patiendo fuit.

VI. NERO.

ÆNEADUM generis qui sextus et ultimus hæres,
Polluit, et clausit Julia sacra NERO.
Nomina quot pietas, tot habet quoque crimina vita.
Disce ex Tranquillo, quæ meminisse piget.

VII. SERVIUS GALBA.

SPEM frustrate senex, privatus sceptrum mereri
Visus es ; imperio proditus inferior :
Fama tibi melior juveni ; sed justior ordo est,
Complacuisse dehinc, displicuisse prius.

VIII. MARCUS OTHO.

ÆNULA polluto gesturus sceptrum NERONI,
Obruitur celeri raptus OTHO exitio.
Fine tamen laudandus erit : qui morte decora
Hoc solum fecit nobile, quod periit.

IX. AULUS VITELLIUS.

VITÆ ut sors, mors fœda tibi, nec digne VITELLI,
Qui fieres CÆSAR : sic sibi fata placent.
Umbra tamen brevis imperii ; quia præmia regni
Sæpe indignus adit, non nisi dignus habet.

X. DIVUS VESPASIANUS.

QUÆRENDO attentus, moderato commodus usu,
Augēt nec reprimīt VESPASIANUS opes.
Olim qui dubiam privato in tempore famam,
Rarum aliis, Princeps transtulit in melius.

XL. TITUS VESPASIANUS.

FELIX imperio, felix brevitate regendi,
 Expers civilis sanguinis, orbis amor :
 Unum dixisti moriens te crimen habere :
 Sed nulli de te non tibi credidimus.

XII. DOMITIANUS.

HACTENUS edideras dominos, gens Flavia, justos,
 Cur duo quæ dederant tertius eripuit ?
 Vix tanti est habuisse illos : quia dona bonorum
 Sunt brevia ; æternum, quæ nocuere, dolent.

XIII. NERVA.

PROXIMUS extincto moderatur sceptrum tyranno
 NERVA senex, princeps nomine, mente parens.
 Nulla viro soboles : imitatur adoptio prolem,
 Quam legisse juvet, quam genuisse velit.

XIV. TRAJANUS.

AGGREDITUR regimen viridi TRAJANUS in ævo,
 Belli laude prior, cetera patris habens.
 Hic quoque prole carens sociat sibi sorte legendi,
 Quem fateare bonum, diffiteare parem.

XV. ÆLIUS HADRIANUS.

ÆLIUS hinc subiit mediis præsignis in actis :
 Principia et finem fama notat gravior.
 Orbis et hic : sociatque virum documenta daturum,
 Asciti quantum præmineant genitia.

XVI. ANTONINUS PIUS.

ANTONINUS abhinc regimen capit : ille vocatu
 Consultisque PIUS, nomen habens meriti.
 Filius huic fato nullus : sed lege suorum
 A patria sumsit, qui regeret patriam.

XVII. MARCUS ANTONINUS.

POST Marco tutela datur : qui scita Platonis
 Flexit ad imperium, patre Pio melior.
 Successore suo moriens sed principe pravo,
 Hoc solo patriæ, quod genuit, nocuit.

XVIII. COMMODUS.

COMMODUS insequitur, pugnis maculosus arenæ,
 Threicio princeps bella movens gladio.
 Eliso tandem persolvens gutture pœnas,
 Criminibus fassus matris adulterium.

XIX. HELVIUS PERTINAX.

HELVI, iudicio et consulto lecte senatus,
 Princeps decretis prodite, non studiis.
 Quod doluit malefida cohors; errore probato,
 Curia quod castris cesserat imperio.

XX. DIDIUS JULIANUS.

DI bene, quod spoliis DIDIUS non gaudet opimis :
 Et cito perjuro præmia ademta seni.
 Tuque, Severe pater, titulum ne horresce novantis.
 Non rapit imperium vis tua, sed recipit.

XXI. SEVERUS PERTINAX.

IMPIGER egelido movet arma SEVERUS ab Istro
 Ut parricidæ regna adimat Didio,
 Punica origo illi: sed qui virtute probaret
 Non obstare locum, cum valet ingenium.

XXII. BASSIANUS ANTONINUS CARACALLA.

DISSIMILIS virtute patri, et multo magis illi,
 Cujus adoptivo nomine te perhibes.
 Fratris morte nocens, punitus sine cruento,
 In risu populi tu CARACALLA magis.

XXIII. OPILIUS MACRINUS.

PRINCIPIS hinc custos, sumtum pro Cæsare ferrum
 Vertit in auctorem cæde MACRINUS iners.
 Mox cum prole ruit. Gravibus pulsare querelis
 Cesset perfidiam: quæ patitur, meruit.

XXIV. ANTONINUS HELIOGABALUS.

TUNE etiam Augustæ sedis penetralia fœdas,
 ANTONINORUM nomina falsa gerens?

• • • • • •

AUCTORES CLASSICI LATINI.

POETÆ.				PEDESTRES ORATIONIS SCRIPTORES.			
	A. C.		A. C.		A. C.		A. C.
Ennius .	natus 239	mortuus 169		Varro . . .	natus 116	mortuus 27	
Plautus . . .	—		184	Cicero . . .	106		49
Terentius . . .	192		159	Cæsar, C. J. . .	99		44
Lucretius . . .	95		55	Nepos, C. . . .	90 (?)		—
Catullus . . .	86		40 (?)	Crispus, C. Sallustius	86		35
Virgilius . . .	70		19	Livius	59		—
Horatius . . .	65		8	Vitruvius . . .	—		—
Tibullus . . .	59		18	Paterculus . . .	19 (?)		—
Propertius . . .	—		15	Valerius Maximus .	—		—
Ovidius . . .	43	A. D. 18		Celsus	—		—
Phædrus . . .	—		—	Columella . . .	—		—
Persius mortuus anno ætut. 28.				Seneca, M. Annæus	19 (?)		—
	A. D.		A. D.		A. D.		A. D.
Lucanus . . .	38		65	Seneca, L. Annæus .	2		—
Valerius Flaccus	—		88	Plinius (Major), C.	23		—
Silius Italicus .	25		100	Quintilianus . . .	42 (?)		—
Statius . . .	61		—	Tacitus	52 (?)		—
Martialis . . .	—		—	Plinius (Minor), C.	62		—
Juvenalis . . .	38		119	Suetonius Tranquillus, C.	72 (?)		—

DE COMICIS LATINIS.

EX HORATIO.

AMBIGITUR quoties uter utro sit prior, aufert
Pacuvius docti famam senis, Accius alti ;
Dicitur Afranî toga convenisse Menandro :
Plautus ad exemplar Siculi properare Epicharmi,
Vincere Cæcilius gravitate, Terentius arte.—*Epist. lib. ii. l. 55.*

DE POETIS SUIS ÆQUALIBUS.

EX OVIDIO.

TEMPORIS illius colui fovique poetas ;
Quotque aderant vates, rebar adesse Deos.
Sæpe suas volucres legit mihi grandior ævo,
Quæque necet serpens, quæ juvet herba, Macer.

Sæpe suos solitus recitare Propertius ignes ;
 Jure sodalitio qui mihi junctus erat.
 Ponticus Heroo, Bassus quoque clarus Iambo,
 Dulcia convictûs membra fuere mei.
 Et tenuit nostras numerosus Horatius aures ;
 Dum ferit Ausoniâ carmina culta lyrâ.
 Virgilium vidi tantum : nec amara Tibullo
 Tempus amicitiae fata dedere meæ.
 Successor fuit hic tibi, Galle ; Propertius illi ;
 Quartus ab his serie temporis ipse fui.

Trist. lib. iv. 10. 41—54.

DE ROMANIS AUCTORIBUS.

EX QUINTILIANO. *Lib. x. cap. 1.*

Idem nobis per Romanos quoque Auctores ordo ducendus est. Itaque, ut, apud illos Homerus, sic apud nos *Virgilius* auspicatissimum dederit exordium ; omnium ejus generis Poëtarum, Græcorum nostrorumque, illi haud dubie proximus. Utar enim verbis iisdem, quæ ex Afro Domitio juvenis accepi ; qui mihi interroganti, quem Homero crederet maxime accedere, *Secundus*, inquit, est *Virgilius*, propior tamen primo, quam tertio. Et, (hercle) ut illi naturæ cœlesti atque immortalis cesserimus, ita curæ et diligentiae vel ideo in hoc plus est, quod ei fuit magis laborandum ; et, quantum eminentioribus vincimur, fortasse æqualitate pensamus. Cæteri omnes longe sequentur. Nam *Macer* et *Lucretius* legendi quidem, sed non ut phrasin, id est, corpus eloquentiæ, faciant : elegantes in suâ quisque materiâ, sed alter humilis, alter difficilis. *Atacinus Varro*, in iis per quæ nomen est assecutus, interpretis operis alieni, non spernendus quidem, verum ad augendam facultatem dicendi parum locuples. *Ennius*, sicut sacros vetustate lucos, adoramus, in quibus grandia et antiqua robora jam non tantam habent speciem, quantam religionem. Propiores alii, atque ad hanc phrasin, de quâ loquimur, magis utiles. Lascivus quidem in heroicis quoque *Ovidius*, et nimium amator ingenii sui : laudandus tamen in partibus. *Cornelius* autem *Severus*, etiamsi versificator quam poëta melior, si tamen, ut est dictum, ad exemplar primi libri Bellum Siculum perscripsisset, vindicaret sibi jure secundum locum. Sed eum consummari mors immatura non passa est : puerilia tamen ejus opera et maximam indolem ostendunt, et mirabilem, præcipue in ætate illâ, recti generis voluntatem. Multum in *Valerio Flacco* nuper amisimus. Vehemens et poëticum ingenium *Saleii Bassi* fuit, nec ipsum senectute maturum. *Rabirius* ac *Pedo* non indigni cognitione, si vacet. *Lucanus*

ardens, et concitatus, et sententiis clarissimus, et (ut dicam, quod sentio) magis oratoribus quam poëtis annumerandus. Hos nominavimus, quia Germanicum Augustum ab institutis studiis deflexit cura terrarum; parumque Diis visum est, esse eum maximum poëtarum. Quid tamen iis ipsis ejus operibus, in quæ, donatus imperio, juvenis secesserat, sublimius, doctius, omnibus denique numeris præstantius? Quis enim caneret bella melius, quam qui sic gerit? Quem præsertim studiis Deæ propius audirent? Cui magis suas artes aperiret familiare numen Minervæ? Dicent hæc plenius futura sæcula. Nunc enim cæterarum fulgore virtutum laus ista præstringitur. Nos tamen, sacra literarum colentes, feras, Cæsar, si non tacitum hoc præterimus, et Virgiliano certe versu testamur,

Inter victrices hederam tibi serpere lauros.

Elegiâ Græcos quoque provocamus; cujus mihi tersus atque elegans maxime videtur auctor *Tibullus*. Sunt qui *Propertium* malint. *Ovidius* utroque lascivior; sicut durior *Gallus*. Satira quidem tota nostra est, in quâ primus insignem laudem adeptus est *Lucilius*, qui quosdam ita deditos sibi adhuc habet amatores, ut eum non ejusdem modo operis auctoribus, sed omnibus poëtis, præferre non dubitent. Ego, quantum ab illis, tantum ab Horatio dissentio, qui *Lucilium fluere lutulentum, et esse aliquid quod tollere possis*, putat. Nam et eruditio in eo mira, et libertas, atque inde acerbitas, et abunde salis. Multo est tersior ac purus magis *Horatius*, et ad notandos hominum mores præcipuus. Multum et veræ gloriæ, quamvis uno libro, *Persius* meruit. Sunt clari hodieque, et qui olim nominabuntur.

Alterum illud est et prius Satiræ genus, quod non solâ carminum varietate mixtum condidit *Terentius Varro*, vir Romanorum eruditissimus. Plurimos hic libros, et doctissimos, composuit, peritissimus linguæ Latinæ et omnis antiquitatis, et rerum Græcarum nostrarumque; plus tamen scientiæ collaturus, quam eloquentiæ. *Iambus* non sane a Romanis celebratus est, ut proprium opus; a quibusdam interpositus; cujus acerbitas in *Catullo*, *Bibaculo*, *Horatio*; quanquam illi epodos intervenire [non] reperitur. At lyricorum idem *Horatius* fere solus legi dignus. Nam et insurgit aliquando, et plenus est jucunditatis et gratiæ, et variis figuris et verbis felicissime audax. Si quem adjicere velis, is erit *Cæsius Bassus*, quem nuper vidimus: sed eum longe præcedunt ingenia viventium.

Tragædiæ scriptores, *Accius* atque *Pacuvius*, clarissimi gravitate sententiarum, verborum pondere, et auctoritate personarum. Cæterum nitor, et summa in excolendis operibus manus, magis videri potest temporibus, quam ipsis, defuisse. Virium tamen Accio plus tribuitur: *Pacuvium* videri doctiorem, qui esse docti affectant, volunt. Jam *Varus* *Thyestes* cuilibet Græcorum comparari potest. *Ovidii Medea* videtur mihi ostendere, quantum vir ille præstare potuerit, si ingenio suo tem-

perare, quam indulgere, maluisset. Eorum quos viderim, longe princeps *Pomponius Secundus*, quem senes parum tragicum putabant, eruditione ac nitore præstare confitebantur.

In Comœdiâ maxime claudicamus; licet Varro dicat, *Musas, Ælii Stilonis sententiâ, Plautino sermone locuturas fuisse, si Latine loqui vellent*; licet *Cæcilium* veteres laudibus ferant; licet *Terentii scripta* ad Scipionem Africanum referantur; quæ tamen sunt in hoc genere elegantissima, et plus adhuc habitura gratiæ, si intra versus trimetros stetissent. Vix levem consequimur umbram, adeo ut mihi sermo ipse Romanus non recipere videatur illam solis concessam Atticis Venerem, quando eam ne Græci quidem in alio genere linguæ obtinuerint. Togatis excellit *Afranius*: utinamque non inquinasset argumenta puerorum fœdis amoribus, mores suos fassus.

At Historia non cesserit Græcis; nec opponere Thucydidi *Sallustium* verear: nec indignetur sibi Herodotus æquari *T. Livium*, cum in nar-rando miræ jucunditatis, clarissimique candoris, tum in concionibus, supra quam enarrari potest, eloquentem: ita dicuntur omnia, cum rebus, tum personis, accommodata: sed affectus quidem, præcipue eos qui sunt dulciores, (ut parcissime dicam) nemo historicorum commendavit magis. Ideoque immortalem illam *Sallustii* velocitatem diversis virtutibus consecutus est. Nam mihi egregie dixisse videtur *Servilius Novianus*, pares eos magis, quam similes: qui et ipse a nobis auditus est, clari vir ingenii, et sententiis creber, sed minus pressus, quam historiæ auctoritas postulat. Quam, paulum ætate præcedens cum, *Bassus Aufidius* egregie, utique in libris belli Germanici, præstitit, genere ipso probabilis in omnibus, sed, in quibusdam, suis ipse viribus minor. Superest adhuc, et exornat ætatis nostræ gloriam, vir sæculorum memoriâ dignus, qui olim nominabitur, nunc intelligitur. Habet amatores, nec [imitatores,] ut libertas, quamquam circumcisis quæ dixisset, ei nocuerit. Sed elatum abunde spiritum, et audaces sententias, deprehendas etiam in iis quæ manent. Sunt et alii scriptores boni; sed nos genera degustamus, non bibliothecas excutimus.

Oratores vero vel præcipue Latinam eloquentiam parem facere Græcæ possunt. Nam *Ciceronem* cuicumque eorum fortiter opposuerim. Nec ignoro, quantam mihi concitem pugnam, cum præsertim id non sit propositi, ut eum *Demostheni* comparem hoc tempore: neque enim attinet, cum Demosthenem in primis legendum, vel ediscendum potius putem. Quorum ego virtutes plerasque arbitror similes, consilium, ordinem divi-dendi, præparandi, probandi rationem, omnia denique, quæ sunt inven-tionis. In eloquendo est aliqua diversitas: densior ille, hic copiosior; ille concludit adstrictius, hic latius; pugnat ille acumine semper, hic frequenter et pondere; illi nihil detrahi potest, huic nihil adjici; curæ plus in illo, in hoc naturæ. Salibus certe, et commiseratione, (qui duo

piurimum affectus valent) vincimus. Et fortasse epilogos illi mos civitatis abstulerit: sed et nobis illa, quæ Attici mirantur, diversa Latini sermonis ratio minus permiserit. In epistolis quidem, quamquam sunt utriusque, nulla contentio est. Cedendum vero in hoc quidem, quod ille et prior fuit, et ex magnâ parte Ciceronem, quantus est, fecit. Nam mihi videtur M. Tullius, cum se totum ad imitationem Græcorum contulisset, effinxisse vim Demosthenis, copiam Platonis, jucunditatem Isocratis. Nec vero, quod in quoque optimum fuit, studio consecutus est tantum, sed plurimas vel potius omnes ex se ipso virtutes extulit immortalis ingenii beatissimâ ubertate. Non enim *pluvias* (ut ait Pindarus) *aquas colligit, sed vivo gurgite exundat*, dono quodam providentiæ genitus, in quo totas vires suas Eloquentia experiretur. Nam quis docere diligentius, movere vehementius potest? Cui tanta unquam jucunditas affuit? ut ipsa illa, quæ extorquet, impetrare eum credas; et, cum transversum vi suâ judicem ferat, tamen ille non rapi videatur, sed sequi. Jam in omnibus, quæ dicit, tanta auctoritas inest, ut dissentire pudeat, nec advocati studium, sed testis aut judicis afferat fidem; cum interim hæc omnia, quæ vix singula quisquam intentissimâ curâ consequi posset, fluunt illaborata; et illa, quâ nihil pulchrius auditu est, oratio præ se fert tamen felicissimam facilitatem. Quare non immerito ab hominibus ætatis suæ *regnare in judiciis* dictus est; apud posteros vero id consecutus, ut Cicero jam non hominis nomen, sed eloquentiæ, habeatur. Hunc igitur spectemns; hoc propositum nobis sit exemplum: ille se profecisse sciat, cui Cicero valde placebit.

Multa in *Asinio Pollione* inventio, summa diligentia, adeo ut quibusdam etiam nimia videatur; et consilii et animi satis; a nitore et jucunditate Ciceronis ita longè abest, ut videri possit sæculo prior. At *Messala* nitidus et candidus, et quodammodo præ se ferens in dicendo nobilitatem suam; viribus minor. C. vero *Cæsar* si foro tantum vacâset, non alius ex nostris contra Ciceronem nominaretur: tanta in eo vis est, id acumen, ea concitatio, ut illum eodem animo dixisse, quo bellavit, appareat. Exornat tamen hæc omnia mira sermonis, cujus proprie studiosus fuit, elegantia. Multum ingenii in *Cælio*, et præcipue in accusando multa urbanitas; dignusque vir, cui et mens melior, et vita longior, contigisset.

Inveni qui *Calvum* præferrent omnibus; inveni qui Ciceroni crederent, eum, nimiam contra se calumniâ, verum sanguinem perdidisse: sed est et sancta et gravis oratio, et castigata, et frequenter vehemens quoque. Imitator est autem Atticorum; fecitque illi properata mors injuriam, si quid adjecturus, non si quid detracturus fuit. Et *Servius Sulpicius* insignem non immerito famam tribus orationibus meruit. Multa, si cum judicio legatur, dabit imitatione digna *Cassius Severus*; qui, si cæteris virtutibus colorem et gravitatem orationis adjecisset, ponendus inter præ-

cipuos foret. Nam et ingenii plurimum est in eo, et acerbitas mira et urbanitas, et vis summa: sed plus stomacho quam consilio dedit: præterea, ut amari sales, ita frequenter amaritudo ipsa ridicula est.

Sunt et alii multi disert, quos persequi longum est. Eorum, quos viderim, *Domitius Afer*, et *Julius Africanus*, longe præstantissimi. Nervorum arte ille, et toto genere dicendi, præferendus, et quem in numero veterum locare non timeas: hic concitator, sed in curâ verborum nimius, et compositione nonnunquam longior, et translationibus parum modicus.

Erant clara et nuper ingenia. Nam et *Trachalus* plerumque sublimis et satis apertus fuit, et quem velle optima crederes; auditus tamen major: nam et vocis, quantam in nullo cognovi, felicitas; et pronuntiatio vel scenis suffectura, et decor: omnia denique ei, quæ sunt extra, superfuerunt. Et *Vibius Crispus* compositus, et jucundus, et delectationi natus; privatis tamen causis, quam publicis, melior. *Julio Secundo* si longior contigisset ætas, clarissimum profecto nomen oratoris apud posteros foret. Adjecisset enim, atque adjiciebat cæteris virtutibus suis, quod desiderari potest. Id est autem, ut esset multo magis pugnax, et sæpius ad curam rerum ab elocutione respiceret. Cæterum, interceptus quoque, magnum sibi vindicat locum. Ea est facundia, tanta in explicando, quod velit, gratia; tam candidum et lene et speciosum dicendi genus; tanta verborum, etiam quæ assumpta sunt, proprietas; tanta, in quibusdam ex periculo petitis, significantia. Habebunt, qui post nos de oratoribus scribent, magnam eos, qui nunc vigent, materiam vere laudandi. Sunt enim summa hodie, quibus illustratur forum, ingenia. Namque et consummati jam patroni veteribus æmulantur, et eos juvenum ad optima tendentium imitatur ac sequitur industria.

Supersunt, qui de Philosophiâ scripserunt; quo in genere paucissimos adhuc eloquentes literæ Romanæ tulerunt. Idem igitur *M. Tullius*, qui, ut ubique, etiam in hoc opere, *Platonis* æmulus exstitit. Egregios vero, multoque, quam in orationibus; præstantior *Brutus*, sufficit ponderi rerum: scias eum sentire, quæ dicit. Scripsit non parum multa *Cornelius Celsus*, scepticos secutus, non sine cultu ac nitore. *Plancus*, in Stoicis, rerum cognitione utilis. In Epicureis, levis quidem, sed non injucundus tamen, auctor est *Catius*.

Ex industriâ *Senecam* in omni genere Eloquentiæ distuli, propter vulgatam falso de me opinionem, quâ damnare eum, et invisum quoque habere, sum creditus. Quod accidit mihi, dum corruptum et omnibus vitiis fractum dicendi genus revocare ad severiora judicia contendo. Tum autem solus hic fere in manibus adolescentium fuit. Quem non equidem omnino conabar excutere, sed potioribus præferri non sinebam, quos ille non destiterat incessere, cum, diversi sibi conscius generis, placere se in dicendo posse iis, quibus illi placerent, diffideret. Amabant autem eum

magis quam imitabantur: tantumque ab illo defluebant, quantum ille ab antiquis descenderat. Foret enim optandum, pares, aut saltem proximos, illi viro fieri. Sed placebat propter sola vitia; et ad ea se quisque dirigeat effingenda, quæ poterat: deinde, cum se jactaret eodem modo dicere, Senecam infamabat. Cujus et multæ alioquin et magnæ virtutes fuerunt: ingenium facile et copiosum, plurimum studii, multarum rerum cognitio; in qua tamen aliquando, ab iis quibus inquirenda quædam mandabat, deceptus est. Tractavit etiam omnem fere studiorum materiam. Nam et orationes ejus, et poëmata, et epistolæ, et dialogi feruntur. In philosophiâ parum diligens, egregius tamen vitiorum insectator fuit. Multæ in eo claræque sententiæ, multa etiam morum gratiâ legenda: sed in eloquendo corrupta pleraque, atque eo perniciosissima, quod abundant dulcibus vitiis. Velles eum suo ingenio dixisse, alieno judicio. Nam, si aliqua contempsisset, si parum concupisset, si non omnia sua amasset, si rerum pondera minutissimis sententiis non fregisset; consensu potius eruditorum, quam puerorum amore, comprobaretur. Verum, sic quoque, jam robustis, et severiore genere satis firmatis, legendus, vel ideo, quod exercere potest utrumque judicium. Multa enim (ut dixi) probanda in eo, multa etiam admiranda sunt: eligere modo curæ sit; quod utinam ipse fecisset. Digna enim fuit illa natura, quæ meliora vellet, quæ, quod voluit, effecit.

DE SCRIPTORUM ROMANORUM PATRIA.

EX MARTIALE.

*Verona docti syllabas amat Vatis,**
Marone felix Mantua est;
Censetur Apōna Livio suo tellus;
Stellæque, nec Flacco† minus;
Apollodoro plaudit imbrifer Nilus;
Nasone Peligni sonant.
Duosque Senecas unicumque Lucanum
Facunda loquitur Cordūba.
Te, Liciniane, gloriabitur nostra,
Nec me‡ tacebit, Bilbūlis. — Lib. i. 62.

* Catulli.

† Valerio Flacco.

‡ Martialem.

§ 186.—*VARIA NOTABILIA.*

DIFFERENTIA VOCUM

(ALPHABETICO ORDINE DISPOSITARUM).

CANTAT *acanthis* agris; sed in horto floret *acanthus*
 In silvis *ācer* est; equus *ācer* Olympia vincit.
 Qui fert *arma* *humeris*, *armo* dux fertur equino
 Vexat *asilus* equos; miseris aperitur *asylum*.
 Qui sculpit, *cælat*; qui servat condita, *cēlat*.
 Voce *cānes*; duc eja *cānes*, nisi tempora *cānes*.
 Tenduntur nexi *casses*; nitet *ærea cassis*.
Casside conde caput; capiuntur *cassibus* ursi.
Cēdo facit *cessi*; *cēcīdi* *cādo*; *cædo* *cecīdi*.
Clava ferit; *clavus* figit; *clavisque* recludit.
Arva cōlis; nes *fila cōlis*; humentia *cōlas*.
Cominus ense feris; jactā *cadis* *eminus* hastā.
 Ut placeas *comiti* mores *cōmēs* indue *cōmēs*.
Consule doctores; sic tu *tibi* *consulis ipsi*.
 Tu *me* *convenies* cras, si *tibi* *convenit ipsi*.
 Lucrandi *cupīdo* nocuit sua sæpe *cupīdo*.
Carmina *dīcuntur*, DOMINO cum *templa dīcuntur*.
 Solvere *diffīdit* nōdum qui *diffīdit* ense.
Dissimulas, quæ sunt; *simulas* ea quæ *tibi* non sunt.
Edūcat hic *catulos*, ut mox *edūcat* in *apros*.
 Si *tibi* non est *æs*, *ēs* *arida*, *rarus* *ēs* *hospes*.
 Cui *sublesta* *fīdes* sit, ei *malè*, *Pontice*, *fīdes*.
Fide, sed antè *vide*; *fidit* *malè* qui *male* *vidit*.
 Fallit sæpe *frētum* placido nimis *æquore frētum*.
Fructus *arboribus*, *fruges* nascuntur in *agris*.
 Sol *nubes* *fugat*; et *fugit* irreparabile *tempus*.
Irrītus *irrītāt* *vanis* *assultibus* *hostem*.
 In silvis *lepōres*, in verbis *quære lepōres*.
 Non *licet* *asse* *mihi*, qui *te* non *asse* *licetur*.
 Tange *lŷram* *digitis*; sed *lŷram* vomere *duco*.
 Tu *bona mālā* *bono mālīs* decerpere *mūlo*,

Quam *māld māla* tuā nequidquam frangere *māld*.
Merx vēnit ; *mercesque vēnit* quæsitā labore.
Anne nūtere, puer, *gestis* ? age, *nūtere gestis* ?
Oblīta quæ fuco rubet, est *oblīta* decoris.
Opperior Fabium qui longo *operitur* amictu.
Os ōris mandat, sed *ōs ossis manditur ōre*.
Uxoris, pārere et pārere ; *pārere*, mariti est,
 Si *pendere vōles*, tu debita *pendere nōles*.
Torquetur pīlum ; *sphæra est pīla* ; *pīla* columna.
 Quæ probus ille *rēfert*, nostrā cognoscere *rēfert*.
Tribula grana terunt ; *tribuli* nocuere novali.
Vas caput, at *nummos* tantum *præs præstat* amico.
Vās vādīs est sponsor ; *spumat vas vāsīs* Iaccho.
 Si transire *vēlis* undas maris, utere *vēlis*.
Vēnimus hesternā, præsentī luce *vēnimus*.

AFFINITAS ET COGNATIO.

Agnati, patris, *cognāti*, matris, habentur.
 Dic patris fratres *patruos amītasque* sorore
 Frater *avunculus* est, soror est *matertēra* matris.
 Fratre tui patris natus *patruēlis* habetur :
 At *consobrinos* dic quos peperere sorores.
 Nati sponsa, *nurus* ; *gener* est tibi, nata, maritus ;
 Conjugibus materque paterque, *socrusque socerque* :
Vitricus est matris conjux ; patrisque, *noverca* ;
 Germanusque viri, *levir* ; sed *fratria*, fratris
 Uxor ; *glos*, uxor fratri aut germana marito.

SESTERTIUM ET SESTERTIUS.

SESTERTIUM unum mille habet SESTERTIOS ;
 Hic *Nummus*, atqui *Pondus* est *Sestertium*.

PARTES ASSIS.

*Assis Romani partes sunt uncia, sextans,
Quadrans atque triens, quincunx et semis, et inde
Septunx; bes, dodrans; dextanti junge deuncem.*

PARTES UNCIE.

Sicilicus	=	$\frac{1}{4}$		Unciæ Scripula	=	$\frac{1}{12}$
Sextula	=	$\frac{1}{8}$		„ Scripulum	=	$\frac{1}{24}$

§ 187. — CHRONOLOGICA.



NOTATIO TEMPORIS.



SIGNA ZODIACI ET TEMPESTATES.

*Sunt, Aries, Taurus, Gemini, Cancer, Leo, Virgo,
Libra et Scorpis Arcitēnens, Capr, Amphora, Pisces.
Ætas a Geminis, Autumnus Virgine, sævo
Bruma Sagittifero, nitidis Ver Piscibus infit.*

DIES ROMANUS.

EX MARTIALE.

*Prima salutantes atque altera continet hora,
Exercet raucos tertia caudidos,
In quintam varios extendit Roma labores,
Sexta quies lassis septima finis erit.
Sufficit in nonam nitidis octava palæstris,
Imperat extractos frangere nona toros.
Hora libellorum decima est, Eupheme, meorum,
Temperat ambrosias cum tua cura dapes. — Lib. iv. 8.*

CALENDARIUM ROMANUM.

NOMINA Mensum *adjectiva* sunt non *substantiva* : ut, “ *Kalendis Juliis* scripta sunt hæc,” non *Kalendis Julii*.

Prima dies MENSIS cujusque est dicta KALENDÆ ;
Sex Maius Nonas, October, Julius, et Mars,
Quatuor at reliqui : dabit Idus Quilibet octo.

Ne tu *respicias* numerando, at *prospice* semper ;
Venturas Nonas, venturas providus Idus
Prospice, venturasque, puer dilecte, Kalendas ;
Denique venturam, mortalis, prospice mortem.

	Maius, Martius, Julius, October.	Januarius, Augustus, December.	Aprilis, Junius, September, November.	Februarius.
1	KALENDÆ.	KALENDÆ.	KALENDÆ.	KALENDÆ.
2	Sexto die	Quarto die	Quarto die	Quarto die
3	Quinto die	Tertio die	Tertio die	Tertio die
4	Quarto die	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.
5	Tertio die	NONÆ.	NONÆ.	NONÆ.
6	Pridie Nonas.	Octavo die	Octavo die	Octavo die
7	NONÆ.	Septimo die	Septimo die	Septimo die
8	Octavo die	Sexto die	Sexto die	Sexto die
9	Septimo die	Quinto die	Quinto die	Quinto die
10	Sexto die	Quarto die	Quarto die	Quarto die
11	Quinto die	Tertio die	Tertio die	Tertio die
12	Quarto die	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.
13	Tertio die	Idus.	Idus.	Idus.
14	Pridie Idus.	Undevices. die	Duodevices. die	Sextodec. die
15	Idus.	Duodevices. die	Septimodec. die	Quintodec. die
16	Septimodec. die	Septimodec. die	Sextodec. die	Quartodec. die
17	Sextodec. die	Sextodec. die	Quintodec. die	Tertiodec. die
18	Quintodec. die	Quintodec. die	Quartodec. die	Duodecimo die
19	Quartodec. die	Quartodec. die	Tertiodec. die	Undecimo die
20	Tertiodec. die	Tertiodec. die	Duodecimo die	Decimo die
21	Duodecimo die	Duodecimo die	Undecimo die	Nono die
22	Undecimo die	Undecimo die	Decimo die	Octavo die
23	Decimo die	Decimo die	Nono die	Septimo die
24	Nono die	Nono die	Octavo die	Sexto die
25	Octavo die	Octavo die	Septimo die	Quinto die
26	Septimo die	Septimo die	Sexto die	Quarto die
27	Sexto die	Sexto die	Quinto die	Tertio die
28	Quinto die	Quinto die	Quarto die	Pridie Kalendas.
29	Quarto die	Quarto die	Tertio die	
30	Tertio die	Tertio die	Pridie Kalendas.	
31	Pridie Kalendas.	Pridie Kalendas.		

Nota. — *Anni, in quibus Februarius mensis dies continet 29 (Anglicè, LEAP-YEARS) BINOS habent dies, nostris 24to et 25to Februarii respondentes, qui ambo eadè notâ signantur ‘SEXTO Kal. Mart.’ unde hi anni appellantur BISSEXTILES.*

§ 188.—SIGLARIUM ROMANUM.

VIRORUM PRÆNOMINA.

A. Aulus.
C. Caius.
Cn. Cnæus.
D. Decimus.
K. Kæso.
L. Lucius.

M. Marcus.
M'. Manius.
N. Numerius.
P. Publius.
Q. Quintus.

Ser. Servius.
Sex. Sextus.
Sp. Spurius.
T. Titus.
Ti. Tiberius.

FEMINARUM.

O. Cala.

T. Liberta.
Et cætera verso caractère.

J. Filia.

ALIA QUÆDAM COGNITU NECESSARIA.

ABN. Abnēpos.
AED. CVR. Ædilis Curulis.
AED. PL. Ædilis Plebis.
A. U. C. Anno Urbis Conditæ.
CAESS. } Cæsares Augusti Tres.
AVGGG. }
COS. Consul. Consule.
COSS.*. Consules. Consulibus.
C. D. Consul Designatus.
D. O. M. Deo Optimo Maximo.
D. D. Dono Dedit.
D. D. D. Dat, Dicat, Dedicat.
D. D. Dederunt.
D. M. Dis Manibus.
F. Filius.
M. F. Marci Filius.
F. F. F. { Felix, Faustum, For-
 tunatum.
H. S. { L. L. S., i.e. Libra, Li-
 bra, Semis: i.e. Ses-
 tertius.

IMP. Imperator.
 { Idus.
ID. { A. D. III. ID. OCT.
 Ante diem tertium Idus
 Octobres.
KAL. Kalendæ.
L. Libertus.
M. P. Mille Passus.
NON. Nonæ.
N. Nepos.
P. C. Patres Conscripti.
P. M. Pontifex Maximus.
T. P. Tribunitiæ Potestatis.
S. C. Senatûs Consultum.
S. P. D. Salutem Plurimam Dat.
S. P. Q. R. . . . { Senatus Populus Que
 Romanus.
S. V. B. E. E. V. { Si Vales, Bene est, Ego
 Valeo.
X. VIR STL. } Decemvir Stlitibus (li-
 IVDIK. } titibus) judicandis.

Quibus adde.

A. Absolvo.
C. Condemno.
N. L. Non Liqueat.
U. R. Uti Rogas.
F. C. Faciendum Curavit.

H. S. E. Hic Situs Est.
S. T. T. L. Sit Tibi Terra Levis!
III. VIRI Triumviri.
A. A. A. Auro, Argento, Aere.
F. F. Flando Feriundo.

Apud Recentiores.

A. B. Artium Baccalaureus.
A. C. Ante Christum.
A. D. Anno Domini.
A. M. { Artium Magister, An-
 no Mundi.
Cf. Confer.
Cod. Codex.
E. G. Exempli Gratia.
FF. II. Pandect.
I. E. Id Est.
Ictus Juris Consultus.

I. V. D. Juris Utriusque Doctor
L. B. Lector Benevole.
L. C. Loco Citato.
L. S. Loco Sigilli.
M. D. Medicinæ Doctor.
Mus. D. Musicæ Doctor.
MSS. Manuscripti.
N. B. Nota Bene.
S. T. P. { Sanctæ Theologiæ
 Professor.
V. D. M. Verbi Divini Minister.

C. Centum.
L. { C.—50.
M. Mille.

CIO. M.—Mille.
CCIO. IO.— $\frac{1}{2}$ CL.—600.
CCIOO. 10,000.

IDO. . . . 5,000.

*LITERA geminata indicat Pluralem, interdum Superlativum: ut, LL.—Libentissime.

§ 189.—*RUDIMENTA PIETATIS.*

ORATIO DOMINICA.

Matth. vi. 9.

PATER noster, Qui es in cælis, 1. Sanctificetur nomen Tuum. 2. Veniat regnum Tuum. 3. Fiat voluntas Tua, quemadmodum in cælo sic etiam in terra. 4. Panem nostrum quotidianum da nobis hodie. 5. Et remitte nobis debita nostra, sicut et nos remittimus debitoribus nostris. 6. Et ne nos inducas in tentationem, sed libera nos a malo: quia Tuum est regnum, et potentia, et gloria, in secula. *Amen.*

SYMBOLUM APOSTOLICUM.

CREDO in Deum Patrem Omnipotentem, Creatorem cæli et terræ; 2. Et in Iesum Christum, Filium Ejus unigenitum, Dominum nostrum; 3. Qui conceptus est de Spiritu Sancto, natus ex Maria Virgine; 4. Passus sub Pontio Pilato, crucifixus, mortuus, et sepultus, descendit ad inferna; 5. Tertio die resurrexit a mortuis; 6. Ascendit ad cælos, sedet ad dextram Dei Patris Omnipotentis; 7. Inde venturus est judicatum vivos et mortuos; 8. Credo in Spiritum Sanctum; 9. Credo Sanctam Ecclesiam Catholicam; Sanctorum communionem; 10. Remissionem peccatorum; 11. Carnis resurrectionem; 12. Et vitam æternam. *Amen.*

DECALOGUS, SIVE LEX DEI.

Locutus est DEUS omnia verba hæc. — Exod. xx. 1.

Ego sum Dominus Deus tuus, Qui eduxi te ex Ægypto, e domo servitutis:

I. Non habebis deos alienos in conspectu Meo.

II. Ne sculpas tibi simulacrum, nec ullam imaginem effingas eorum, quæ aut supra sunt in cælo, aut infra in terra, aut in aquis sub terra; neque incurves te illis, neque colas ea. Ego enim sum Dominus Deus tuus, fortis, zelotes, vindicans peccata patrum in filios, idque in tertia et quarta progenie eorum qui oderunt Me, et misericordiâ utens in millesimam eorum qui diligunt Me, et observant præcepta Mea.

III. Ne usurpes nomen Domini Dei tui temere. Neque enim Dominus dimittet eum impunitum qui nomen Ejus temere usurpaverit.

IV. Memento diem Sabbati sanctifices. Sex diebus operaberis, et facies omne opus tuum. At septimo die Sabbatum erit Domino Deo tuo. Non facies ullum opus, nec tu, nec filius tuus, nec filia tua, nec servus tuus, nec ancilla tua, nec jumentum tuum, nec advena qui est intra portas tuas. Nam sex diebus fecit Deus cælum, terram, et mare, et quæcunque in iis sunt; requievit autem die septimo, ideoque benedixit diei Sabbati, et sanctificavit eum.

V. Honora patrem tuum, et matrem tuam, ut diu vivas in terra, quam tibi Dominus Deus tuus daturus est.

VI. Non occides.

VII. Non committes adulterium.

VIII. Non furaberis.

IX. Non dices contra proximum tuum falsum testimonium.

X. Non concupisces domum proximi tui, non concupisces uxorem proximi tui, nec servum ejus, nec ancillam, nec bovem, nec asinum, nec quicquam eorum quæ sunt proximi tui.

SUMMA LEGIS

Matth. xxii. 34.

PHARISÆI, quum audivissent quod IESUS silentium imposuisset Sadducæis, congregati sunt pariter: 35. Et interrogavit eum unus ex iis qui erat legis peritus, tentans eum, et dicens, 36. Præceptor, Quod præceptum maximum est in lege?

37. IESUS autem dixit illi, Ut diligas Dominum Deum tuum, ex toto corde tuo, et ex totâ animâ tuâ, et ex omni cogitatione tuâ. 38. Hoc est præceptum maximum et primum.

39. Secundum autem est simile illi: nempe, Ut diligas proximum tuum sicut teipsum.

40. Ex his duobus præceptis pendent Lex et Prophetæ.

INSTITUTIO BAPTISMI.

Matth. xxviii. 19; Mark, xvi. 16.

ITE, et docete omnes gentes, baptizantes eos, *In nomine Patris, et Filii, et Spiritûs Sancti.* Qui crediderit, et baptizatus fuerit, servabitur: Qui non crediderit, condemnabitur. Et docete eos, ut custodiant quicquid mandavi vobis: et ecce Ego vobiscum sum, omnibus diebus, usque ad consummationem seculi.

INSTITUTIO CŒNÆ DOMINI.

1 Cor. xi. 23.

Ego enim accepi a Domino nostro id quod tradidi vobis: Quod Dominus noster Iesus Christus, eâ nocte quâ proditus est, accepit panem et, gratiis actis, fregit, ac dixit, *Accipite, manducate, hoc est corpus Meum, quod pro vobis frangitur: Hoc facite ad memoriam Mei.* Itidem et poculum, postquam cœnâset, dicendo, *Hoc poculum est novum illud fœdus per Meum sanguinem: Hoc facite, quotiescunque biberitis in Mei recordationem.* Quotiescunque enim ederitis panem hunc, et poculum hoc biberitis, mortem Domini annunciabitis, usque quo venerit.

1 Cor. x. 16.

Poculum gratiarum actionis, cui benedicimus, nonne communio est sanguinis Christi? Panis quem frangimus, nonne communio est corporis Christi? Quoniam unus panis, unum corpus, multi sumus. Nam omnes unius panis participes sumus.

PRÆCIPUA CAPITA CHRISTIANÆ RELIGIONIS,

Desumpta e Sacra Scriptura Veteris ac Novi Testamenti.

I. De Deo.

Joan. iv. 2. Deus est Spiritus. —

Apoç. iv. 8. Sanctus, Sanctus, Sanctus, Dominus Deus Omnipotens, Qui fuit, Qui est, et Qui venturus est.

Psal. cxlvii. 5. Dominus noster est magnus, multarumque virium, et sapientia Ejus est immensa.

Exod. xxxiv. 6. — Jehova, Jehova Deus, misericors et exorabilis, longanimis, et abundans benignitate et fide.

Vers. 7. Custodiens misericordiam millibus, condonans iniquitatem, transgressionem et peccatum, et qui nullo pacto absolvat nocentem.

Deut. vi. 4. Jehova Deus noster est unus Jehova.

II. De Creatione, Lapsu, Peccato, et Miseria Hominis.

Gen. i. 2. Et Deus dixit, Faciamus hominem ad imaginem Nostram, secundum similitudinem Nostram.

Vers. 27. Itaque Deus creavit hominem ad imaginem Suam, ad imaginem Dei creavit eum. —

Eccl. vii. 29. Deus fecit hominem rectum. —

Rom. v. 12. Peccatum intravit in mundum per unum hominem, et mors per peccatum; et ita mors pervasit ad omnes homines, quatenus omnes peccârunt.

Rom. iii. 23. Omnes peccaverunt, ac deficiuntur gloriâ Dei.

Psal. li. 5. En, formatus sum in iniquitate, et in peccato mater mea concepit me.

III. *De Redemptione Generis humani per Iesum Christum.*

Joan. iii. 16. Deus sic amavit mundum, ut dederit Filium suum Unigenitum, ut quisquis credit in Eum, non pereat, sed habeat vitam æternam.

1 *Jo.* iv. 9. Amor Dei patuit erga nos in hoc, quod Deus misit Filium suum Unigenitum in mundum, ut vivamus per Eum.

Vers. 10. In hoc est amor, non quod nos dilexerimus Deum, sed quod Ipse dilexerit nos, et miserit Filium Suum, ut esset piaculum pro peccatis nostris.

1 *Pet.* iii. 18. Christus quoque passus est semel pro peccatis, justus pro injustis, ut adduceret nos ad Deum.

1 *Pet.* ii. 24. Qui Ipsemet sustulit peccata nostra in Suo corpore super lignum, ut nos mortui peccatis, viveremus justitiæ; Cujus vibicibus nos sanati sumus.

Tit. ii. 14. Qui dedit Seipsum pro nobis, ut redimeret nos ab omni iniquitate, et purificaret Sibi ipsi populum peculiarem, accensum studio bonorum operum.

IV. *De iis quæ Deus a nobis exigit, ut Salutem per Christum consequamur.*

Act. xvii. 30. Dixit, domini, quid faciendum est mihi, ut sim salvus?

Vers. 31. Et illi dixerunt, Crede in Dominum Iesum, et salvus eris.

Act. iii. 19. Resipiscite, et convertimini, ut peccata vestra deleantur, cum tempora recreationis venient a conspectu Domini.

Isa. lv. 6. Quærite Jehovam dum posset inveniri; invoke Eum dum est propinquus.

Vers. 7. Improbus derelinquat viam suam, et vir iniquus cogitationes suas: revertaturque ad Jehovam, et miserebitur illius, et ad Deum nostrum, Qui plurimum condonabit.

Luc. ix. 23. Si quis vult venire post Me, ipse abneget se. tollatque suam crucem quotidie, et sequatur Me.

Matth. xi. 28. Venite ad Me omnes qui laboratis et onerati estis, et Ego recreabo vos.

Vers. 29. Attollite jugum Meum in vos, et discite a Me, quia mitis sum et humilis corde; et invenietis requiem animabus vestris.

Vers. 30. Jugum enim Meum est facile, et onus Meum est leve.

Heb. v. 9. Perfectus factus est auctor salutis æternæ omnibus obedientibus sibi.

Jo. xiv. 15. Si amatis Me, servate præcepta Mea.

Jo. xv. 14. Vos estis amici Mei, si feceritis quæcunque Ego præcipio vobis.

Tyt. ii. 11. Gratia Dei, quæ salutem adfert, apparuit omnibus hominibus.

Vers. 12. Erudiens nos, ut, abnegatâ impietate et mundanis cupiditatibus, vivamus sobriè, justè, et piè, in hoc præsentì seculo.

Mic. vi. 8. Indicavit tibi, O homo! quid sit bonum; et quid exigit Jehova a te, nisi ut æquum facias, et ames misericordiam, et ambules submissè cum Deo tuo?

Col. iii. 5. Mortificate igitur vestra membra terrestria; scortationem, impuritatem, libidinem, cupiditatem malam, et avaritiam, quæ est idololatria;

Vers. 6. Propter quæ, ira Dei venit super filios contumaces.

Vers. 8. — Deponite hæc omnia, iram, excandescentiam, malitiam, maledicentiam, obscœnitatem verborum ex ore vestro.

Vers. 9. Ne mentimini alii aliis.

Vers. 12. Induite igitur (ut electi Dei, sancti, amatique) viscera misericordiæ, benignitatem, submissionem animi, lenitatem, patientiam;

Vers. 13. Sufferentes alii alios, et condonantes alii aliis; si quis habet querelam adversus aliquem, quemadmodum Christus condonavit vobis, sic quoque vos facite;

Vers. 14. Super omnia autem induite charitatem, quæ est vinculum perfectionis.

1 *Thess.* iv. 11. Et ut studeatis esse quieti, et agere res vestras, et operari propriis manibus, sicut præcipimus vobis.

1 *Pet.* ii. 27. Timete Deum, Regem honorate.

Rom. xiii. 1. Omnis anima esto subjecta potestatibus supereminentibus: nulla enim est potestas nisi a Deo; potestates quæ sunt, sunt ordinatæ a Deo.

Vers. 2. Itaque quisquis obsistit potestati, obsistit ordinationi Dei: qui autem obsistunt, accipient condemnationem sibi ipsis.

1 *Thess.* v. 12. Rogamus autem vos, fratres, ut agnoscatis eos qui laborant inter vos, et præsumt vobis in Domino, et admonent vos,

Vers. 13. Et faciatis eos maximi cum amore, propter opus ipsorum.

Heb. xiii. 17. Parete gubernatoribus vestris, et obsequimini: nam ii

vigilant pro animabus vestris, uti reddituri rationem; ut id faciant cum gaudio, et non cum dolore; id enim est inutile vobis.

Col. iii. 18. Uxores submittite vos viris vestris, ut convenit in Domino;

Vers. 19. Viri, diligite uxores, et ne estote amarulenti adversus eas;

Eph. vi. 1. Liberi, obedite parentibus vestris in Domino; id enim æquum est;

Vers. 4. Et vos, patres, ne provocate liberos vestros ad iram, sed educate eos in disciplina et admonitione Domini;

Col. iii. 22. Servi, obedite dominis vestris in omnibus secundum carnem, non serviendo ad oculum, ut captantes gratiam hominum, sed cum simplicitate cordis, timentes Deum;

Vers. 23. Ac quicquid facitis, agitote id ex animo, tanquam Domino, et non hominibus;

Col. iv. 1. Domini, præstate jus et æquum servis vestris, scientes vos quoque habere Dominum in cælis.

Matth. vii. 12. Quæcunque igitur volueritis ut homines faciant vobis, vos etiam ita facite eis.

Matth. xxiv. 13. Qui sustinuerit ad finem, is servabitur.

Gal. vi. 9. Ne defetiscamur rectè faciendo; nam debito tempore metemur, si non fatigemur.

Apoc. ii. 10. Esto fidelis usque ad mortem, et dabo tibi coronam vitæ,

V. De Necessitate hæc præstandi.

Jo. iii. 36. Qui credit in Filium, habet vitam æternam; qui vero non credit Filio, non videbit vitam, sed ira Dei manet super eum.

Luc. xiii. 3. 5. Nisi resipiscatis omnes similiter peribitis.

Ezek. xxxiii. 11. Sic ego vivam, inquit Dominus Jehova, non delector morte impii, sed ut impius recedat a via sua, et vivat. Recedite, recedite a malis viis vestris! cur enim moreremini?

Ezek. xviii. 30. Resipiscite, et avertite vos ab omnibus peccatis vestris; ita iniquitas non erit exitio vobis.

Vers. 31. Abjicite a vobis omnes transgressionem vestras, quibus transistis; et facite vobis cor novum, et spiritum novum; nam quare moremini?

Vers. 32. Non enim delector morte morientis, dicit Dominus Jehova; convertite igitur vos, et vivite.

Jo. iii. 3. Nisi quis denuo natus fuerit, non potest videre regnum Dei.

Matth. xviii. 3. Nisi convertamini, et fiat ut pueruli, non intrabitis in regnum cælorum.

Luc. vi. 46. Quid verò vocatis me, Domine, Domine, et non facitis quæ dico?

Heb. xii. 14. Sectamini pacem cum omnibus, et sanctimoniam, sine quâ nemo videbit Dominum.

1 Cor. vi. 9. An ignoratis injustos non esse possessuros regnum Dei? Ne errate; neque scortatores, nec idololatræ, nec adulteri, nec molles, nec pædicones.

Vers. 10. Nec fures, nec avari, ebriosi, nec conviciatores, nec rapaces possidebunt regnum Dei.

Heb. x. 38. ——— Si quis se subtraxerit, non erit acceptus animo meo.

VI. *De Modis obtinendi Gratiam a Deo Viresque ad hæc facienda.*

Luc. xi. 9. PETITE, et dabitur vobis; quærite, et invenietis; pulsate, et aperietur vobis;

Vers. 10. Quisquis enim petit, accipit; et qui quærit, invenit; et aperietur pulsanti;

Vers. 13. Si vos, qui mali estis, sciatis dare bona dona vestris liberis, quanto magis Pater vester cælestis dabit Sanctum Spiritum petentibus a Se?

1 Pet. iii. 21. Cui rei consimilis figura, nempe Baptismus, nunc quoque servat nos, non detractio sordium corporis, sed stipulatio bonæ conscientie apud Deum, per resurrectionem Christi.

1 Cor. xi. 23. Dominus Iesus, eâ nocte qua proditus est, accepit panem:

Vers. 24. Et gratiis actis, fregit, ac dixit, Accipite, comedite: hoc est Meum corpus, quod frangitur pro vobis; hoc facite, ad memoriam Mei;

Vers. 25. Itidem accepit poculum postquam cœnâset, dicens, Hoc poculum est novum fœdus per Meum sanguinem; hoc facite quoties hiberitis, ad memoriam Mei;

Vers. 26. Quoties enim ederitis panem hunc, et biberitis poculum hoc, annuntiatis mortem Domini donec veniat.

1 Cor. x. 16. Poculum benedictionis cui benedicimus, nonne est communio sanguinis Christi? Panis quem frangimus, nonne est communio corporis Christi?

Psal. cxix. 9. Quomodo puer purificabit semitam suam? observando eam secundum verbum Tuum.

Vers. 11. Recondidi sermonem Tuum in animo meo, ut non peccem in Te.

Vers. 59. Recogitavi meos mores, et converti pedes meos ad Tua testimonia.

Vers. 60. Festinavi, ac non cunctatus sum, observare mandata Tua.

Prov. iii. 5. Confide Jehovæ toto corde, neve innitere tuæ prudentiæ.

Vers. 6. Agnosce Eum in omnibus viis tuis, et Is diriget gressus tuos.

VII. *De quatuor ultimis, viz. de Morte et Judicio, Cælo et Inferno.*

Heb. ix. 27. STATUTUM est omnibus hominibus ut semel moriantur, postea verò judicium.

Joan. v. 28. Hora venit, in qua omnes qui sunt in monumentis audient Ejus vocem,

Vers. 29. Et prodibunt; qui fecerint bona, in resurrectionem vitæ; qui verò egerint mala, in resurrectionem condemnationis.

2 Cor. v. 10. Comparendum est nobis omnibus ante tribunal Christi, ut unusquisque accipiat ea quæ fecerit in corpore, congruenter ad ea quæ fecerit, sive bonum sive malum.

Matth. xxv. 34. Tunc dicet Rex iis qui erunt ad dextram Ejus, Adeste, benedicti Patris mei, possidete regnum paratum vobis a jacto fundamento mundi;

Vers. 41. Tunc dicet etiam iis qui erunt ad sinistram, Facessite a Me, execrati, in æternum ignem, paratum diabolo et angelis ejus;

Vers. 46. Et isti abibunt in æternum supplicium, justi verò in vitam æternam.

2 Thess. i. 7. Dominus Iesus revelabitur de cælo cum potentibus angelis suis,

Vers. 8. In flammante igne, sumens ultionem de iis qui nesciunt Deum neque obediunt Evangelio Domini nostri Iesu Christi,

Vers. 9. Qui dabunt pœnas æterno exitio, a facie Domini, et a gloria potentis Ejus: cùm venerit, ut glorificetur in sanctis suis, et ut sit admirandus omnibus credentibus.

XXXIX ARTICULI ECCLESIAE ANGLICANÆ, IN BREVE COMPENDIUM REDACTI.

Præceptor.

Articulos recita mihi, quos Ecclesia Sancti
Anglica Concilii sanxit utrâque domo.

Discipulus.

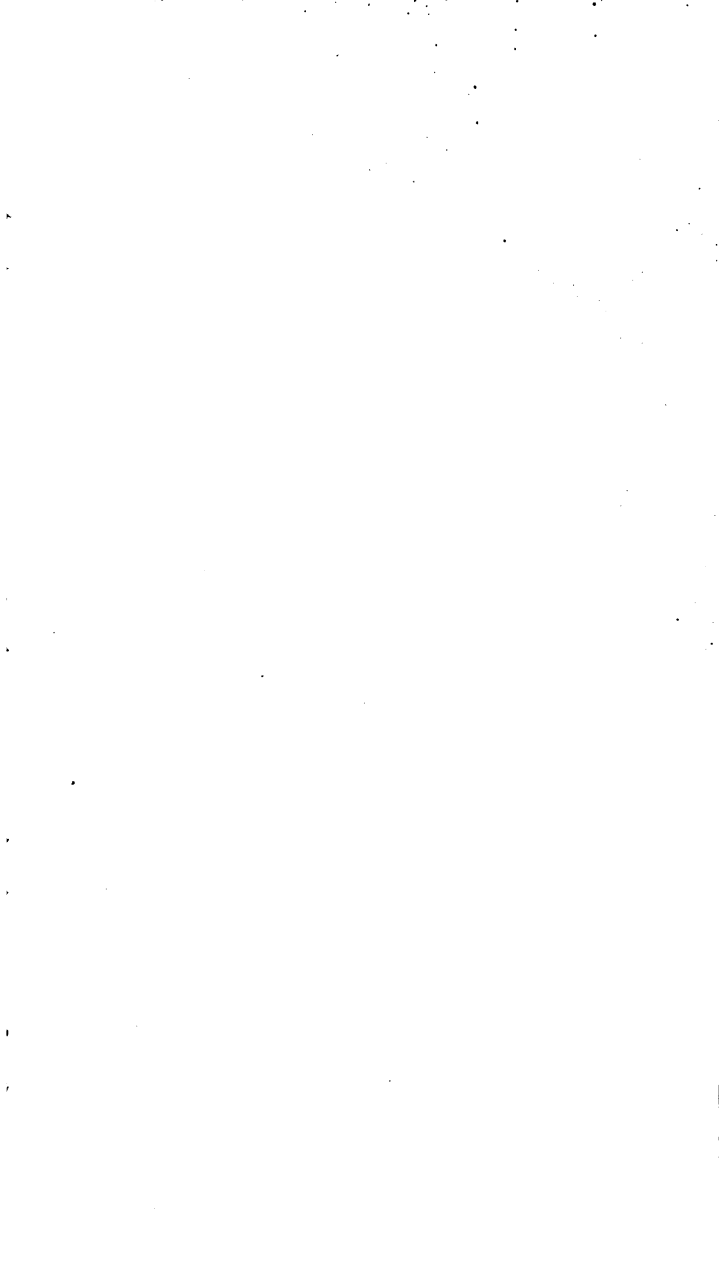
I-III. *Personæ sunt Tres. Unus DEUS:* Est *Homo CHRISTUS,*
Est *Deus,* in ligno mortuus: Ima petit;

IV-V. *ILLE* resurrexit, revocato corpore, Patri
Assidet. Agnosco Te, *PARACLETE,* Deum.

VI. Salvandis credenda Sacer tenet omnia Codex;
Nulla super Fidei dogmata fingat homo.

Quos recipit libros Ecclesia semper ubique
Ne dubites summi Verba vocare Dei.

- VII. *Venturus Patres Visus Nos salvat Iesus ;*
Tempora mutantur, non variata Fides.
Hebræi cessant Ritus et publica jura,
Sed bene vivendi Regula firma manet.
- VIII. *Octavo, articulos Nicææ et pectore toto*
Testor Apostolicos, Athanasique fidem.
- IX-XI. *Prima mali labes Nono : Decimoque Voluntas*
Libera. Deinde Fide justificatur homo.
- XII-XIV. *Bisseno, parit acta Fides ; Nihil acta valebant*
Ante Fidem : Reputa nil nimis, omne parum.
- XV-XVII. *Unus labe vacat. Semper respiscere prodest.*
Arcana Æterni ne pete nôsse Dei.
- XVIII-XX. *Terseno, Tu, CHRISTE, Salus. Ecclesia CHRISTI*
Una domus, resonat Vox ubi pura Dei ;
Illa suis CHRISTI mysteria ritè ministrat :
Illa Fidem scriptam monstrat, agenda jubet.
- XXI-III. *Quis Synodos cogit ? Princeps. Nova dogmata Romæ.*
Si vocor et mittor, jure Minister ero :
- XXIV-VI. *Voce ministrabo populi. Mysteria CHRISTI*
Symbola sunt hominum, signaque certa Dei ;
Pignora divinæ fidis et flumina Vitæ ;
Quæ, Judæ vitio non vitianda, valent.
- XXVII-IX. *Ternono, est signum, est Baptismus Gratia : CHRISTI*
Sancta caro, Pravis, non violanda, nocet.
- XXX-I. *Terdecimo, speciem capiant utramque Fideles.*
Hostia pro cunctis Sæ dedit Una semel.
- XXXII-III. *Sancta Sacerdotes ineant connubia sanctè.*
Excisa a CHRISTI corpore membra fuge.
- XXXIV. *In variis variat Ritus Ecclesia terris ;*
Jussa piè Matris tu venerare tuæ.
- XXXV. *Sermonum nôris titulos : pro tempore valde*
Utilis et populo est aptus uterque liber.
- XXXVI. *Quisquis erat formis annum regnante secundum*
Edvardo fixis, ritè sacratus erat.
- XXXVII. *Rex super est homines in causis omnibus omnes ;*
Quæ regit, ense regens omnia, clave nihil.
Non habet in Regno jus ullum Roma Britanno.
Jus gladii. Jussu Principis arma cape.
- XXXVIII-IX. *Publica Christicolûm non sunt bona. Denique, jures ;*
Sed cur, quid, quando, qualis, et unde, vide.



UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

This book is DUE on the last date stamped below.

Fine schedule: 25 cents on first day overdue
50 cents on fourth day overdue
One dollar on seventh day overdue.

OCT 14 1947

YA 00058

U.C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES



8001024622

615 389

760

L 731

S

1862

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

